

MỤC LỤC

I. Part 1	6
1. Home/ Accommodation	6
2. Study	8
3. Work.....	11
4. Advertisements.....	13
5. Birthday.....	14
6. Family	15
9. Newspapers and magazines.....	16
10. Transportation	18
11. Shoes	20
12. Sports.....	22
13. Birds	27
14. Robots	30
15. Names.....	31
16. Neighbors	32
17. Sunny days	34
18. Email	35
19. Friends.....	37
20. Politeness.....	40
21. Watches	42
22. Fruits	43
23. Jewelry	45
24. Parks & Trees	46
25. Text messages	52
26. Patience.....	54
27. Daily routine	56
28. Films	58
29. Mathematics	61
30. Social network.....	62
31. Vegetables	64

32. Boats.....	67
33. Computers.....	69
34. Museums.....	71
35. Time management	73
36. Snack.....	75
II. Part 2 and Part 3.....	78
1. Describe an advertisement you have seen.....	78
2. Describe a city or town you have been.	85
Trích đề: Describe a place in other countries where you would like to work	85
3. Describe an interesting neighbor you have/had	88
4. Describe a family member who has an important influence on you/ A good parent	93
5. Describe a book you want to read again	98
6. Describe an experience in which the use of a mobile phone was not allowed.....	101
7. Describe a holiday/trip you want to go on in the future.....	108
8. Describe your dream house/apartment.....	112
9. Describe the most polite person you know	118
10. Describe a cake that is special to you.....	123
11. Describe a place where you can relax (not home).....	129
12. Describe a painting or work of art that you have seen.	131
13. Describe a piece of clothes that is your favorite	132
14. Describe a couple you know who have a happy marriage	138
15. Describe an invention that has changed people's life.....	146
16. Describe an occasion where everybody smiled.....	153
17. Describe a place where you felt crowded.....	159
18. Describe a TV program (TV Series) you have watched	162
19. Describe a plan you haven't done yet	167
20. Describe a bicycle tour.....	170
21. Describe an organization or company where you live that employs a lot of people.....	178
22. Describe a sports match you have watched.....	186
23. Describe an important change in your life.	193
24. Describe a person who gave a clever solution to a problem.	201
25. Describe an English class you enjoy	208
26. Describe a time when you moved to a new house or a new school.	214

27. Describe a person in history that impressed you.	217
28. Describe a person who was helpful to your work or study	221
29. Describe a long car trip	226
30. Describe an age/stage you enjoyed most in your life.	231
31. Describe an indoor game that you liked to play when you were a child.	234
32. Describe a situation when someone made noise.	236
33. Describe a traditional product of your country	239
Describe an important plant in your country (such as fruits, flowers or vegetables)	239
34. Describe an item of furniture, either modern or traditional.....	243
35. Describe a way to stay healthy.	244
36. Describe a letter /email you received and that you liked.	252
37. Describe something you bought that you are happy with/ something you bought according to an advertisement.....	254
38. Describe an achievement you are proud of	259
Sample answer bài Describe success you would like to achieve (in the near future).....	259
39. Describe an interesting person from another country	261
40. Describe a piece of good news that you received.	264
41. Describe a garden you visited and like.	267
42. Describe a change that will improve your local area.	272
43. Describe an interesting place that few people know.	278
44. Describe a time when you received a free gift.	284
45. Describe an occasion when you helped someone	286
46. Describe an experience when you taught someone to do something new	291
47. Describe a way of education	296
48. Describe a businessman you admire.	298
49. Describe an age/stage you enjoyed most in your life.	299
50. Describe a kind of vegetable or plant.....	305

HƯỚNG DẪN SỬ DỤNG SÁCH

Hi các bạn, các bạn đang đọc quyển ebook “IELTS Speaking FULL 3 parts by Ngoc Bach” phiên bản mới nhất

LƯU Ý:

Hiện nay một số bạn mua sách từ các bạn bán lậu (qua mail hàng loạt hoặc các nick ảo spam trên diễn đàn), mua từ hiệu sách photo hay các nick ảo rao bán lại trên mạng. Xem cảnh báo tại đây:

http://ngocbach.com/chuyen_muc/view/70001902/Sach-IELTS-Speaking%20Writing_Ngoc-Bach.html

Nếu các bạn mua sách từ các nguồn này thì rất có thể phiên bản bạn đang đọc hiện tại **đã cũ** hoặc có thể **còn nhiều lỗi sai** (do các bạn bán lại đã bị mình cấm nick update, các bạn này thường copy các bài không rõ nguồn gốc trên mạng -> lấy tên Ngọc Bách để cập nhật cho các bạn)

Do vậy, nếu phiên bản các bạn đang đọc không phải mua chính chủ từ ngocbach.com, mình khuyên các bạn nên không sử dụng tài liệu này thì tốt hơn. Một là các bạn mua sách chính chủ từ ngocbach.com mục sách viết by ngocbach (các bạn chỉ cần ĐĂNG KÝ MUA 1 LẦN DUY NHẤT và được update liên tục mãi mãi), hai là học từ nguồn mình chia sẻ miễn phí ở đây (để tránh học từ các bài còn lỗi sai hoặc không cập nhật)

<https://www.facebook.com/groups/ieltsngocbach/permalink/1951695464901106/>

Về cách học:

- + Các bạn có thể dựa vào bộ đề, đáp án tham khảo, giải thích từ vựng chi tiết do mình soạn -> học lấy các ideas hay áp dụng vào chính bài nói của các bạn. Mình không khuyến khích học thuộc lòng.
- + Nhiều bạn hỏi học thuộc lòng có sợ bị giám khảo phát hiện và trừ điểm không?

Câu trả lời:

Thứ nhất, về nguyên tắc, miễn là bài nói của bạn trôi chảy, phát âm sử dụng từ vựng chính xác, đúng ngữ cảnh -> không ai có quyền trừ điểm bạn.

Thứ hai, không ai nhớ hết & thuộc lâu tất cả đáp án trong bộ này cả nên chẳng bao giờ các bạn đi thi nói giống hoàn toàn nhau được. Ít nhất là hơn 3 năm sách speaking của mình ra đời chưa ghi nhận trường hợp nào giám khảo phát hiện vì nói giống nhau cả

Cuối cùng, các bạn hãy biết rằng, khi các bạn đã đăng ký mua sách, nếu có bất cứ thay đổi nào trong bộ đề cả 3 part, mình sẽ luôn theo dõi và cập nhật đề thi & đáp án sớm nhất cho các bạn. Các bạn không cần (và không nên) nhắn giục nhé, mình sẽ mất thêm thời gian trả lời từng bạn thôi, lại chậm cập nhật hơn.

Một lần nữa cảm ơn các bạn đã đăng ký mua sách của mình !

-Ngọc Bách-

I. Part 1

1. Home/ Accommodation

1.1. What kind of housing/accommodation do you live in?

I live in a **terraced** house that has a living room, a kitchen, three bed rooms, two bathrooms and a lovely back garden. It's not really a spacious house, but it's just right for me and my family.

1.2. Who do you live with?

I live with my parents and my siblings. We always get on well with each other and have a lot of fun.

1.3. How long have you lived there?

I've lived there since I was a child, until I graduated from high school and moved to the city to enroll at university, where I lived in a student dormitory during the semester.

1.4. (If you answer you haven't lived there long) What's the difference between where you are living now and where you have lived in the past?

Living in a dorm with other roommates is totally different from living in my own house.

My current residential area is quite small and it's very noisy because there are a lot of people there and I don't have my own space. Conversely, when I was living at home, I had my own spacious room and it made me feel comfortable.

1.5. Do you plan to live there for a long time?

To be honest, I intend to buy an apartment in an urban area after I graduate from university. I can decorate and design my ideal home with whatever facilities I want.

1.6. Which room does your family spend most of the time in?

It's definitely the kitchen. Not only lunch or dinner time but all our family reunions take place in the kitchen where all the family members get together to eat tasty meals, and chat to each other – it's a really harmonious atmosphere.

1.7. Are the transport facilities to your home very good?

To be honest, most of the transport facilities to my place are not very modern. The bus service from my work place to home is irregular and usually overcrowded.

1.8. Do you prefer living in a house or a flat?

I prefer living in a house to a flat because I value my privacy and need my own space. Owning an independent house, I can plan and design a house layout to suit myself. Moreover, I can modify a house according to the size of the family.

1.9. Please describe the room you live in.

My current room is actually more like a bedsit. It is a multi – purpose room, I use it to sleep and study as well. It is painted in pink, that's my favorite color with a bed, a cupboard and desk. It's not really spacious but it's just right for me.

1.10. What part of your home do you like the most ?

I prefer my bedroom most due to its convenience and privacy. Because of my stressful work I want to be in a quiet place and concentrate on my work. In my own room, I'm never disturbed by anyone else.

Moreover, in my own space I can do whatever I want without bothering others.

VOCABULARY

✓ Terraced house (noun): (ngôi nhà trong dãy nhà cùng kiểu) a house connected on both sides by other properties

Ex: In England, most people seem to live in terraced houses with lovely back gardens.

✓ Back garden (noun phrase): (vườn ở phía sau nhà) a garden at the rear of the house.

Ex: I live in a terraced house that has a living room, a kitchen, three bed rooms, two bathrooms and a lovely back garden.

✓ Spacious (adjective): (rộng rãi) (of a room or building) large and with plenty of space for people to move around in

Ex: The hotel rooms are spacious and comfortable.

✓ Sibling(s) (noun): (anh/ chị em) a brother or sister

Ex: The younger children were badly treated by older siblings.

✓ Get on well with sb (phrasal verb): (hòa hợp với ai đó) to have a friendly relationship with somebody

Ex: She and her sister have never really got on well with each other.

✓ Dormitory (noun): (kí túc xá) a room for several people to sleep in, especially in a school or other institution

Ex: I've lived there since I was a child, until I graduated high school and moved to the city to enroll in university where I lived in a dormitory.

✓ Residential area (noun): (nơi ở) (of an area of a town) suitable for living in; consisting of houses rather than factories or offices

Ex: It was not safe to locate the chemicals factory in a residential area.

- ✓ Urban area (noun): (vùng thành thị) connected with a town or city

Ex: Pollution has reached disturbingly high levels in some urban areas.

- ✓ Reunion (noun): (tụ họp, xum họp) a social occasion or party attended by a group of people who have not seen each other for a long time

Ex: The College has an annual reunion for former students.

- ✓ Harmonious (adjective): (âm cúng, yên bình) friendly, peaceful and without any disagreement

Ex: It is important to have harmonious relations between the country's ethnic groups.

- ✓ Irregular (adjective): not happening at the arranged time intervals

Ex: His irregular attendance at school resulted in his failure in the final exams.

- ✓ Overcrowded (adjective): with too many people or things in it

Ex: The train was so overcrowded this evening that I was unable to find an empty seat.

- ✓ Privacy (noun): being alone and not disturbed by other people

Ex: I read the letter in the privacy of my own room.

- ✓ Suit oneself (verb): to do exactly what you like/want

Ex: Everyone had a different opinion about what colour to paint my room, so in the end I decided to just suit myself.

- ✓ Modify (verb): (sửa đổi, thay đổi) to change something slightly, especially in order to make it more suitable for a particular purpose

Ex: We found it cheaper to modify the existing equipment rather than buy new.

- ✓ Bedsit (noun): (phòng vừa để ngủ vừa để học, tiếp khách) a room that a person rents and uses for both living and sleeping in

Ex: He lives in a tiny student bedsit used for both sleeping and studying.

- ✓ Multi-purpose (adjective): (đa chức năng) having many different uses

Ex: This room is multi-purpose – we use it for meetings, interviews and taking breaks.

2. Study

2.1. Describe your education

I started school when I was 7. I finished my primary education 5 years later and I went to secondary school at 12. Then at 16, I made it to a high school for gifted pupils in my hometown. In my

country, highschool education lasts 3 years, then I went onto **higher education** at the Foreign Trade University where I'm currently studying economics.

2.2. What is your area of specialization?

Well, my major is External Economics. I have **mastered** the basics of economics and socio-economics, combined with business knowledge mainly related to the import and export business.

2.3. Why did you choose to study that major?

I think it would help to **fulfill my dream** of introducing my country's agricultural products to the world. Vietnamese goods have a real potential, but they still struggle to **make a name for themselves**, you know.

2.4. Do you like your major? (Why?/Why not?)

Yes, of course. Studying economics, especially external economics is interesting and practical. It helps me to **keep up with** current affairs and it improves my **analytical** and problem-solving skills as well.

2.5. What kind of school did you go to as a child?

As a child, I attended a **public elementary school**. It's quite a big school in my hometown which provides both high quality education and a supportive environment, so I think I was quite lucky.

2.6. What was your favourite subject as a child?

Well, I used to be very **passionate about** drawing when I was a little girl. It was fun to work with brushes and colors, you know, as it was the time when I could **indulge in** my own creative world.

2.7. Do you think your country has an effective education system?

To be honest, I don't think so. Our system has somehow become **unduly** stressful, does not promote creativity and the ability to be critical due to the fact that our society still cares way too much about grades and schools consequently focuses on an **exam-driven curriculum**, which I find quite impractical.

2.8. (Possibly) Are you looking forward to working?

Absolutely! It's great to join the **workforce**, especially when I can do the job I love. Not only will it **pay the bills**, but it'll also give me the joy of making a contribution. It's hard to be happy and fulfilled without working, you know.

VOCABULARY

✓ Higher education (chương trình đại học) [n] post-18 learning that take places at universities

Example: According to a research, nearly 50 percent of Vietnamese students in U.S. **higher education** are studying either business or engineering, with business-related majors making up 38 percent of all enrollments in 2012/13

✓ Master (tinh thông, nắm vững) [v] learn how to do something well

Example: She lived in Italy for several years but never quite **mastered** the language.

✓ Make a name for oneself (trở nên nổi tiếng) [idiom] become famous and respected by a lot of people

Example: By the time he was thirty-five, he had made a name for himself as a successful railway contractor

✓ Keep up with (cập nhật thông tin về cái gì) [idiom] be aware of

Example: Even though he's been travelling, he's kept up with what's going on back home

✓ Analytical (thuộc về phân tích) [adj] using analysis or logical reasoning

Example: **Analytical skills** are essential in the workplace to ensure necessary problem solving occurs to keep productivity and other areas of the workforce functioning smoothly

✓ Elementary school (trường tiểu học) [n] primary school, school for children between 7-11 years old (in Vietnam)

Example: It's essential that children at the official entry age for **elementary school** attend classes fully.

✓ Unduly (quá mức, không chính đáng) [adj] excessively/ to a level that more than is necessary, acceptable, or reasonable

Example:

For every new parents, the decision about whether to vaccinate his or her child has been **unduly** stressful

✓ Exam-driven curriculum (chương trình học để phục vụ cho các kỳ thi) [expression] the courses taught at a school, college, which focus on teaching what will be on the exam

Example: Many parents believe that **exam-driven curriculum** can change their kid's attitude towards school in profoundly negative ways.

✓ Pay the bills (trả tiền cuộc sống) [idioms] provide enough income to sustain one's lifestyle

Example: Being a dentist isn't so glamorous, but it **pays the bills**.

3. Work

3.1. What do you do?

I'm currently working as a graphic designer for a fashion magazine for youngsters

3.2. What are your responsibilities?

Well I'm mainly responsible for designing the cover of the magazine. I normally work with the concept team to make sure that the final product will both attract the potential buyer's attention and express the **theme** of the magazine.

3.3. Why did you choose to do that type of work (or, that job)?

I guess it's because of my **artistic passion**. The process of creating beautiful things is somehow **intriguing** to me, so I chose to be a graphic designer, which combines both art and technology. It's quite interesting, you know.

3.4. Is there some other kind of work you would rather do?

Well, if possible, I'd like to be a freelance writer. Actually I'm a big fan of action movies, and I also care about healthy living, so, I'd love to write about these topics and share my stories with people of the same interest.

3.5. Describe the company or organization you work for

My company is not huge, it's just a small art design office, but is definitely an inspirational workplace with a young, creative, and extremely passionate team. We work **on the basis of** mutual understanding and respect for each other, so it's kind of an ideal environment for me.

3.6. Do you enjoy your work?

Most of the time. It's **rewarding** to co-work on projects with amazing people in an open and supportive environment to bring out an art production that will **ultimately** give me a sense of satisfaction and pride.

3.7. What do you like about your job?

Well, **the perk of** being a graphic designer is that you'll surround yourself with inspiring images everyday. My daily working life involves seeking out inspiration in all sorts of places, researching incredible illustrations and graphics, and creating them too. It's great, I think.

3.8. What do you dislike about your job

What I don't like about this job is that our personal taste in design **varies**, and normally I'll have to do a thousand edits to get the final product that meets the demand of my boss while still * relating / staying faithful to /remaining true to the initial concept.

* conform means 'to behave according to the usual standards of behaviour that are expected by a group or society' – this does not relate to things like 'concepts'.

3.9. (Possibly) Do you miss being a student?

Sometimes, when I'm burdened with heavy workloads or the pressure of everyday life, I recall the memories of being a student. We were all carefree and innocent back then. It's a precious time that I **cherish**.

VOCABULARY

✓ theme (đề tài, chủ đề) [n] the main subject of a talk, book, film, etc

Example: The father-daughter relationship is a recurring **theme** in her novels.

✓ Intriguing (hấp dẫn, gợi thích thú) [adj] very interesting because of being unusual or mysterious

Example: The Huns are intriguing not only because of their notoriously hawkish history, but also because of their place as middlemen between Mongol and Turkic ethnicity

✓ On the basis of (trên cơ sở) [idiom] base on

Example: Discrimination **on the basis of** race, gender, age or disability is not allowed.

✓ Rewarding (bổ ích, đáng làm) [adj] giving pleasure, satisfaction

Example: The most **rewarding** aspect of living forever is you have unlimited time to perfect your abilities and accumulate wealth.

✓ Ultimately (cuối cùng thì, rốt cục) [adv] at the end of a process, period of time, etc.

Example: Everything will **ultimately** depend on what is said at the meeting with the directors next week.

✓ Perk (đặc quyền, thù lao thêm) [n] an advantage or something extra that you are given because of your job

Example: A company car and a mobile phone are some of **the perks** that come with the job.

✓ Conform (to sth) (tuân theo) [v] obey the rule or reach the necessary stated standard

Example: Before buying the baby's car seat, make sure that it **conforms to** the official safety standards.

✓ Cherish (yêu mến, coi trọng) [v] keep hopes, memories in your mind because they are important to you and bring you pleasure

Example: I **cherish** the memories of the time we spent together.

4. Advertisements

2.1. Are there many advertisements in your country?

I would say yes. You can easily see a wide range of advertisements almost everywhere in my hometown. For example, almost half of a newspaper is made up of ads.

2.2. Why do you think there are so many advertisements now?

I guess it's due to their benefits. First, advertising is an essential part of **promotional campaigns** for companies to reach their **end users**. It helps raise the visibility of a company's brand. Second, advertisements can act as decoration on the street. I find a street better-looking with advertisements.

2.3. What are the various places where we see advertisements?

Today advertising gets to people through different forms of communication, from **print media** to **electronic ones**, so you can see advertisements on websites, social networks or in the newspapers and magazines. There are also ads you see outdoors as well, for example, large banners and posters hung on the roads, on the buses or trains.

2.4. How do you feel about advertisements?

Most people may find those ways of product promotion annoying, but I'm an exception. I'm quite into advertisements. They're colourful, brilliantly designed, illustrated, photographed or typeset pieces and often have useful, **informative** contents.

VOCABULARY

✓ **Promotional campaign:** [noun] A series of advertisements using various marketing tools that share the same message and ideas to promote a business or event to a target audience.

Example: Promotional campaigns play a crucial role in the marketing strategy of a company.

✓ **End users:** [noun] Person or organization that actually uses a product

Example: We provide the best quality products to our end users.

✓ **Print media:** [noun] refers to paper publications circulated in the form of physical editions of newspapers, articles, journals, etc

✓ **Electronic media:** [noun] refers to television, radio, etc

✓ **Informative:** [adjective] giving useful information

Example: The professor's lecture was very informative and I learned a lot from it.

5. Birthday

5.1. How do children celebrate birthdays in your country?

It is popular for children in my country to have birthday parties at home or in restaurants and invite friends, and relatives to join. On this occasion, they are usually given gifts and money.

5.2. How did you celebrate your last birthday?

On my last birthday, I had the best birthday ever. I and friends made an all – day excursion to Phu Quoc Island, the largest island of Vietnam. We celebrated with a barbecue party outside and danced together under the moonlight.

5.3. What kinds of birthday gifts do you like to receive?

I'm really interested in handmade gifts because they represent not only the creativeness but also the passion of the senders. Therefore, I always appreciate receiving them and try to keep them as long as I can.

5.4. Is there a difference between the way you celebrate your birthday in the past and in the present?

Yes. In the past, when I was a child, I could only celebrate birthday parties at home and invited friends to join. However, as I'm mature now, I can decide to do more things to make it special such as by travelling to explore new places.

VOCABULARY

✓ **Excursion (noun):** (chuyến du lịch ngắn ngày) a short journey made for pleasure, especially one that has been organized for a group of people

Ex: There are regular weekend excursions throughout the summer.

✓ **Barbecue (noun):** (tiệc nướng) an outdoor meal or party when food is cooked on a metal frame over an open fire outdoors.

Ex: The supermarket sells a range of food ideal for summer barbecues.

✓ Handmade (adjective): (làm bằng tay) made by a person using their hands rather than by machines.

Ex: I'm really interested in handmade gifts because they contain not only the creativeness but also the passion of senders.

6. Family

6.1. How often do you meet with your family?

It's normally once a month. At present I'm studying and working in another city, which is quite far from my hometown, so I can only set aside time for my family at the end of the month, because of the distance and heavy workload, you know.

6.2. How do you spend the time with your family?

We often spend quality time together on eating scrumptious meals prepared by my mother, talking with each other while enjoying our favorite delicious foods. It's a precious time when we can momentarily get away from the hectic whirlwind of daily activities.

6.3. Do you want to live with your family in the future?

I'd prefer we live in the same city, so that we could take good care of each other, while making sure our family's bond is secure and will not suffer from potential discrepancies in our individual lifestyles or the generation gap.

6.4. What activities do your family like doing together?

My family often gather around the table enjoying a cozy mealtogether, communicating and sometimes busting into laughter because of my father's humorous stories. We're also particularly into family game nights, when we huddle together to play cards or other family favorites.

6.5. Are you close to of your family members?

Most of them. Actually I'm a little bit more distant with my brother as compared to other members. We have personality conflicts, and different viewpoints so we often have arguments over even the smallest things.

6.6. How has your family influenced you?

My family has definitely shaped who I am now. They have imprinted on me proper principles like respect, moral values and good manners. I have also inherited humbleness from my mother , and determination and patience from my father.

6.7. Do you want to be married or to be single in the future?

Yes, I do want to get married. We all ultimately find our true love in life, you know, and marriage is the ultimate commitment that we can make to our soulmate. Moreover, I want to build a loving and supporting home for my children like my parents have done for us.

Vocabulary

✓ Set aside (để dành ra) [phrasal verb] reserve for a special purpose, put to one side

Example: Some doctors advise setting aside a certain hour each day for exercise

✓ Scrumptious (ngon tuyệt) (thức ăn) [adj] very pleasing, delicious

Example: From breakfast until dinner, hawkers sell an infinite variety of some of the world's most scrumptious snacks.

✓ Hectic whirlwind (of activity) (vòng xoáy bận rộn của công việc) [expression] a busy schedule

Example: Within a hectic whirlwind of activity demanded by her vast portfolio, Powell makes time for personal life with her husband, Richard.

✓ Discrepancy (sự khác biệt) [n] lack of agreement or balance/ difference

Example: WFI called in police last November after spotting apparent discrepancies between donations made to the organisation and its expenditure.

✓ Burst into laughter (phá lên cười) [idiom] suddenly begin to laugh

Example: The situation was so ridiculous, they simply burst into laughter.

✓ Huddle together (túm tụm vào nhau) [v] gather/bunch together

Example: Four teens huddled together for comfort Sunday at the memorial service to honor victims of the attack at Columbine High School.

✓ Imprint (cấy vào, ăn sâu vào) [v] to establish securely, as in the mind or consciousness

Example: It's believed that most of our habits are imprinted early in childhood.

✓ Ultimate (cuối cùng, mang tính nền tảng) [adj] / fundamental, elemental/most significant

Example: Of course the ultimate responsibility for the present conflict without doubt lies with the aggressor.

9. Newspapers and magazines

9.1. Do you often read newspapers?

Yes, I read the newspaper everyday to **keep up to date** with the latest news and see what the hottest topic of the day is. I've **been in the habit of** doing this for a long time.

9.2. Do you prefer to read local news or international news?

Well, I suppose that I have an **inclination** towards international news, especially news about relationships among countries around the world. This is probably because I'm quite fond of **diplomatic** issues and want to **keep track** of what's happening outside my country.

9.3. Which is more popular where you live, newspapers or magazines?

Well, I think that people read newspapers more often than magazines, normally because newspapers provide information that is relatively easy to understand for almost everyone. On the other hand, magazines contain longer articles and specifically focus on a particular topic which may be quite difficult or **unfamiliar** to some readers.

9.4. Do many people today read newspapers?

I guess... yes, maybe. Because every morning when I go to my office, I can see many people reading the daily newspapers at **pavement** cafés. However, I think nowadays people are **tending to** gradually change their habits and **accessing** the latest news online.

9.5. In the future, do you think more people than today will read magazines, or fewer people?

I'm not really sure about this, but I suppose that there will be fewer people reading magazines in the future. It's probably because nowadays there are various sources of information, so people can search if they want to find knowledge of any field, especially on the Internet... it's easier and cheaper. Maybe in the future perhaps **specialists** will be the only ones who read the magazines which relate to their own particular fields.

9.6. Do you think newspapers will be very important to you in the future?

Well, honestly, I haven't ever thought about that before, but I love my routine of reading newspapers while drinking coffee every morning, it's completely relaxing ... so I'll try to keep reading newspapers as a regular habit as long as possible.

VOCABULARY

✓ **Keep up to date (expression):** Cập nhật to provide the latest information to someone or for something

Ex: I **keep up to date** with world events by watching the news on CNN.

✓ **Be in the habit of (expression):** to do something regularly and almost without needing to think about it

Ex: My grandfather **is in the habit of** taking a walk in the park every morning.

✓ **Inclination (noun):** Xu hướng a feeling that makes you want to do something

Ex: Her **inclination** has always been to live and work in Australia.

✓ **Diplomatic (adjective):** Ngoại giao connected with managing relations between countries

Ex: Attempts are being made to settle the dispute by **diplomatic** means in order to avoid a war.

✓ **Keep track of (expression):** Theo dõi to be informed about what is happening or where somebody/something is

Ex: Bank statements help you **keep track of** where your money is going.

✓ **Unfamiliar (adjective):** Không quen, lạ that you do not know or recognize

Ex: Although I knew some people at the party, there were also some **unfamiliar** faces among the guests.

✓ **Pavement (noun):** Vĩa hè a part at the side of the road for people to walk on

Ex: In summer, the restaurant puts a few tables and chairs outside on the **pavement**.

✓ **Tend to do something (expression):** Có xu hướng làm gì đó to be likely to do something or to happen in a particular way because this is what often or usually happens

Ex: When I'm tired, I tend to make mistakes.

✓ **Access (verb):** to enter or use something, such as a computer file

Ex: If you want to **access** information about the exam, there is a new website that I can recommend.

✓ **Specialist (noun):** Chuyên gia a person who is an expert in a particular area of work or study.

Ex: He is a specialist in Japanese history.

10. Transportation

10.1. What's the most popular means of transportation in your hometown?

The most **common** vehicle in my hometown is the motorbike. **As I've read** in a current newspaper, most Vietnamese adults have their own motorbikes. Moreover, I can easily **catch sight of** motorbikes whenever I go outside.

10.2. How often do you take buses?

I take buses to go to school at least twice a day as I haven't got my own vehicle yet. I also usually use buses to visit my relatives or friends' homes.

10.3. Can you compare the advantages of planes and trains?

Obviously, airplanes and trains have their own particular benefits for passengers. **Regarding** planes, they have been the fastest means of passenger transport invented so far. They enable people to travel all around the world in the shortest possible time.

The biggest advantage of trains is their impressive **safety record**. Accidents are rare, and so people can feel relaxed and just sit back and **admire** the views from their comfortable seats.

10.4. Is driving to work popular in your country?

Yes. I'm pretty sure that private cars and motorbikes are the two most popular vehicles in my country. Therefore, it is obvious that there are a large number of people who tend to drive to work.

10.5. Do you think people will drive more in the future?

Yes, I think so. There will be more drivers on the roads in the future due to the convenience of **motoring** and the **affordable** prices of cars.

10.6. Would you ride bikes to work in the future?

Yes. As I'm a young person, I like to do energetic activities to help me keep fit, so I will **give priority** to a job that is within cycling distance of my home.

10.7. What will become the most popular means of transportation in Vietnam?

Personally, I think the **prevalence** of motorbikes will continue to **dominate** in Vietnam due to their advantages, namely they are great for **getting around** quickly, they are easy to **park** and **economical** to **run**.

10.8. Do you prefer public transportation or private transportation?

Although owning a private vehicle has various advantages, I prefer using public transportation in order to **economize** as well as to help protect the environment.

VOCABULARY

✓ **Catch sight of (expression):** to see something only for a moment

Ex: I **caught sight of** someone with red hair, so I knew that it was you.

✓ **Safety record (noun):** details of how many accidents a company has had

Ex: With no accidents in the last 5 years, this airline has a good **safety record**.

✓ **Admire (verb):** to look at something and think that it is attractive/impressive

Ex: We stood for a few moments, **admiring** the beautiful view.

✓ **Motoring (noun):** the activity of driving a car

Ex: She's planning a **motoring** holiday in France next year.

✓ **Affordable (adjective):** cheap enough for people to be able to buy

Ex: This type of car is **affordable** for people who have a low income.

✓ **Give priority to (expression):** deal with something first, because you think it is more important than other things

Ex: This month I must **give priority to** revision for the exam, so I have taken some time off work.

✓ **Prevalence (noun):** the fact of being very common at a particular time or in a particular place

Ex: There is a worrying increase in the **prevalence** of smoking among young people.

✓ **Dominate (verb):** to be the largest, highest or most obvious thing in a place

Ex: The skyline is **dominated** by smoking factory chimneys.

✓ **Get around (phrasal verb):** to move from place to place

Ex: **Getting around** in this city is hard, because there is too much traffic.

✓ **Park (verb):** to leave a vehicle that you are driving in a particular place for a period of time

Ex: I **parked** my car in front of the supermarket while I did my shopping.

✓ **Economical (adjective):** providing good value in relation to the amount of money spent

Ex: Buy a small car – it will be more **economical** to run.

✓ **Run (verb):** to own and use a car or other vehicle

Ex: On my low salary, I can't afford to **run** a car.

✓ **Economize (verb):** to use less money than you normally use

Ex: In winter, don't **economize** on heating – it is more important to keep warm.

11. Shoes

1. Do you like shoes?

To be honest, I'm really addicted to shoes. I started building up my huge collection of shoes when I was eight years old. Now, whenever I have spare time, I often go shopping for shoes and spend a whole lot more money than I should on them.

2. Which do you prefer, comfortable ones or fashionable ones?

Well, it depends on different situations. For example, when I'm at home, I definitely prefer wearing flats because they are super comfortable. But when I go to work or parties, wearing fashion shoes such as high-heels or leather boots would be a better option for me because they make me look more confident and attractive.

3. Are people willing to buy expensive shoes?

Of course, some wealthy people can pay a lot of money to purchase shoes, which cost them an arm and a leg. The reason behind this is that they want to look trendy and show off their status.

Vocabulary:

Words	English meanings	Vietnamese meanings	Example
Be addicted to something (expression)	To cause to use something on a regular basis	Nghiện cái gì	Ex: That show is so good that I'm addicted to watching it every week.
A whole lot (adverb)	Very much	Rất nhiều	Ex: He didn't like her a whole lot.
Flats (noun)	Shoes that have a level surface, without heels	Giày bệt	Ex: I like wearing flats because I have to walk a lot.
Fashion shoes (noun)	Fashionable shoes	Giày thời trang	Ex: Celebrities often spend a lot of money buying fashion shoes.
Cost somebody an arm and a leg (expression)	Extremely expensive	Đắt cắt cổ	Ex: I want to buy a new Porsche, but it costs an arm and a leg.
Trendy (adjective)	Fashionable		Ex: She always wears the latest trendy clothes.
Show off (phrasal verb)	to behave in a way that is intended to attract at	Khoe, thể hiện	Ex: She is always showing off her fashionable clothes

	tention or admiration, and that other people often find annoying:		to her friends.
--	--	--	-----------------

12. Sports

1. What sports do you like? (why ?)

Well, I would say that there's quite a variety of sports on my favorites list but to be honest, I'm particularly keen on basketball. I guess the reason for this could be that basketball is a demanding and strenuous game, which helps me burn up lots of calories and keep myself in shape. Besides, it is a group activity that gives me the chance to meet up with new friends and build up strong relationships with others.

2. What sports are most popular in Vietnam?

It goes without saying that soccer is the most popular game across the globe and Vietnamese people are not any exception in their passion for it. This is because football is an inexpensive sport to play and everyone can get involved in the game as long as they want to. However, the most convincing reason making it the leading sport in Vietnam should be that soccer gives our people an opportunity to share in both the excitement and pride in our own country, especially when it comes to international tournaments like the Sea Games or Asian Cup.

3. Are boys and girls good at the same sports?

Well, in all fairness, I would probably say no. Generally, there's no doubt that boys tend to perform better at strenuous and active sports which require greater strength and stamina, such as football, boxing or basketball. Whereas in contrast, girls seem to be past masters at more relaxing and gentle activities, like yoga or ballet.

4. What sports do children prefer?

In my estimation, I guess that kids are particularly keen on engaging in group activities like soccer, or basketball. I suppose the explanation for this is that these games can be played in a team of ten to twelve people, not only giving children an opportunity to make friends but also bringing them great pleasure.

5. Do you like to do daily exercise? (why ?/why not?)

Well, to be quite honest, I'm pretty enthusiastic about working out. This is because regular exercise not only prevents me from being obese like those sitting glued to the screens but also allows me to discipline myself as I have to follow a fitness plan. In addition, keeping myself physically active is probably the most effective way to get me into shape and help me lead a healthy life.

6. What are the advantages of doing regular exercise?

Obviously there are a number of positive features. However, I guess the most evident would be that doing a workout might minimize the risk of getting diseases like diabetes or eye-related problems, which might help extend our life expectancy. Besides this, a second plus point could be that daily exercise enables us to relieve stress and refresh our mind, motivating us to focus on our daily tasks.

7. Where do people in Vietnam usually exercise?

Well, I suppose I would have to say that it kind of depends really. It goes without saying that Vietnamese young people are in favor of going to the gym and having their personal trainers to motivate them to reach their fitness goals. Whereas on the contrary, the elderly are more given to going for a walk or joining a dance club in the park.

Vocabulary:

- Burn up lots of calories: [expression] getting rid of energy in order to keep fit / đốt cháy nhiều năng lượng

Example: A good laugh can burn up as many calories per hour as brisk walking.

- Demanding: [adjective] requiring much skill or effort / (công việc) đòi hỏi, yêu cầu cao về chuyên môn, sức khỏe,...

Example: He was involved in technically demanding work for which he was plainly well qualified.

- Strenuous: [adjective] requiring or using great exertion / đòi hỏi sự rắng sức, căng thẳng
Example: All your muscles need more oxygen during strenuous exercise.
- Keep oneself in shape: [expression] keeping fit, having a healthy body / giữ một thân hình khỏe mạnh, giữ dáng
Example: I do exercises regularly in order to keep myself in shape.
- Build up strong relationships with: [expression] establishing friendship with others / xây dựng các mối quan hệ bền vững
Example: Participating in voluntary activities is a good opportunity to build up strong relationship with others.
- Get involved in: [verb phrase] participating in, take part in an activity / tham gia, tham dự
Example: Young people are enthusiastic about getting involved in community work.
- Convincing: [adjective] capable of causing someone to believe that something is true or real / làm cho người ta tin, có sức thuyết phục
Example: There is no convincing evidence that advertising influences total alcohol consumption.
- When it comes to: [expression] to mention or to talk about something / khi nhắc tới
Example: When it comes to fishing, he is an expert.
- Tournament: [noun] (in a sport or game) a series of contests between a number of competitors / (thể dục, thể thao) cuộc đấu, giải đấu
Example: England beat them in the semi-final in one of the best games of the tournament.
- Be good at something/doing something: [expression] to be very skilful at something / tài giỏi, có năng lực về một lĩnh vực nào đó
Example: To be honest, I'm not good at drawing.
- Stamina: [noun] the ability to sustain prolonged physical or mental effort / sức chịu đựng, khả năng chịu đựng
Example: Their secret to success is stamina rather than speed.
- Be a past master at: [expression] to be very good at something because you have been doing it for a long time / rất giỏi, có năng lực trong việc nào đấy
Example: She is a past master at cooking omelets.
- Gentle: [adjective] mild in temperament or behavior; kind or tender / nhẹ nhàng, dịu dàng

Example: She was a gentle person who retained a well balanced perspective on life throughout her long years.

- Engage in: [verb] participate in, get involved in something / tham gia, tham dự

Example: I'd be happy to engage in a discussion about the value of advertising.

- Meet up with: [verb phrase] hang out with, spend time with other people / gặp gỡ, làm quen với những người bạn mới

Example: Travelling abroad is a golden opportunity to meet up with people of different cultures.

- Bring somebody great pleasure: [verb] to make someone happy / mang lại niềm vui cho ai đó

Example: The new policy on tax reduction brings residents great pleasure.

- Obese: [adjective] being grossly fat or overweight / bệnh béo phì

Example: Children are becoming alarmingly more obese in developed countries.

- Sit glued to the screens: [expression] spending too much time watching TV or playing computers / ngồi dán mắt vào màn hình

Example: Children nowadays often spend their free time sitting glued to the screens.

- Discipline: [verb] train (someone) to obey rules or a code of behavior / rèn luyện, đưa vào kỷ luật

Example: Physical punishment is not the most effective way to discipline children.

- Get somebody into shape: [expression] keep fit / lấy lại vóc dáng

Example: I do regular exercise in order to get myself into shape.

- Lead a healthy life: [expression] in good condition, living a healthy lifestyle / ở trong tình trạng sức khỏe tốt; ăn uống, vui chơi lành mạnh

Example: Avoiding eating fast food enables people to lead a healthy life.

- Minimize the risk of: [expression] avoiding a dangerous situation / làm giảm nguy cơ, giảm thiểu rủi ro

Example: Giving disadvantaged children a chance to go to school is an effective way to minimize the risk of them committing crimes.

- Diabetes: [noun] a metabolic disease in which the body's inability to produce any or enough insulin causes elevated levels of glucose in the blood / bệnh tiểu đường

Example: Obese people are likely to suffer from illnesses such as cancer, heart disease, diabetes and asthma.

- Eye-related problems: [noun phrase] diseases relating to eyes / bệnh về mắt

Example: Playing computer games too much increases the risk of getting eye-related problems.

- Extend life expectancy: [expression] be able to live longer, prolong the life span / kéo dài tuổi thọ

Example: Advanced biological sciences enable people to extend their life expectancy.

- Refresh our mind: [expression] taking a break to relax and recharge energy / làm cho đầu óc tỉnh táo, thư giãn

Example: Hanging out with friends at weekends is a common way to refresh our mind in order to focus on daily demanding tasks.

- Be in favor of: [expression] on the side of; in support of / thích cái gì, ủng hộ cái gì

Example: Residents are in favor of the tax reduction policy.

- Reach one's fitness goal: [expression] be able to have a healthy body by working out

Example: People have to work hard in order to reach their fitness goals. / có được thân hình khỏe mạnh như mục tiêu đã đề ra

- Be given to: [expression] be likely to do something / có khuynh hướng làm gì, nghiêng về cái gì

Example: Mysister is given to shopping at malls where there is a greater choice of products.

13. Birds

1. How do you feel about birds? (why do you feel that way?)

I have to say I'm a bird-lover. It's primarily because birds are absolutely beautiful creatures with sweet songs. Watching them fly can evoke a feeling of freedom for me.

2. How do Vietnamese people feel about birds?

Well, it's difficult to generalize. Some people are fond of keeping birds. Some only like to eat them. And some develop a keen interest in taking pictures of birds.

3. Are there many birds near your home?

No. Birds are now a rare sight in my neighborhood or elsewhere in Hanoi center. I guess because there're too many skyscrapers and the environment is heavily polluted. You're more likely to find them in zoos, national parks, unpolluted cities or in the countryside.

4. Have you seen many different kinds of birds? (near your home)

No, I haven't unfortunately. I have only seen some sparrows play on my balcony, but very rarely. When I was still living in my hometown, a small village on the outskirts of Hanoi, I spotted a variety of birds like pigeons, red-whiskered bulbuls, and spotted doves.

Vocabulary

1. lover [noun]: (often in compounds) a person who likes or enjoys a particular thing (người yêu thích)

Eg: He was a devoted animal lover, and had a large number of pets at home.

2. primarily [adverb]: mainly (chủ yếu)

Eg: It was the first book of poetry primarily designed for children.

3. creature [noun]: a living thing, real or imaginary, that can move around, such as an animal (sinh vật, loài vật)

Eg: Dogs are more social creatures than cats.

4. evoke something [verb]: to bring a feeling, a memory or an image into your mind (gợi lên)

Eg: The music evoked memories of her youth.

5. generalize [verb]: to use a particular set of facts or ideas in order to form an opinion that is considered valid for a different situation (khái quát hoá)

Eg: It would be foolish to generalize from a single example.

6. interest (in somebody/something) [noun]: the feeling that you have when you want to know or learn more about somebody/something (sự quan tâm; sự thích thú)

Eg: He showed a polite interest in her story.

→ develop a keen interest in something: hình thành sở thích về điều gì

7. rare [adjective]: not done, seen, happening, etc. very often (hiếm; ít có)

Eg: It's extremely rare for it to be this hot in April.

8. sight [noun]: a thing that you see or can see (cảnh, cảnh tượng)

Eg: The eagle is now a rare sight in this country.

9. skyscraper [noun]: a very tall building in a city (nhà chọc trời)

Eg: It's located in a square surrounded by towering skyscrapers.

10. national park [noun]: an area of land that is protected by the government for people to visit because of its natural beauty and historical or scientific interest (vườn quốc gia)

Eg: The area was designated a national park because of the many rare creatures living there.

11. outskirts [noun]: the parts of a town or city that are furthest from the centre (vùng ngoại ô)

Eg: We live on the outskirts of a big city and we take a bus to the centre.

12. spot [verb]: to see or notice a person or thing, especially suddenly or when it is not easy to do so (nhận ra, phát hiện ra)

Eg: Can you spot the difference between these two pictures?

13. pigeon [noun]: a fat grey and white bird with short legs. Pigeons are common in cities and also live in woods and fields where people shoot them for sport or food. (chim bồ câu)

Eg: A pigeon strutted along the roof, singing rhythmically.

14. Red-whiskered bulbul [noun]: a songbird found in Asia (chim chào mào)

Eg: The red-whiskered bulbul has white cheeks, brown back, and a long white-tipped tail.

15. spotted [adjective]: having a regular pattern of round dots on it (lốm đốm)

Eg: I received a black and white spotted dress as a gift from my father.

16. spotted dove [noun]: is a small and quite long-tailed pigeon which natively lives in the Indian Subcontinent and Southeast Asia (chim cu gáy)

Eg: The spotted dove has a grey head and grey-brown neck and underparts.

14. Robots

1. Are you interested in robots? Why?

No, I'm not really keen on robots because I'm kind of a low-tech person. Also, a robot is a luxury technological product that I have never been able to afford, so I don't feel like I want to know much about them.

2. Would you like robots to work in your home?

If I had a lot of money, I'd like to have a robot in my home. As I'm always occupied with my work, I need a robot to help me do chores and prepare meals whenever I come home at night. That'd be great!

3. Would you want to take a car where a robot is the driver?

No, I wouldn't want a robot to drive my car. It would be too dangerous and risky for me to take a drive with a robot. Because a robot is programmed by humans, I don't think that it can handle road incidents quickly and efficiently enough to ensure safety.

4. Will robots replace human beings in the workplace completely?

Well, I have to admit that robots play an important part in our modern life. However, they will never completely replace the roles of humans at work as they are incapable of feeling emotions and thinking deeply like humans. For example, in a conference, people have to discuss problems in great detail before giving solutions and making decisions, but robots lack the capacity to respond to all questions instantly and effectively.

Vocabulary:

1. low-tech (adjective) not using the most recent equipment or methods (nói về người biết ít về công nghệ)

Ex: It is low-tech economy without modern machinery or techniques.

2. luxury (adjective) very comfortable and expensive, which not everyone can afford (xa xỉ)

Ex: They are staying in a luxury 5-star hotel in Paris.

3. afford (verb) to be able to buy or do something because you have enough money or time (có đủ khả năng mua hay làm thứ gì)

Ex: I don't know how he can afford a new car on his salary.

4. do chores (collocation) do housework (làm việc nhà)

Ex: I'll go shopping when I've done my chores.

1. handle (verb) to manage, deal with sth or sb (xử lý)

Ex: My wife handles all our household expenses.

6. incident (noun) an event that is either unpleasant or unusual (sự việc xảy ra bất ngờ)

Ex: A youth was seriously injured in a shooting incident on Saturday night.

7. to be incapable of verb + ing: be unable to do something (không có khả năng làm việc gì)

Ex: He seems to be incapable of walking past a music shop without going in and buying another CD.

8. capacity (noun) the ability to perform sth (năng lực)

Ex: Ask John to help us – he has a great capacity for hard work.

15. Names

1. Does your name have any particular meaning?

Let me see... Well I think it means “bright pearl” or “shining pearl”? I guess my parents wanted me to become an intelligent and successful girl so they gave me this name.

2. What’s the origin of your name? (or, your surname)

It’s pretty lame really... Dad wanted to call me “Ngoc” or “Chi” back then but he couldn’t decide which one, then one cousin of mine asked him whether I had a name and he just blurted out “Minh Chau”. My cousin then spread the news about my name to everyone, which was something Dad didn’t expect at all, and well, I am stuck with this name now.

3. Do you like your name?

At first no, because my friends often made fun of my name, like with some puns. But then I gradually learnt to accept it, and now I can’t imagine having a different name from this one.

4. What do your friends call you?

My friends back in secondary and high school tended to call me “Cat” or “Fat Cat” because of my nickname on social networks - well I love cats after all. University friends don’t really give me any nicknames; they just call me “Chau”.

5. Did your family have a certain (nick) name that they called you when you were a child?

Hmm... well, no? They just called me “Chau”. I think in some other families, parents would give their children some kind of nick name but that’s not the case in my family.

6. What names are popular to give to babies in your country?

I think people tend to choose some names like Linh or Trang for girls – I don’t know the actual meanings of those names though. For boys, the two most popular names, I think, are Son, which means the mountain and Hieu, which means to show affection and respect towards one’s parents.

Vocabulary:

✓ **Lame** [adjective] (vớ vẩn) unsurprising and dull

e.g. I found the programme pretty lame and not very informative.

✓ **Blurt** [verb] (thốt ra/buột miệng nói ra) say something suddenly and without careful consideration

e.g. He blurts things out without even meaning it, yet, he doesn't apologize!

✓ **Be stuck with sb/sth** [expression] (mắc kẹt với cái gì) to have to deal with someone or something unpleasant because you have no choice or because no one else wants to

e.g. We were stuck with him for the entire journey!

✓ **Pun** [noun] (chơi chữ) a humorous use of a word or phrase that has several meanings or that sounds like another word

e.g. This is a well-known joke based on a pun: “What’s black and white and read (= read) all over?”
– “A newspaper.”

16. Neighbors

1. Do you know your neighbors?

Yes, of course I do. People in my neighborhood know each other quite well, and all of them are very friendly and lovable. The family living next to my house is always willing to offer assistance when we need, and so is my family.

2. Do you like your neighbors?

Well yes, I love them, because they are good neighbors. The family next door has a grandmother whom I really respect, as she always gives me useful advice. I think that we live in harmony with one another.

3. What do you think of your neighbors?

As I have said, they are warm-hearted people. They receive a lot of affection and admiration for their kindness and generosity. I think it is quite good fortune for my family to live next to them.

4. How often do you see (or talk to) your neighbors?

I think very often. Each morning, we frequently greet when we meet each other. Whenever I am not occupied with schoolwork, I will visit the grandmother to talk to her. Her life experience and advice have helped me to overcome many difficulties and challenges.

5. When do you meet your neighbors?

We meet everyday, since we live next to each other. Particularly, at the weekends, the neighbors will gather in the biggest house to hold a party or BBQ, which is very appealing to the children.

VOCABULARY:

CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: A. THE ARTS (sách collocations)

1. to live in harmony with one another

Meaning: to live with others in a way which avoids conflict or disagreement

Example: The students who share the house are all good friends and they are able to live in harmony with one another.

Dịch đại ý

To live in harmony with one another: sống hòa hợp với người khác

Nghĩa: sống với những người khác một cách hòa hợp, tránh gây mâu thuẫn với nhau

Ví dụ: Sinh viên sống cùng một nhà là những người bạn thân và họ có thể sống hòa hợp với nhau.

CÁC TỪ KHÁC:

1. lovable [adj]: having qualities that people find attractive and easy to love : đáng yêu

Eg: Minh is a really lovable child.

2. (be) willing to do sth[expression]: ready or pleased to help : sẵn lòng làm gì

Eg: They keep a list of people who are willing to work at night.

3. assistance [n]: help or support: sự giúp đỡ

Eg: We do offer financial assistance for people on low incomes.

4. affection [n]: the feeling of liking or loving sb/sth very much : tình cảm

Eg: Children need a lot of affection and sympathy.

5. generosity [n]: the fact of being generous : sự rộng lượng

Eg: He treated them with generosity and thoughtfulness.

6. fortune [n]: chance or luck : sự may mắn

Eg: I did have the good fortune to work with some brilliant directors.

7. (be) occupied with sth [adj]: be busy with sth : bận rộn với cái gì đó

Eg: Lan is always occupied with the housework.

8. (to) overcome: to succeed in dealing with or controlling a problem: vượt qua cái gì đó

Eg: She overcame injury to win the Olympic gold medal.

9. (to) gather [v]: to come together, or bring people together : tụ họp

Eg: His supporters gathered in the main square.

10. appealing [adj]: attractive or interesting : cuốn hút, thú vị

Eg: Spending the holiday in Britain is extremely appealing.

17. Sunny days

17.1. Do you like sunny days?

To be honest, I'm not **into** sunny weather. I'd prefer a partially cloudy day without rain, when the weather is pretty cool, so that I could pleasantly take part in outdoor activities without getting **sunburn** or **sweating** from the heat of the sun's rays.

17.2. What do you like to do when it's a sunny day?

On a sunny day, I like to wake up early and take a walk around my neighborhood to enjoy the warmth of the sunshine, when the temperature isn't too high. I also prefer to **do the laundry** as clothes dry faster due to the lower **humidity** on these days.

17.3. Would you like to stay at home or go outside when the weather is great?

I've always had **the urge to** go outside on a nice day, as the beautiful weather makes me feel really comfortable from the inside. Also, there's **no hindrance** of **crappy** weather to outdoors activities, so I think I just can't **stick to** staying in bed and missing such an occasion.

17.4. Are there many sunny days in your hometown?

My hometown is in the middle region of a **tropical country** which means there's usually sunshine. In fact, due to its **coastal** location, it's the driest and hottest region in my country, especially in the summer, so the weather is somewhat extreme.

VOCABULARY

✓ Be into something (thích cái gì) [idiom] be interested or involved with

Example: Once you retire, it's important to be **into** some hobby you've always wanted to try.

✓ Sunburn (cháy nắng) [n] painful red skin caused by spending too long in the hot sun

Example: Her face was red with **sunburn**, and the salt air made it worse.

✓ humidity (độ ẩm) [n] moistness/ the amount of water vapor in the air

Example: Dehydration, in heat and **humidity** as well as dry winter weather, is a major headache trigger.

✓ Have the urge to do something (cảm thấy muốn làm gì) [idiom] suddenly want to do something

Example: She **had the urge to hit the road** as she wanted to experience paddleboard on Lake Tahoe.

✓ Hindrance (sự cản trở) [n] an impeding, stopping, preventing, or the like.

Example: Ignorance was no **hindrance to** advancement, socially and pecuniarily

✓ Crappy (dở, không hấp dẫn) [adj] extremely bad, unpleasant

Example: We booked a really **crappy** studio with no air conditioning and we just plotted up there.

✓ Stick to (bám chặt lấy, trung thành với cái gì) [idiom] remain faithful to/ keep one's attachment to

Example: They vowed to **stick to** one another no matter what happened.

✓ Coastal (thuộc bờ biển, ven biển) [adj] relating to/ located near a coast

Example: Policies that presently encourage development in low-lying floodplains and **coastal** areas should be immediately reexamined.

18. Email

1. Do you like to write a letter or email?

I really like writing letters to other people, especially on special occasions. I remember writing many letters, like birthday letters, or farewell ones to any of my friends or relatives who had to go somewhere far away from me. My friends and relatives always feel happy when they receive a letter from me; they say that it makes them feel important and **cherished**.

2. Do you think emails are useful?

Emails are really useful and important to me. I can use emails to contact people who are staying far away from me, and this really **comes in handy** as I have lots of foreign friends. Moreover, I can receive notifications of special deals or interesting information through emails by subscribing to any online channels that appeal to me.

3. What sorts of letters (or emails) do you think are the most difficult to write?

Formal emails, like the ones you send to recruiters, to your boss, to your professor and so on, are very difficult to write. You have to choose the right **tone** for the emails so that they do not appear too casual or too serious, and you have to pay attention to the format of the emails too.

4. Do you prefer to write letters or emails? Why?

It depends. For special occasions, like on someone's birthday, I prefer writing letters to congratulate them as handwritten letters can show my **sincerity**. However, if I need to write something formal, say to a recruiter to apply for a certain position, email is my first choice. It's instant, easy to format and I can attach different files with it so it is very convenient too.

5. Do you think email might one day replace handwritten letters?

I don't think so. Handwritten letters still carry in themselves special meanings, one of which is that they can show a writer's **sentiment**. I always think that it feels different when you look at someone's handwriting, like you can actually sense their feelings when they wrote the letter. So handwritten letters are irreplaceable, at least to me.

Vocabulary

1. **Cherished** [adj] (bringing the pleasure of love or caring about someone or something that is important to you): cảm giác được yêu thương

E.g. Her most **cherished** possession is a 1926 letter from F. Scott Fitzgerald.

2. **Tone** [noun] (the general mood or main qualities of something): tông

E.g. I didn't like the jokey **tone** of the article - I thought it was inappropriate.

3. **Sincerity** [noun] (honesty): sự chân thành

E.g. So when I sat down to write my public letter of apology, it dripped with venomous **sincerity**.

4. **Sentiment** [noun] (tender feeling or emotion): tình cảm

E.g. That song is full of patriotic **sentiment**. It moved me deeply.

5. **Come in handy** [expression] (to be useful): có ích

E.g. I'll keep these bottles - they might **come in handy**.

19. **Friends**

1. **Do you have many close friends?**

I have only one friend I would **confide in**. I'm quite **picky** and more importantly, I have a somewhat irrational fear that none of my friends really like me and that I'm just a guy they can barely **tolerate** and it is hard for me to **live in harmony with them**.

2. **Do you think friendship is important?**

There is no doubt that friendships play a vital role in our life. They make our lives interesting and wonderful. They help us develop a sense of sharing whether they are **tangible** things or just inspirational or motivational words of wisdom.

3. **Which do you prefer to spend time with: a friend or spend time alone?**

It depends. Normally, I'm more of a loner and generally spend more time in solitude than with friends. But when I'm in a bad mood, loneliness makes me feel **isolated** from the whole world. These days, I will hang out with my friends so that sad and unhappy thoughts cannot come into my mind.

4. **What kind of people do you like to have as friend?**

I find myself attracted to people who are honest and who know how to behave with others. I always avoid making friends with people who **have a superiority complex**.

5. **Do you like face-to-face conversations with people?**

Actually I like to talk with **cyber** friends more than having real-world conversations. I think others observe me a lot, they judge me and hence I become very self conscious and shy away from speaking face to face.

6. **Are most of your friends from school or from outside school?**

Most of my friends are from high school. People who I met at work or from clubs have less in common with me, whereas at Uni we all shared interests in the same things and subjects.

7. **How often do you meet with your friends?**

When I was younger, I used to meet my friends almost everyday. Even friends outside of school were a part of my daily social interactions. But now, as a 23 year old working professional, I barely meet anyone during weekdays. I meet my closest friends only on some weekends. These meetups are sporadic too.

8. **What do you and your friends do together?**

My closest friends and I have a mutual interest which is we always **have a thirst for** clothes shopping, so whenever we have time, we will go shopping together until we **break the bank**. Sometimes when we are out of money, just window shopping is enough.

9. **How do people in your country meet others and make friends?**

I don't think it particularly matters what country you're from. In every country, you can make friends just by sitting next to someone a few times during class, then a friendship logically happens. Otherwise, you can make cyber friends through social networks like Facebook or Twitter.

10. **Do adults and children make friends in the same way?**

Adults use self disclosure to develop trust and loyalty among friends. This is quite complicated in practice while children usually use common interests and goals as the basis of their friendships. More importantly, kids **have a whale of time** with whoever, but adults have to use their time for work and taking care of their family.

11. **Do you think it is possible to become real friends with people you meet on the internet?**

Of course it is possible to establish real friendships with someone online. What you need in a friendship is truthfulness, reliability, empathy, respect and loyalty. If you're getting all that from your online friends then you can consider them as **genuine** friends.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Communication and Personality

1. **To live in harmony with one another**

Meaning: to live with others in a way which avoids conflict or disagreement

Example: The students who share the house are all good friends and they are able to live in harmony with one another.

2. **To have a superiority complex**

Meaning: to have a feeling that one is superior to others

Example: She has a superiority complex, imagining that she is somehow better than her classmates at everything .

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Tourism

1. To have a thirst for

Meaning: to have a strong desire for something

Example: He has been all over the world, but he still has a thirst for seeing new places and enjoying new experiences.

2. To break the bank

Meaning: to use up all one's money/ to cost too much.

Example: Having a winter vacation in the sun without breaking the bank is a dream come true.

3. To have a whale of time

Meaning: to have an exciting or fun time

Example: We had a whale of a time at Ninh Van Bay Resort.

Các từ khác

1. Confide

[verb] to tell something secret or personal to someone who you trust not to tell anyone else

Eg: He confided (to her) that his hair was not his own.

2. Picky

[adj] very careful about choosing only what they like

Eg: Big companies can afford to be picky about who they hire.

3. Tolerate

[adj] to accept behaviours and beliefs that are different from your own, although you might not agree with or approve of them:

Eg: I will not tolerate that kind of behaviour in my class.

4. Tangible

[adj] real and not imaginary; able to be shown, touched, or experienced

Eg: We need tangible evidence if we're going to take legal action.

5. Isolate

[verb] to separate something from other things with which it is connected or mixed

Eg: A high wall isolated the house from the rest of the village.

6. Cyber

[adj] involving, using, or relating to computers, especially the internet

Eg: When she did venture forth from her digs, a favorite pastime was exploring the cyber world with Fred and his computer.

7. **Genuine**

[adj] If people or emotions are genuine, they are honest and sincere

Eg: He has demonstrated a genuine interest in the project.

20. **Politeness**

1. **Do you think you are a polite person?**

I do think I'm a polite person. I treat other people nicely and patiently, and I do not **insult** anyone unless they truly deserve it. Also, I properly apologize when I make mistakes and I show my gratitude when other people help me.

2. **Do you think people should be polite? Why?**

People should always be polite - it shows that they have good manners and it helps them earn others' respect. Being polite is like **having good social skills** - it can help one widen their social network, and this can positively influence one's private and professional life.

3. **How do people in your culture show good manners towards others?**

In Vietnam, showing good manners is when a junior properly greets a senior and talks to him/her politely with sufficient and correct **honorifics**. Politeness also shows during a meal, when people need to wish the others to have a nice meal and when the younger ones have to wait for the older ones to finish before cleaning the table.

4. **Have there been any changes in politeness in the past few decades?**

I always have this feeling that people start being less and less polite to each other as time passes. Maybe one of the reasons lies in the **etiquette** and **codes of conduct** that have gradually changed over time. In the past, it was very important to behave according to one's social class, and those of a lower rank had to obey those of a higher one. But today's society is different - you need to work hard to earn somebody's respect.

5. **Who taught you to be polite?**

This may sound weird but my friends actually taught me to be polite. I wasn't a very nice person when I was a kid, and my parents often scolded me for being rude to elders. One day, I remember watching one of my friends talking really nicely and politely to a senior. She was praised, and so I

started imitating her. My parents were really surprised when I changed my attitude, and they gave me some sweets as I was “being a good kid”. I have been showing my politeness to everyone ever since.

Vocabulary

Từ vựng chủ đề Communication and Personality:

1. codes of conduct

Meaning: voluntary rules which people accept in a situation

Example: The **code of conduct** is voluntary but it is seen as a sign of best practice.

Dịch đại ý

Codes of conduct: quy tắc xức xử

Nghĩa: những quy định được mọi người chấp nhận một cách tự nguyện trong giao tiếp

Ví dụ: Bộ quy tắc ứng xử là tự nguyện nhưng nó được coi là tiêu chuẩn thực hiện.

2. to have social skills

Meaning: to have the personal skills required for successful communication and interaction

Example: In all jobs which involve dealing with the public, it is important **to have good social skills**.

Dịch đại ý

To have social skills: kỹ năng xã hội tốt

Nghĩa: có những kỹ năng cá nhân cần thiết cho giao tiếp và tương tác thành công.

Ví dụ: Mọi công việc liên quan đến quan hệ quần chúng đều yêu cầu kỹ năng xã hội tốt.

Từ vựng khác:

1. **Insult** [verb] (to treat (a person) rudely or contemptuously): xúc phạm

E.g. He **insulted** her by telling her she was not only ugly but stupid too.

2. **Honorific** [noun] (an expression of respect): kính ngữ

E.g. The Japanese use many **honorifics** in their speech.

3. **Etiquette** [noun] (the set of rules or customs that control accepted behaviour in particular social groups or social situations): quy định, nghi thức

E.g. Social **etiquette** dictates that men cannot sit while women are standing.

21. Watches

How often do you wear a watch?

Since childhood I have had an **affection** for watches, so I wear my watch all the time. In fact I'd feel naked without my watch. But I usually reserve nicer watches or the ones with sentimental value for special occasions or when I wear luxurious clothes.

What was your first watch like?

I developed my affection for watches with a little cute Mickey Mouse dial shaped watch. And I guess everyone around my age used to own one like that as it was quite in at the time.

What kind of watches do you like to wear?

I'm a big fan of dress watches with a leather strap. It completes me. It gives a classic look and complements my outfit **irrespective** of the occasion.

Do people still wear watches in your country?

There are lot of watches being manufactured or imported and sold in my country since there are tons of people who love wearing them. Some would love wearing them for their **utility** while others would prefer to wear them as an **accessory**.

Did you receive any watch as a gift when you were a child?

Yes, the one I mentioned above, the Mickey Mouse dial shaped watch. My father recognised my enthusiasm for watches and he gave it to me as a birthday gift when I was about 7. I remember jumping around because of the excitement.

Vocabulary

1. Affection

[noun] a feeling of liking for a person or place:

Eg: She felt no affection for the child.

2. Irrespective

[adj] without considering

Eg: The legislation must be applied irrespective of someone's ethnic origins.

3. Utility

[noun] the usefulness of something, especially in a practical way

Eg: The utility of this substance has been proven in a series of tests.

4. Accessory

[noun] something added to a machine or to clothing that has a useful or decorative purpose

Eg: She wore a green wool suit with matching accessories.

22. Fruits

1. What's your favorite vegetable and fruit?

I like almost all fruit and vegetables except for the ones that just **disintegrate** when I bite into them.

I'm following **a diet rich in** fibre which contains a lot of vegetables and dried fruit and I really enjoy it.

2. How often do you eat fruit?

My family are big fruit eaters. And I'm no exception. We eat fruit every day, several times per day.

But nowadays, we are scared of all the **chemical preservatives** used to preserve its **shelf life**, so we eat it less than before.

3. Are there any special fruits in your hometown?

I'm not very sure. I think mangosteens are specific to the South East Asia region. The **flesh** of the fruit is absolutely **heavenly**, soft with a sweet and sour taste, and it makes a light and pure refreshment.

4. Should we eat vegetables everyday?

Half our diet at the bare minimum should be vegetables and fruit, **to provide ourselves with a healthier diet**. Vegetables not only provide a variety of flavours, but a largely **vegetarian diet is low infat**, unlike the **junk food** which is popular among many young people these days.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề *Food and Diet*

1. a diet rich in

Meaning: a diet which contains a lot of something

Example: **A diet rich in fibre**, such as dried fruits, helps to keep people healthy and active.

2. a chemical preservative

Meaning: a chemical substance used to prevent food from deteriorating

Example: The juice contains no artificial/**chemical preservatives**, so drink it within the next two or three days.

3. shelf life

Meaning: the length of time that food can be kept before it is too old to be sold

Example: Always check the dates on the packets of bread that you buy, because bread has a short **shelf life** in the shops.

4. to provide somebody with a healthier diet

Meaning: to give somebody a diet which is more healthy than that which they have at present

Example: People must reduce their consumption of fat and sugar in order **to provide themselves with a healthier diet**.

5. a vegetarian diet

Meaning: a diet with no fish and meat

Example: People who eat **a vegetarian diet** often do so as part of a healthy lifestyle.

6. low in fat

Meaning: containing very little fat

Example: To prevent obesity, a diet which is **low in fat** will certainly help.

7. junk food

Meaning: food that is quick and easy to prepare, but that is considered to be bad for your health

Example: The consumption of too much **junk food** is a major factor in obesity.

Các từ khác

1. disintegrate

Meaning: to break into small pieces

Example: The fruit was so ripe that it almost **disintegrated** when I tried to bite it.

2. flesh

Meaning: the soft part of fruit, especially when it is eaten

Example: The reason why most people like mangos is the soft and juicy **flesh**, which simply disintegrates in the mouth.

3. heavenly

Meaning: very pleasant

Example: The smells of all the fresh fruits in the market in the early morning are absolutely **heavenly**.

23. Jewelry

1. Do you wear any jewelry? Why or why not?

I have an **allergy**, so I only wear a watch, other than that I don't wear any jewelry, no necklaces or bracelets or anything.

2. What kinds of jewelry do people in your country wear?

Vietnamese people love simple and **sophisticated** things, and it shows in the jewelry they regularly wear. So you can say that Vietnamese people wear all types of jewelry, and I think there has been a **revival of interest in** more classical styles.

3. Would you ever buy a piece of jewelry? Why or why not?

I have a habit of collecting all kinds of jewelry if they are **works of craftsmanship**, although I cannot wear them. I've always had an interest in **the trade in antiques**, so if I see a piece of jewelry that is both old and beautiful, it's hard to resist buying it.

4. What kind of jewelry do you like to see on other people?

I love seeing girls with long necklaces that **evoke** a modern boho feel, and boys with classical wrist watches to **match** a suit. I think they are quite attractive with those accessories.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề *Traditional versus Modern*

1. a revival of interest in

Meaning: the process of something becoming more popular again

Example: There has recently been a **revival of interest** in traditional music and songs

2. works of craftsmanship

Meaning: objects which are made by people who are very skilled at making things by hand

Example: The ring that she is wearing is a beautiful **work of craftsmanship**.

3. **the trade in antiques**

Meaning: the buying and selling of old objects

Example: **The trade in antiques** is very popular, with many antique shops now opening in the city.

Vocabulary

1. **allergy**

Meaning: a condition that makes a person become sick or develop skin or breathing problems because they have eaten certain foods or been near certain substances.

Example: My mother cannot eat any product containing milk or other dairy products without getting a headache, and her doctor says that this is a common **allergy**.

2. **sophisticated**

Meaning: having a good understanding of the way people behave and/or a good knowledge of culture and fashion

Example: I don't think I have any books that would suit your **sophisticated** tastes.

3. **evoke**

Meaning: to make someone remember something or feel an emotion

Example: That smell always **evokes** memories of my old school.

4. **match**

Meaning: if one thing matches another, they look attractive together

Example: That gold necklace **matches** her black dress perfectly.

24. **Parks& Trees**

Parks

1. **Do you like going to parks and/or public gardens?**

I have to say I **have a really strong liking for** public green spaces such as parks and gardens. I believe that, when it comes to stress relief, nothing can beat hanging around in the park. I am a great fan of the color green, so being able to wander among the various shades of tree leaves appears to be the optimal way for me to **wind down**. What's more, looking at children having fun or people exercising and relaxing also cheers me up. That is the reason why I always **treat myself to** a visit to the park as a **compensation** for my heavy workload.

2. **When was the last time you went to a park?**

It is just about a week since I last paid a visit to the park. It was indeed a **heart-warming** experience for me as we had a family gathering there. We had a small picnic under the shade of an old tree, and the best thing about it was that everyone in the family was there. My father had never found the time to play with me as he had always been busy, so I've got **to make the most of** the time we are now able to spend together. That morning was really memorable, and I wished it could have lasted forever. I had never had so much fun.

3. Do you think the parks and the gardens where you live could be improved in any way?

I love my local park, but it doesn't mean that there is **no room for improvement**. What bothers me most is the water pollution in the park's lake. The water is turning greenish black and floating dead fish appear **every now and then**. For me, parks are supposed to provide citizens with a clean atmosphere to enjoy, so it is quite devastating to witness how environmental degradation has reached into the greenest place of the city. Personally, I **hold** the local park-goers **accountable** **for** throwing litter into the lake and contaminating the water. I believe that **a policy of zero tolerance** towards the act of littering the lake would be effective and **alleviate the environmental problems** facing the park authorities.

4. Would you like to see more parks and gardens in your home town?

I would definitely treasure the chance to witness the establishment of more and more green spaces in my city. My hometown is a highly industrial area with factories and skyscrapers everywhere, so I value the increase in the number of parks and gardens as more available **breathing space** away from the **hustle and bustle** of the **concrete jungle** that is my city. Air pollution from factories is another pressing issue, and the abundance of trees provided by parks contribute to enhancing the air quality. Parks and gardens also beautify the city's image, as they add colors to the view with trees and flowers. I dislike simplicity, so the monotonous picture of a dull, greyish city of buildings is definitely **not my cup of tea**.

5. Do you prefer to relax with your friends in a park or an indoor space?

Although I enjoy going to parks, my preference would be to gather with friends indoors. Parks are a lovely place to exercise or to picnic, but they are often too noisy and dynamic for an intimate talk with buddies. I would rather go to a café or bookshop where I can enjoy **peace and quiet** while concentrating on my friends' stories and sharing our **confidences**. Another factor that **puts me off** gathering with friends in parks is the extremes of our weather. When the temperature **hits rock**

bottom at 9 degree or climbs to the top of the ladder at 38 degrees **in the height of** summer, meeting up in parks is uncomfortable and unthinkable.

Vocabulary

Từ vựng trong chủ đề *Environment*

1. **to hold sbdy accountable for + noun/gerund** (expression): to consider someone responsible for something; to blame something on someone

Nghĩa: coi ai đó có trách nhiệm cho cái gì/

đổ lỗi cho ai về chuyện gì đó

Example: Companies which discharge chemical waste from their factories into the sea or into rivers must be **held accountable for** their actions and be fined heavily.

2. **to alleviate environmental problems** (expression): to make bad environmental problems less severe

Nghĩa: Khiến các vấn đề về môi trường đỡ nghiêm trọng hơn

Example: Everyone can assist in the effort **to alleviate environmental problems** in the local community through simple actions such as recycling waste or planting a tree in their garden.

Từ vựng trong chủ đề *Business and Finance*

1. **compensation (for something) (n)**: a thing or things that make a bad situation better

Nghĩa: một hoặc nhiều thứ mà làm cho một tình huống xấu tốt hơn

Example: I wish I were young again, but getting older has its **compensations**.

Từ vựng chủ đề *Crime and Punishment*

1. **a policy of zero tolerance (exp)**: a policy of applying laws very strictly, so that every illegal action is punished, even if it is not very serious

Nghĩa: một chính sách áp dụng luật hà khắc, để tất cả các hành vi phạm tội đều phải bị trừng phạt, dù đó không phải tội nghiêm trọng

Example: I would argue that the most effective way to reduce crime is to implement **a policy of zero tolerance**.

Từ vựng khác:

1. **to have a liking for something/ doing something** (expression): to like or enjoy something or doing something.

Nghĩa: yêu thích một điều gì đó hoặc làm gì đó.

Example: She **has an** unusual **liking for** abstract paintings.

2. **to wind down** (phrasal verb): to relax after a period of activity or excitement.

Nghĩa: giải tỏa cảm xúc bị dồn nén lại

Example: I usually watch a comedy programme on TV **to wind down** after work.

3. **to treat somebody to something** (phrasal verb): to give somebody/yourself something special as a gift or favour

Nghĩa: làm ai đó vui vẻ bằng một thứ gì đó đặc biệt

She **treated herself to** a pizza after the exam.

4. **heart-warming** (adjective): causing feelings of happiness and pleasure

Nghĩa: làm cho người ta thấy vui vẻ, thỏa mãn

Example: It's heart-warming to hear of the success you've had with the appeal.

5. **to make the most of something** (expression): to make something appear as good as possible; to exploit something; to get as much out of something as is possible.

Nghĩa: tận dụng một thứ gì đó

Example: Mary knows how **to make the most of** her talents.

6. **room for improvement** (expression): things that can be made better

Nghĩa: các điểm cần được cải thiện

Example: There's much **room for improvement** in her last report.

7. **every now and then** (expression): Occasionally, from time to time; also, periodically.

Nghĩa: thỉnh thoảng, thỉnh thoảng

Example: **Every now and then** I long for a piece of chocolate.

8. **breathing space** (noun): a short rest during a period of physical or mental activity

Nghĩa:

Example: After finishing one exam, she needed a **breathing space** before starting the next one.

9. **hustle and bustle** (expression): busy and noisy activity of a lot of people in one place.

Nghĩa: sự xô bồ và bận rộn

Example: I can't stand the **hustle and bustle** of big cities.

10. **concrete jungle** (expression): An overcrowded, unsafe and/or crime-ridden urban environment or city, characterized by the congestion of large buildings and roads.

Nghĩa: một thành phố quá đông đúc và/hoặc nhiều tệ nạn, được đặc trưng bởi sự tắc nghẽn của các tòa nhà và đường lớn.

Example: After years living in that **concrete jungle**, I'm looking forward to being in a place with a bit of grass and friendly neighbors.

11. **not one's cup of tea** (expression): something not preferred or desired.

Nghĩa: một thứ gì đó không được mong đợi hoặc thích

Example: Driving children around all afternoon is **not my cup of tea**.

12. **peace and quiet** (expression): tranquility and freedom from disturbance.

Nghĩa: sự bình yên, thoát khỏi sự làm phiền

Example: All I want is a little **peace and quiet** away from the noise of the traffic.

13. **confidences** (noun): secrets that you tell somebody

Nghĩa:

Example: The girls exchanged confidences about their hopes for the future.

14. **to put sb off sth/doing sth** (phrasal verb): To discourage someone from doing something.

Nghĩa: làm ai đó không muốn làm gì

Example: The bad weather **put us off** from trying to climb the mountain.

15. **to hit rock bottom** (expression): to reach the lowest possible level or be in the worst possible situation

Nghĩa: đạt đến điểm thấp nhất ở tình huống xấu nhất

Example: She used illegal drugs for eight years and quit before she hit rock bottom.

16. **in the height of sth** (expression): the point when something is at its best or strongest.

Nghĩa: ở thời điểm mà cái gì đó mạnh mẽ nhất

Example: I would not go out in the height of the heat wave.

Trees

1. Do you like trees?

I really like trees. An ideal day for me would be when I could lie under the beautiful, cool shade of a big oak tree, enjoying the breeze, listening to the the amazing sound of birds chirping, and not having to worry about anything at all.

2. (Similar to above) Do you like (to go to) the forest (or, a forest)?

I have never been to a forest before, so I would love it if I could go to one. I have always enjoyed watching TV programmes about the **wilderness** ever since I was a kid. Being able to go to a forest, and I mean a **primeval**, um, an ancient one, would be paradise for me.

3. Is there a forest near your hometown?

Unfortunately no. My hometown is a city that doesn't have a beach, let alone a real forest.

4. (Possibly) Would you like to live in a place that has lots of trees?

I would love it. I'm not kidding. I would **adore** it! In fact, currently I'm living on the outskirts of Toronto, surrounded by lots and lots of trees and it feels good every day to wake up early, get out of the house and go for a walk while breathing in the fresh air and **taking in** the amazing scenery.

5. Where can one find trees (or forests) in your country?

Trees are planted almost everywhere, but for forests I guess you need to do some research. There's a place that is called Cuc Phuong National Park in Northern Vietnam, and there are some other protected forests in different parts across Vietnam as well.

6. Do you think places with trees attract more visitors than places with few trees?

I don't know about other people, but I would definitely choose a place full of trees over one which has none. Or maybe other people would make the same choice as me: isn't it nice **to feel at one with** nature and to be able to immerse yourself in greenery and the fresh open air?

7. Did you ever (like to) climb trees when you were a child?

As a matter of fact, I did. There was a lychee tree at my grandparents' house in the countryside - it was cut down several years ago - and I used to climb it every time I visited them.

8. Have you ever planted a tree?

Let's say I have, although it's not technically a tree. When I was in grade 4, I had an assignment in which I needed to plant something and bring it to class. I chose to plant some beans, although, sadly, it **fell through** - the rats just waited until the right moment and **gobbled** them all.

Vocabulary:

1. **wilderness** (noun): an area of land that has not been used to grow crops or had towns and roads built on it, especially because it is difficult to live in as a result of its extremely cold or hot weather or bad earth: vùng hoang vu
e.g. Alaska is the last great **wilderness**.
2. **primeval forest = ancient forest** (noun): a forest that has attained great age without significant disturbance and thereby exhibits unique ecological features and might be classified as a climax community: rừng nguyên sinh
e.g. **Ancient forests** are often biologically diverse, and home to many rare species, threatened species, and endangered species of plants and animals.
3. **to adore** (verb): to love or like very much: quý mến, yêu mến
e.g. He **adores** his children.
4. **to take in** (phrasal verb): to take notice of something with your eyes
e.g. When I travel by air, I love **to take in** the sights as the plane prepares to land.
5. **to feel/be at one with sth** (expression): to feel a strong connection to something
e.g. Whenever I go for a walk in the countryside, I **feel at one with** nature.
6. **fall through** (phrasal verb) to fail or come to nothing: thất bại, không đi đến kết quả nào
e.g. Despite our effort, the plan **fell through**.
7. **gobble** (v) to swallow food etc. quickly: ngấu nghiến, nuốt lấy nuốt để
e.g. You'll be sick if you keep **gobbling** your meals like that.

25. Text messages

1. Do you text someone if he doesn't answer your phone?

It depends. I often send a message if it's an essential issue that he needs to know. In case of an emergency, I'll try to make another phone call instead of texting. And if my call is just about some daily stuff such as seeing a movie, eating out or if I just want to **have a chat**, then I just text and wait for a reply.

2. Is there any occasion when texting someone is better than calling him?

Oh, yes. It might be when I'm informed beforehand that he or she will attend a formal event. For example, my mother or father usually ask me not to phone them the following morning if they

have something important, like a company meeting. Because I already know about it, I'll just send them text messages if I need **to get in touch with** them about something.

3. Have you ever had difficulty replying?

Well, that would be when my phone account runs out of money – I may sometimes forget to **top** it **up**. Another case may be when my battery is used up and needs charging. It's even worse when both of them happen at the same time and somehow I foolishly leave my charger at home.

4. How often do you send text messages?

Daily, or hourly. We now have so many **user-friendly** applications on smartphones and other **social networking sites** that make texting much easier than ever before. Of course, these applications also support calling, yet to be honest, **I'm** more **into** sending texts than making a call.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Communication:

1. to be user-friendly

Meaning: to be easy to use, without a need for advanced skills

Example: One feature of modern communications technology is that, in general, it is **user-friendly**.

Dịch đại ý

To be user-friendly: thân thiện với người dùng

Nghĩa: dễ sử dụng, không cần kỹ năng cao

Ví dụ: Một trong những đặc điểm chung của công nghệ giao tiếp hiện đại là chúng khá thân thiện với người dùng.

2. social networking sites

Meaning: a website on which you communicate with people who share your interests

Example: Young people today waste too much time on **social networking sites** such as Facebook or Twitter

Dịch đại ý

Social networking sites: mạng xã hội

Nghĩa: trang web nơi bạn giao lưu với mọi người và có thể chia sẻ những vấn đề bạn quan tâm
Ví dụ: Người trẻ hiện nay thường lãng phí quá nhiều thời gian vào các trang mạng xã hội như Facebook hay Twitter.

Các từ khác:

1. to get in touch with sb [expression]:

Meaning: to communicate with somebody, especially by writing to them or calling them

Example: I'm trying **to get in touch with** John – do you have his number?

2. to top up [phrasal verb]:

Meaning: to increase the amount of something to the level that you need

Example: I have no more credit left on my mobile phone, so I will **top it up** today.

3. to be into sth [expression]: (enthusiastic or interested in): thích cái gì

E.g. Jackie's really **into** classical music - he listens to it all the time.

26. Patience

1. What do you think "patience" is?

Well, I suppose "patience" indicates a person's capacity to wait or to endure delay or something **tedious** or annoying without complaining and getting **riled** about it.

2. Do you think patience is important?

Yes, being patient is vital because it is helpful in many situations. Being impatient does not solve the problems but causes more trouble. Also, individual people tend to like patient people because they usually have calm attitudes and an **easy-going** personality.

3. (Possibly) Do you think being patient is an important part of being polite?

Of course, being patient shows your **respectful** and **thoughtful** attitudes to others. For example, at the coffee shop, people have to **queue** in line and wait patiently for their turn.

4. Would you say you are a patient person?

Generally, I'm an impatient person because I hate waiting for other people. I can easily **get annoyed** if my friends do not **turn up** on time. However, in certain situations, I can remain patient, like studying English every day without feeling bored.

5. Have you ever lost your patience?

Yes, I have. Last week, I planned to **hang out with** my friend at the KFC restaurant. But my friend didn't come and she made me wait for more than thirty minutes. I called her and she didn't even respond to it. Being tired of waiting for so long, I just left her a message **reproaching** her and saying that she did not need to come any more. I was so angry that I did not talk to her for a few days.

6. What do you become impatient about?

As I mentioned previously, I **loathe** waiting for individuals or something taking up too much time. It usually makes me feel upset and **irritated**.

Vocabulary:

1. **tedious** (adjective) boring

Ex: The problem is I find most forms of exercise so **tedious**.

2. **get riled** (expression) to get very annoyed (vô cùng tức giận)

Ex: I **got riled** when the shop assistant was rude to me.

3. **easy-going** (adjective) relaxed and happy to accept things without worrying (dễ gần, thoải mái)

Ex: She won't get angry if you're late, she's very **easy-going**.

4. **respectful** (adjective) showing politeness or honor to someone or something (kính trọng)

Ex: There was a **respectful** two-minute silence as we remembered the soldiers who had died in the war.

5. **thoughtful** (adjective) carefully considering things (thận trọng, chín chắn)

Ex: He has a **thoughtful** approach to his work, planning everything well.

6. **queue** (verb) to wait in a line of people, often to buy something (xếp hàng nối đuôi nhau)

Ex: Dozens of people were **queuing** up to get tickets.

7. **get annoyed** (verb phrase): become angry (tức giận)

Ex: He **got annoyed** at the way she tried to take over the whole meeting.

8. **turn up** (phrasal verb): to arrive (đến, xuất hiện)

Ex: We arranged to meet at midday, but he didn't **turn up**.

9. **loathe** (verb) hate somebody or something very much (ghét)

Ex: From an early age the brothers have **loathed** each other.

10. **hang out with** somebody (expression) spend time with somebody(đi chơi với ai)

Ex: When I have free time, I **hang out with** friends and we listen to music or chat.

11. **reproach** (verb) to criticize someone, especially for not being successful or not doing what is expected (sự trách mắng, chỉ trích)

Ex: His mother **reproached** him for not eating all his dinner.

12. **irritated** (adjective) annoyed (giận dữ)

Ex: I began to get increasingly **irritated** at her foolish questions.

27. Daily routine

1. What is the busiest part of the day for you?

Well, it seems that I am **up to my ears in work** most parts of the day. However, as my part-time job as a private tutor usually starts in the evening, I guess that is the busiest part of the day for me. Each day, I have about 3 to 4 different classes to handle, and the job only finishes after 9pm.

2. What part of your day do you like best?

To me, I love the morning the most. A beautiful morning, full of sunlight and fresh air, is the best start for a day. It **revitalizes** my energy by giving me the chance **to take gentle exercise** and enjoy a brisk walk in the park. I am always **in high spirits** in the morning, feeling ready for a brand new day.

3. Do you usually have the same routine everyday?

Yes, I do. From Monday to Friday, I will take university courses in the morning and undertake teaching classes in the evening. Only at the weekends can I spare time to hang out with my friends and family members, which without doubt **breathes new life into** my daily rigid routine.

4. What is your daily routine?

Well, as I have said in answer to the previous question, most of my time is dedicated to studying and working. In the morning, I wake up before 7am, do exercise and then have breakfast. My classes last from 8am to 11am. After having lunch at the university cafeteria, I **take a quick nap** at home before starting teaching.

5. Do you ever change your routine?

Yes, sometimes. When I have no classes at the university, I often study IELTS at home by listening to **authentic** materials on the Internet or practice speaking in front of the mirror. Besides, I also

read books and play chess whenever I am free of classes. However, as I don't have **flexible hours** for studying and working, I rarely have the chance to change it.

6. Do you think it is important to have a daily routine?

Yes, it definitely is. A proper daily routine will assist you in arranging your activities in the most **sensible** way. Without a daily routine, one usually does things on impulse, which could reduce your work efficiency and productivity in the day. I think those who are disorganised can benefit more from a daily routine.

7. What would you like to change in your day to day routine?

Well, if I was given the opportunity to change my daily routine, I would like to have more breaks at night. Instead of teaching in the evening till late, I would like to take classes in the morning. This would be good for my overall health, as working at night is fairly demanding and exhausting.

8. Are all your days the same?

Not really I think. Because each day, I can learn new things from new people I meet in my school and workplace, so I don't feel like my day is **repetitive**. Each day brings me new experience and valuable lessons, which helps me to **broaden my outlook** on life. Days only appear to be the same and **tedious** when you don't put energy and effort into things you do each day.

9. What time do you get up?

Normally, I have to wake up quite early, at 6.30 am to have more time for exercise and breakfast, before starting classes at 8am. However, I can stay in my bed longer at the weekends, until 8am or even 9am when I want to **put my feet up** after a hardweek.

Vocabulary:

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Sport and Exercise

1. to take gentle exercise

Meaning: to take exercise which is not physically demanding or tiring

Example: Even the elderly can keep fit by **taking gentle exercise**, like jogging or even a walk in the park.

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Work

1. flexible hours

Meaning: hours of work or study that can be changed by agreement with your boss or teacher

Example: For some employees, **flexible hours** of work are more important than a high salary.

Từ vựng khác:

1. **(to be) up to one's ears in sth** [expression]: be too busy with sth: bận rộn, ngập đầu với cái gì đó

Eg: Recently, Professor Tim **has been up to his ears in** research work.

2. **(to) revitalise** [verb]: to make sth stronger, more active or healthy : hồi sinh, giúp lấy lại sinh lực

Eg: Jane is trying her best **to revitalise** herself after the shock of her father's death.

3. **(to be) in high spirits** [expression]: to be in a cheerful state of mind : cảm thấy phấn chấn

Eg: Thanks to the astounding championship, the whole team **is in high spirits**.

4. **(to) breathe new life into** [expression]: to improve sth by making people more interested in it: thổi một làn gió mới vào cái gì đã cũ, nhằm chán

Eg: Minh's ideas are really innovative and they **breathe new life into** the project.

5. **(to) take a quick nap** [expression]: to have a short sleep : có một giấc ngủ ngắn

Eg: Bob took a quick nap after 9 hours working non-stop in the office.

6. **authentic** [adjective]: true and accurate : xác thực, chắc chắn

Eg: She made an **authentic** translation of her book into English.

7. **sensible** [adjective]: practical, wise, advisable : hợp lý

Eg: I think the **sensible** solution is to make a concerted effort to prevent the war.

8. **repetitive** [adjective]: saying or doing the same things many times, so that it becomes boring : có tính lặp đi lặp lại

Eg: Ryan is really bored with his **repetitive** tasks in the company.

9. **(to) broaden one's outlook** [expression]: to increase one's knowledge and experience

Eg: The year that I spent studying in China really **broadened my outlook** in many ways.

10. **tedious** [adjective]: lasting or taking too long and not interesting : tẻ nhạt, nhàm chán

Eg: We have to listen to the **tedious** details of his operation.

11. **(to) put one's feet up** [expression]: to sit down and relax : thư giãn

Eg: After a hard day at work, it's advisable to get home and **put your feet up**.

28. Films

1. Do you like to watch films?

I absolutely love watching movies. It is a way to experience how others live. Each of us can only have one life but we can experience so many different lifestyles in movies. It is kind of temporarily putting oneself into another world.

2. Do you prefer foreign films or Vietnamese films?

I'm much more into **imported films** rather than **domestically** produced ones, because of a thing called cultural **exposure**. People in different countries have different cultural **norms** and ideas that come across in their film-making. To me, that's important for **broadening our horizons**.

3. How often do you go to a cinema to watch a movie?

I'm not really keen on watching films in the cinema. Therefore, I only go there when I have to meet my friends, or sometimes when there is a **blockbuster** that I want to see immediately.

4. Do Vietnamese people like to go to a cinema to watch a film?

I would say yes. I can see that movie theaters have become an important part of Vietnamese life, and cinemas are **packed** whenever blockbusters are released. People like to go to a cinema to watch films since they can enjoy the lively sound and images on the big screen and spectacular **special effects** always **have a wide appeal to audiences**.

5. What kinds of movies do you like best?

I like adventure ones. They excite me, they keep me **in anticipation**, waiting to see amazing visual effects, hear great soundtracks, cry, be scared, laugh, and think.

6. What was the first film that you watched?

Well, it's hard to remember exactly. I guess it should be an **animated** film like Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs or Nupakachi, which were the most popular films among children at my age in the 1990s.

Vocabulary

• CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: READING (sách collocations)

1. to broaden one's horizons

Meaning: to widen the limit of your desires, interests or knowledge

Example: Watching foreign films **has broadened my horizons** by showing me how people act and think in different cultures.

• CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: READING (sách collocations)

1. **to appeal to audiences**

Meaning: to attract or interest those who go to watch a play or film.

Example: Plays which deal with contemporary social issues are likely **to appeal to audiences**.

Vocabulary

1. **imported films** [noun]

Meaning: foreign films (phim nước ngoài)

Example: China appears to have relaxed its rule limiting the number of **imported films** that can be shown each year.

2. **domestically** [adverb]

Meaning: in a way that relates to a person's own country (nội địa)

Example: The movie took in \$77.9 million **domestically**, but only made \$9.1 million overseas.

3. **exposure** [noun]

Meaning: the fact of experiencing something or being affected by it because of being in a particular situation or place (sự tiếp xúc, tiếp cận)

Example: You should always limit your **exposure** to the sun.

4. **norm** [noun]

Meaning: an accepted standard or a way of behaving or doing things that most people agree with (qui tắc, tiêu chuẩn)

Example: He is into Europe's varied cultural, political and ethical **norms**.

5. **blockbuster** [noun]

Meaning: a book or film that is very successful (phim bom tấn)

Example: He is always waiting for **blockbusters** to be released, then he will go to the cinema to see them.

6. **packed** [adjective]

Meaning: very full of people

Example: The train was **packed** and every seat was occupied.

7. **anticipation** [noun]

Meaning: a feeling of excitement about something which is going to happen

Example: The football stadium was filled with **anticipation** as the game was about to start.

8. **animated** [adj]

Meaning: photographed or created by a computer and shown in a way that makes them move (hoạt hình)

Example: *Inside Out* is considered as one of the best **animated** films of the 21st century so far.

29. Mathematics

1. When did you start learning math?

Math is a compulsory subject in Vietnamese primary schools, so every child has to learn this **complex** subject from the first grade, and I'm no exception.

2. Do you like math?

It is thought that mathematics **stifles** and discourages more students than any other single thing in the curriculum. However, I find this subject very special and interesting to learn. I do think it's the most **elemental** of all subjects. Mathematics is the root of all sciences and all understanding of the physical world. Therefore, I love learning mathematics.

3. Who's your favorite teacher so far?

The best math teacher I had was in primary school. She would begin a class by asking just why you need to know how to do a certain problem. Then she would go to the board. You want to be a chef, then fractions will help you adjust recipes. Finding X tells you how much gas you need or how far you can fly a plane. She made us think of mathematics as a practical subject and worth learning.

4. Is math difficult for you to learn?

As I said already, I love math, but I have to admit that it is not an easy subject. I think that I **have a good grasp of it**, although I have to pay attention in the math class more than any other subject. At home, too. I pour my heart and blood and sweat into math questions and **struggle** with them to find the answer. If I did not do this, I would soon **be out of my depth**.

5. Do you like to use a calculator?

I'm not sure whether calculators affect our ability to do maths in our heads like we used to or not. However, I like to solve math problems by hand, and I only use this modern convenience to do **trivial** things like checking answers.

Vocabulary:

• CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: EDUCATION (sách collocations)

1. to have a good grasp of something

Meaning: to understand the essential parts of something completely

Example: Children who begin to learn a foreign language in primary school are usually able **to have a good grasp of** the new language quickly.

2. to be out of one's depth

Meaning: to be unable to understand something because it is too difficult

Example: Streaming in schools enables pupils to study at the level which is appropriate for them, and therefore students rarely find themselves **out of their depth**.

Vocabulary

1. complex [adjective]

Meaning: difficult to understand or find an answer to because of having many different parts (phức tạp)

Example: It's a very **complex** issue to which there is no straightforward answer.

2. to stifle [verb]

Meaning: to prevent something from happening

Example: Traditional, boring methods of teaching **stifle** the enthusiasm of students.

3. elemental [adjective]

Meaning: basic or most simple, but strong (căn bản)

Example: This story is about the struggle of one man against the **elemental** forces of nature while trying to survive after his plane crashed in the ocean.

4. to struggle [verb]

Meaning: to experience difficulty and make a very great effort in order to do something (đấu tranh)

Example: **I've been struggling** to understand this article all afternoon.

5. trivial [adjective]

Meaning: easy to solve (đơn giản, không đáng kể)

Example: Getting computers to understand human language is not a trivial problem – it is extremely complex.

30. Social network

1. What kinds of social networking websites do you like to use?

I'm currently having a love affair with Facebook, Instagram and have basically left Zalo (I never liked Zalo to begin with, but my whole family is on it). And I'm familiar with LinkedIn to find content that's **relevant** to the industry that I work in.

2. Are you a social person?

I guess that I **have some social skills** since I like to be around others and I **have a fairly laid-back attitude**. I'm **reasonably** good at talking with other people and doing activities as a team or in a group.

3. What kinds of people do you like to be friends with on those websites?

It depends on the type of social media, but generally I like to be friends with people who are friendly, honest and who have common sense about how to behave with others. I don't like **to make small talk** and I prefer to chat to people with whom I share common interests, so that we can learn from each other.

4. Is it easy to find real friends on a social networking website?

I think real friends are the ones with whom we can share a lot of personal experiences in our conversation, and it feels like there is a **mutual** respect between us. Therefore, it's always difficult to find real friends, no matter whether it is in real life or on a social networking website.

5. What kinds of chatting app or software do Vietnamese people like to use?

I think Facebook and Zalo are the most popular ones. Facebook is a **well-known** social networking app around the world while Zalo is a messaging app for Vietnamese people. It has a look around option where you find people nearby to talk with.

Vocabulary

• CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: COMMUNICATION AND PERSONALITY (sách collocations)

1. to have social skills

Meaning: to have the personal skills required for successful communication and interaction

Example: In all jobs which involve dealing with the public, it is important **to have good social skills**.

2. to have a laid-back attitude

Meaning: relaxed, not worrying about anything

Example: Our teacher **had a laid-back attitude** in the classroom, but she was always well-prepared and committed to her students.

3. to make small talk

Meaning: to talk in a polite way about unimportant matters, such as the weather.

Example: I enjoy a serious discussion and I don't like to **make small talk** or **exchange pleasantries** with others simply in order to be polite.

Từ vựng khác

1. **relevant** [adjective]

Meaning: connected with what is happening or being discussed (liên quan)

Example: Education should be **relevant** to the child's needs.

2. **reasonably** [adverb]

Meaning: satisfactory and able to be agreed to or approved of (chấp nhận được, tương đối)

Example: Her performance was **reasonably** good, but not outstanding.

3. **mutual** [adjective]

Meaning: (of two or more people or groups) feeling the same emotion, or doing the same thing to or for each other (chung, của nhau)

Example: There was a partnership based on **mutual** respect, trust and understanding.

4. **well-known** [adjective]

Meaning: famous (nổi tiếng)

Example: The restaurant is **well-known** for its friendly atmosphere and excellent service.

31. Vegetables

1. Do you usually eat fruit and vegetables everyday?

Yes, I do. Actually, I frequently add fruit and vegetables to my daily meals, because they are good for my overall health and body. The role they play in your meals is just as crucial as that of protein and starch. Without the intake of fruit and vegetables, you cannot hope **to eat a balanced diet**.

2. What kind of fruit do you enjoy the most?

Well, I'm quite into juicy fruits like lemonade, orange or pomegranate. I always make a cup of lemonade in the morning to refresh my body. In fact, almost every kind of fruit **suits my taste**.

Besides, I also like **versatile** fruits like avocado or pineapple, which can serve both as a kind of fruit and an ingredient in your daily meal.

3. Did you enjoy the same kind of fruits when you were a child?

As I have said, I have no specific favorite kind of fruit at all, so when I was a child, I enjoyed all the fruits provided in my meals. I did not **get fed up with** any kind of fruit, because my mom always tried her best to change the menu of fruit and vegetables everyday, in order to make sure that I had **a diet rich in fibre and vitamins and low in fats and sugar**.

4. Do you prefer to eat fruit or vegetables?

I think I **am more in favor** of fruit as compared to vegetables. Fruits seem more appealing in terms of appearance, color and **odor**. Interestingly, I eat fruits as a way to relieve stress, while most people eat chocolates as their preferred **comfort food**.

5. Are there any fruits or vegetables you don't like?

Well, because I am **allergic to** bell pepper, I never use it. I don't know the reason why, but I cannot stand the smell of bell peppers, whether they are raw or cooked with food. Even though I am in love with pizza, I cannot eat the pizza **garnished** with bell pepper. I guess that is the only kind of vegetable that I do not enjoy eating.

6. Do most people eat vegetables in your country?

Yes, they do. Almost every meal has rice or potatoes and also at least one other kind of vegetable as well, such as tomatoes, cabbages, carrots, green beans, etc. Unlike Western countries, Vietnamese even use raw vegetables in their meals. Quite a lot of people prefer chicken or beef to vegetables but at least they always include a small portion for vegetables for a **nutritious** meal.

7. Are there many vegetarians in your country?

Yes, quite a lot. To be **in good shape**, many people choose to avoid eating meat and a few even opt for a **vegan diet**. There are numerous restaurants in my country which cater to vegetarians and offer a variety of dishes such as fried aubergine, spinach, tofu, onion cakes, etc. Some parents become vegetarians in order **to provide their children with a healthier diet**.

Vocabulary

• **CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: S. FOOD AND DIET (sách collocations)**

1. to eat a balanced diet

Meaning: to eat the correct types and amounts of food

Example: The health benefits of **eating a balanced diet** are obvious.

2. a diet rich in

Meaning: a diet which contains a lot of something

Example: **A diet rich in** fibre, such as dried fruits, helps to keep people healthy and active.

3. a diet low in

Meaning: a diet which contains very little of something

Example: To avoid obesity, people should follow **a diet low in** fats and sugar.

4. a vegan diet

Meaning: : a diet without any animal products, such as meat, milk or eggs

Example: Many people active in animal rights movements worldwide follow **a vegan diet**, because they believe that we should not exploit animals.

5. to provide someone with a healthier diet

Meaning: to give somebody a diet which is more healthy than that which they have at present

Example: Eating only fresh fruit and vegetables **provides people with a healthier diet**.

Từ vựng khác

1. **(to) suit one's taste** [expression]: be suitable to what sb likes or prefers : theo đuổi

Eg: She loves anything which is made by hand, so this traditional vase should **suit her taste**.

2. **versatile** [adjective]: having many different uses: linh hoạt, có nhiều công dụng, đa dụng

Eg: Eggs are easy to cook and are an extremely **versatile** food.

3. **(to) get fed up with sth** [expression]: become bored with sth : chán ngấy với cái gì

Eg: Gradually, Helen **got fed up with** her repetitive routine and decided to look for a new job in Australia.

4. **(to be) in favor of sth** [expression]: support or like sth : ủng hộ, yêu thích cái gì

Eg: The committee seems not **to be in favor of** her proposal.

5. **odor** [noun]: the smell of sth : mùi hương

Eg: As soon as she entered the room, she could still smell the stale **odor** of cigarette smoke.

6. **comfort food** [noun]: the type of food that people eat when they are sad or worried – often sweet foods.

Eg: Eating pizza can make people happy – it's a great **comfort food**.

7. **(to be) allergic to sth** [expression]: to react badly to sth or to feel sick after eating sth : dị ứng với cái gì

Eg: She **is allergic to** eggs, so she cannot eat cakes if these are made with eggs.

8. **(to) garnish** [verb]: to decorate a dish of food with a small amount of another food: trang trí thức ăn

Eg: The main dish was beautifully garnished with herbs by the chef.

9. **nutritious**[adjective]: very good for you, containing many of the substances which help the body to grow : bổ dưỡng

Eg: My mother always gives us tasty and **nutritious** home-cooked meals.

10. **(to be) in good shape** [expression]: in good physical condition : có thể trạng, thể lực tốt

Eg: In fact, Nick **is in good shape** for a man of his age.

32. Boats

1. In your country do people use boats?

Yes, there are numerous kinds of boats, for personal use and **commercial** use. They are very common on the coast. Because many provinces in my country **border on** the sea, their residents **earn a living** through activities near the sea, which requires the use of a boat. The image of a boat in my country is usually associated with beaches and the underwater world.

2. What do they use boats for?

Well, as I have said, boats can be utilized to serve different purposes, but mainly for commercial ones. Lots of businesses use boats, or ships, to **transport** their goods to other countries and I have several friends whose families possess small boats to **go on a vacation**. Frequently at weekends, they go fishing or diving or sometimes just sail around the coast and visit one of the rustic fishing villages nearby.

3. Would you like to own a boat?

Yes, maybe one day in the future. I think it is really enjoyable to **immerse yourself** in the fresh cool air coming from the sea. Besides, going on a boat trip for an afternoon at times benefits your health, which is an ideal getaway from the **hardships** and burdens of life. However, at the moment, having a boat appears to be too **extravagant** for me.

4. What would you do with a boat?

I think I would do the same thing as most people, go fishing and diving, occasionally invite my friends to join in these activities with me. Maybe we would organize a picnic on a boat, stocked with **refreshments** or sail round the coast to enjoy the **immeasurable** beauty of the sea.

5. Would you shop online or in a store for a boat?

I would probably do some research online first, you know, about different models and **specifications**, and then go to a dealer to see the boat that I was interested in. Obviously, I would want to take it for a test drive and make sure that I was totally satisfied before buying it. If I found my favorite boat, I would try to bargain for the most **reasonable** price so maybe I'd buy it online or from a local boat dealer depending on the best price I could reach.

Vocabulary:

1. commercial [adj]: connected with the buying and selling of goods and services: thuộc về thương mại , mua bán

Eg: The centre is the commercial heart of the city.

2. (to) border on [v]: to be next to sth : kề, sát cái gì đó

Eg: Areas bordering on the Pacific Ring are subject to numerous disasters every year.

3. (to) earn a living [expression]: earn money to live: kiếm tiền để sống

Eg: Jane earns a living as a freelance journalist.

4. (to) transport [v]: to take sth/sb from one place to another in a vehicle: chuyên chở, vận chuyển

Eg: This ship is often used to transport passengers in this province.

5. (to) go on a vacation [expression]: to spend time travelling or resting away from home : đi nghỉ mát

Eg: Tom went on a vacation last month with his girlfriend.

6. (to) immerse oneself/sb in sth [v]: to become or make sb completely involved in sth: đắm chìm vào cái gì

Eg: Judy has completely immersed herself in work since her husband's death.

7. hardship [v]: a situation that is difficult and unpleasant for you: sự khó khăn

Eg: People suffered many hardships during that long bitter winter.

8. extravagant [adj]: very extreme or impressive but not reasonable or practical : xa xỉ

Eg: Winning the lottery is such an extravagant dream.

9. refreshment [n]: food and drink : đồ ăn thức uống

Eg: In the middle of the journey, the team stopped for refreshments.

10. immeasurable [adj]: too large, great to be measured : bao la, rộng lớn, không thể đo lường được

Eg: The earthquake caused immeasurable harm to the citizens.

11. specification [n]: a detailed description of how sth is, or should be, designed or made : đặc điểm kỹ thuật

Eg: The manager tested the specifications of the new model with great caution.

12. reasonable [adj]: (of prices) not too expensive : hợp lý, phải chăng

Eg: Our supermarket is committed to selling good quality food at reasonable prices.

33. Computers

1. Do you use computers?

Yes, I am not a **computer-illiterate** person, and I have a desktop in my bed room, which **undertakes** heavy and demanding tasks. Besides, I have a computer that I often bring with me to university or on a trip. Both of my computers are very powerful and **versatile**, and I really love them.

2. How often do you use your computers?

Well, I use my computers almost every day to do my work, to **shop online**, to play music, and to watch movies. Hardly does a day go by without me using my computers, because I always want to **keep myself abreast** of new events on the Internet.

3. What kind of activities involves using computers?

Well, as I've just said, there are many kinds of activities involved in using computers such as sending emails, surfing the Web, watching movies, listening to music, you name them. Besides, I think some people now use computers for **specialized** purposes regarding their own **professions** such as programming software, editing video/audio and designing houses.

4. How important is your computer to you?

Undoubtedly, my computer is an **indispensable** part of my life. I sit in front of the computer and work with it every day, and I cannot imagine one day without my computer. Most of my assignments and **deadlines** are conducted on my desktop and laptop. Not having my computer around would be like not having arms or legs.. .

5. What kind of computer skills do you have?

Well, I know how to install different kinds of operating systems such as Mac OS, Windows and Linux. Besides, I also know how to use different **software** including MS Office, Adobe Illustrator. I am quite **skillful** at Excel and Power Point, which **assists** me a great deal in my daily activities.

Vocabulary:

1. computer-illiterate [expression]: people who do not know how to use computers: người không biết sử dụng máy tính

Eg: Evidently, computer-illiterate people can be subject to a feeling of inferiority in this technological era.

2. (to) undertake [v]: to make yourself responsible for sth and start doing it : đảm đương, đảm nhận

Eg: University professors both teach and undertake research.

3. versatile [adj]: able to do many different things : đa năng

Eg: Josh is a versatile actor who has played a wide variety of parts.

4. (to) shop online [expression]: to buy things through the Internet: mua sắm trực tuyến

Eg: Shopping online is both cheap and convenient.

5. (to) keep oneself abreast of sth [expression]: to make sure that you know all the most recent facts about sth : luôn cập nhật cái gì

Eg: It is almost impossible to keep abreast of all the latest developments in computing.

6. specialized [adj]: designed or developed for a particular purpose or area of knowledge : chuyên dụng, thiết kế cho mục đích riêng

Eg: Our schools possess a lot of new specialized equipment.

7. profession [n]: a type of job that needs special training or skills : nghề nghiệp

Eg: The medical profession requires a great deal of hard work.

8. indispensable [adj]: too important to be without : không thể thiếu được

Eg: Cars have become an indispensable part of our lives.

9. deadline [n]: a point in time by which sth must be done: hạn chót

Eg: We have to quicken our work to meet the deadlines.

10. software[n]: the programs, etc, used to operate a computer : phần mềm

Eg: Peter is trying to install a piece of software.

11. skillful [adj]: good at doing sth, especially sth that needs a particular ability or special training
: có kĩ năng

Eg: The competition has invited skillful chefs to judge the participant's dishes.

12. (to) assist[v]: to help sb to do sth : trợ giúp, giúp đỡ

Eg: We are looking for people who would be willing to assist the whole group.

34. Museums

1. Are there many museums in your country?

Actually, there are. Eventhough they are not the most popular source of entertainment, there are quite a lot of museums established in Vietnam, covering **an array of** aspects. Just in Hanoi for example, you can enjoy history museums, women's museums, ethnic and cultural museums, arts museums or even war museums; there are tons to choose from.

2. Do you think museums are useful for visitors?

To a certain extent, yes. Museums are where visitors can acquire information about the history and culture of the **indigenous** people while appreciating displayed **artefacts**. I believe this is a much more realistic and **engrossing** way to learn than reading thick, **unillustrated** books or **looking up information on** the internet.

3. Do you often visit museum?

To be honest, I rarely go to museums. I can't even **recall** when the last time was I visited a museum as it has been ages. An obvious reason for this is that as a native Vietnamese, I have continuously been taught about Vietnam's defeats and **triumphs** in wars and learnt about the customs of our ancestors throughout my years at school. Therefore, the thought of going to museums never actually occurred to me and I only visited these places on **field trips**.

4. When was the last time you visited a museum?

As I was saying, I can barely **recollect** my last trip to a museum. I remember faintly that it was in secondary school, maybe in the 6th or 7th grade that I went to the Hanoi's Museum of Humanity and Ethnicities as a part of a school field trip. At that time, we **wandered around** the exhibitions of sculpture, pottery and even ancient clothing of ethnicities in Vietnam. Moreover, there were also

replicas of the typical house architecture for each group of people, which really helped me to **broaden my horizons**.

Vocabulary

1. An array of sth (phrase) [một phạm vi đa dạng về cái gì]: a range of, a variety of something

Eg: The National Library provides an array of book genres for you to choose from.

2. Indigenous (adj) [bản địa, thuộc về địa phương]: native, belongs to a particular region

Eg: Pandas are indigenous to China

3. Artefact (n) [đồ tạo tác, hiện vật]: an object that is made by a person, such as a tool or a decoration, especially one that is of historical interest

Eg: The museum's collection includes artefacts dating back to prehistoric times.

4. Engrossing (adj) [thu hút chú ý]: taking up the attention completely

Eg: I found the movie completely engrossing from beginning to end.

5. Unillustrated (adj) [không có hình ảnh minh họa]: not demonstrated with images

Eg: Children normally prefer books with images over unillustrated ones.

6. To look sth up (phrasal verb) [tra cứu cái gì]: to check a fact or get information about something

Eg: If you're not sure what the word means, look it up in a dictionary.

7. Recall sth = Recollect sth (v) [nhớ về, nhớ ra cái gì]: to bring the memory of a past event into your mind

Eg: She recalled seeing him outside the shop on the night of the robbery.

8. Triumph (n) [chiến thắng]: a victory, a win

Eg: The game ended in triumph for the home team.

9. Field trip (n phr): a visit made by students to study something away from their school or college

Eg: My school organizes field trips for the students every semester.

10. To wander around (phrasal verb) [đi loanh quanh, thăm thú]: to move around in different directions without a particular purpose, to walk slowly across or around an area

Eg: I always wander around the park whenever I need to reduce stress.

11. Replica (n) [bản sao đúng như thật (tranh, tượng, v.v), mô hình (thu nhỏ)]: the exact or very close copy of something

Eg: Most famous art museums display the replicas of the world's masterpieces, not all are the originals.

12. Broaden one's horizons (phrase) [mở mang kiến thức]: broaden one's knowledge/understanding about something

Eg: Travelling is one way to broaden your horizons.

35. Time management

1. How do you organize your time?

As a student, I have to meet tons of deadlines at university as well as complete the tasks assigned in my part-time jobs and clubs. Therefore, it is **pivotal** that I schedule my time reasonably to ensure I have enough time for everything and avoid **procrastination**. Personally, I create an online timetable that can be easily adjusted to **keep myself on track** and make sure that the amount of time **allocated to** my studies, my jobs and my leisure time is well-balanced.

2. Do you think people organize time in the same way?

I'm not too sure about that, it varies according to age group I suppose. For example, students would usually invest a substantial proportion of their time in studying, finishing school assignments and doing hobbies. In contrast, the majority of an adult's time would be **devoted to** working and socialising with their colleagues while less is spent on **recreational activities**.

3. Do you think it is important to be on time?

Certainly. Firstly, **punctuality** indicates respect and hence, is extremely important, especially in the context of business and education. When we **have an appointment with** a business partner or simply go to class or sit an exam for instance, we have to be on time to express our appreciation to our partners and our teachers. Moreover, it shows that we are capable of taking care of ourselves and feel **a sense of accountability** in whatever we do.

4. How do you feel when you are late for an appointment?

Needless to say, I would be **profoundly apologetic** if that were to happen. As I have said, turning up late might **give out the wrong signal** that we don't respect the people we'll be meeting, which is exactly what I wouldn't want them to think. It also hints that I may lack professionalism and self-discipline, so I would be utterly ashamed and sorry whenever I failed to be punctual.

5. How do you feel when others are late?

That's interesting. Well, for formal meetings like job interviews, conferences or in-class

presentations, I always feel great disappointment when people show up late and **even throw a fist** if it's by too much. Yet, if I were to have a simple chat with my friends, I wouldn't mind giving them a few extra minutes. Ofcourse, in both cases, I would expect a justifiable reason for their lateness and would probably **let it slide** if the excuses were understandable.

Vocabulary

1. pivotal (adj) [quan trọng]: important, essential

Eg: The point behind today's post is that customer service is pivotal to the success of any business

2. Procrastination (n) [sự trì trệ, trì hoãn]: the action of delaying or postponing something

Eg: Procrastination might lead to failures in meeting deadlines.

3. To keep sb on track (phrase) [đảm bảo ai làm theo đúng kế hoạch]: to make sure that someone is on schedule; progressing as planned

Eg: The teacher tried to keep the student on track for passing his exams.

4. Allocate sth to sth/sb (phrase) [phân cái gì cho cái gì/ai]: Distribute (resources or duties) for a particular purpose.

Eg: In past years we didn't allocate enough funds to infrastructure maintenance so the building is a little run-down.

5. Recreational activities (noun phrase) [những hoạt động vui chơi giải trí]: activities you do in your leisure time for entertainment

Eg: Engaging in recreational activities is a good way to relieve stress.

6. To be devoted to sth (phrase) [dành phần lớn thời gian/sức lực/etc cho cái gì]: Give all or most of one's time or resources to (a person or activity)

Eg: I wanted to devote more time to my family.

7. Punctuality (n) [sự đúng giờ]: the quality of being on time

Eg: Poor punctuality is also a problem in some schools.

8. To have an appointment with sb (phrase) [có hẹn gặp mặt với ai]: to meet sb

Eg: I have an appointment with the dentist this weekend so I can't go out with you.

9. Accountability (n) [sự có trách nhiệm]: willingness to accept responsibility

Eg: Accountability is important for a police service wounded by a lack of public trust.

10. To be profoundly apologetic (cảm thấy rất có lỗi): to be very sorry

Eg: I'm profoundly apologetic for having misunderstood you.

11. To give out the wrong signal (phrase) [làm cho ai tin vào điều gì đó không đúng]: to make people believe or think something that is not correct

Eg: If you don't like him, don't give out the wrong signal or he'll be heart-broken.

12. To throw a fist (idiom) [nổi giận, nổi khùng]: to become extremely angry

Eg: My mom threw a fist when she learnt that I only got a 5/10 for my maths test.

13. To let sth slide (phrase) [cho qua cái gì]: not take sth too seriously, tolerate sth

36. Snack

1. What kind of snack do you like to eat?

Everything to be honest! I'm such a **snack junkie** that I can eat snacks instead of having proper meals for an entire day. However, my **all-time favourites** are definitely potato chips and beef jerky. For the first one, it is the **crunchiness** and addictive **seasoning powders** that appeal to me, and I can eat 3 packs of chips straight when I'm **starving**. For the second one, it is the combination of so many different flavours – spicy, salty, sweet and sour that **makes my mouth water**. It can either be eaten by itself or with a cold drink when having a chat.

2. Is it healthy to eat snacks?

Certainly, it is not beneficial for your health to consume a significant number of snacks on a regular basis. Firstly, the seasonings and flavours added to snacks can be **excessive** and thus, **increase the level of salt and sugar intake**, which would eventually lead to **weight gain**. Secondly, as **appetizing** as junk food is, it doesn't provide essential nutrients to the human body. Hence, even though we **put on weight** and feel full when we eat snacks, we aren't active and healthy.

3. Do your parents allow you to eat snack?

Well, they do, but only moderately. It's natural for children to **crave for** snacks, especially cookies and candies when they are small. When I was younger, my mom approved my eating junk food only under her supervision. That meant I could only eat snacks which she allowed me to maybe 1 or 2 times a week since she was worried that I might get fat and unhealthy.

4. What are the most popular snacks that you like?

Honestly, I can't think of a specific name right now as there are so many. Oh, I really dig Oishi's potato chips. They **come in many different flavours** and the chips themselves **come in different shapes and sizes**. If you talk about Oishi, you can't **leave out** its classic hot and spicy shrimp chips that are enjoyed by practically every child and teenager, even adults, in Vietnam.

Vocabulary

1. A snack junkie (n, informal) [người thích ăn vặt]: someone who loves to eat junk food
➔ A (noun) junkie: A person with a compulsive habit or obsessive dependency on something
Eg: I love my computer; I think it's quite safe to say that I am a complete computer junkie.
2. All-time favourite (n phr) [dùng để chỉ cái gì luôn luôn được yêu thích nhất, được yêu thích nhất mọi thời đại]: something that your passion for which cannot be surpassed
Eg: Titanic is my all-time favourite movie, I have watched it more than 10 times.
3. Crunchiness (n) [sự/cảm giác giòn tan]: the quality of being able to make a sharp noise when bitten or crunched
Eg: I love the crunchiness of these chips.
4. Seasoning powder (n phr) [bột gia vị]: Salt, herbs, or spice powder added to food to enhance the flavour
Eg: What really makes chips good is its seasoning powder, not the chips themselves.
5. Starve (v) [đói cồn cào/ bỏ đói ai]: to feel very hungry; to suffer or die or cause to suffer or die from hunger.
Eg: Anything can satisfy me when I'm starving.
6. To make one's mouth water (idiom) [làm ai chảy nước miếng] = to whet one's appetite: to make somebody want to eat something so bad
Eg: My mom's cooking is so excellent that it makes my mouth water everytime.
7. Excessive (adj) [thái quá, quá nhiều]: too much, over the board
Eg: Excessive seasoning can ruin a dish
8. Weight gain (n phr) [sự tăng cân]: the act of gaining weight
To gain weight = to put on weight (v phr) [tăng cân]
Eg: One thing every woman dreads is weight gain.
9. Level of salt/sugar intake [lượng muối/đường được hấp thụ]:
Eg: Too high a level of sugar intake can lead to diabetes.

10. Appetizing (adj) [kích thích vị giác]: Stimulating one's appetite.

Eg: The appetizing aroma of sizzling bacon caught my attention.

11. To crave for sth (phrase) [thèm ăn gì/ thèm muốn có cái gì]: Feel a powerful desire for (something)

Eg: Women may crave for weird food during their pregnancy.

12. To come in different flavours/shapes/sizes (phrase): to be available in different flavours/shapes/sizes

Eg: The clothes sold in this shop come in many different sizes and colors so that everyone has their fit.

II. Part 2 and Part 3

1. Describe an advertisement you have seen

You should say:

What the advertisement is

What it is for

And explain how you think about it.

Today I'm going to tell you about an advertisement I've seen recently. It was actually a commercial to **promote** iPhone 7, the latest smartphone **manufactured by** Apple – the well-known **technology giant**. The ad was broadcasted prior to **the launching of the product** in order to provoke curiosity among consumers, especially **loyal users** of the brand.

The advertisement didn't **convey any meaningful message** but was rather designed to **highlight** all the updated features of iPhone 7 compared to previous models in the series. Besides, the commercial wasn't directed towards any specific age group or gender, so **the target audience** was quite large. As soon as the commercial was aired, the news about the new product immediately **made front page headlines** and **became the leading article** of many technology websites, magazines and online. Since Apple was already one of the most reputable technology companies with a high level of **brand awareness**, it didn't take much time for the publicity to circulate. The advertisement **generated a craze for** iPhone 7, everyone was talking about it on the Internet. People were eager to see how the latest model would differ from earlier ones as well as to compare it with the latest smartphones of other respected brands such as Samsung or Sony.

As for me, I thought it was a little plain and lacked creativity the first time I saw the ad, since it only **focused on** the updated features. Later, I found the ad to have a certain feeling of elegance to it, simple and straightforward but it was still able to **attract an incredible number of consumers**. I have to admit that I **was a little swayed by the advertisement**, even though I'm a Samsung fan.

Vocabulary

1. **Promote** [v] (quảng bá, quảng cáo): to encourage people to like, buy, use, do, or support something

Example: Advertising companies are always having to think up new ways to **promote** products.

2. **To be manufactured by** [expression] (được sản xuất bởi): to be created, produced (by someone, by a company, etc)

Example: All iPhones, iPads and iPods **are manufactured by** Apple.

3. **Technology giant** [expression] (“người khổng lồ công nghệ”, chỉ một công ty có danh tiếng trong lĩnh vực công nghệ): a leading and very large technology corporation

Example: Samsung, Apple and Sony are three of the biggest **technology giants**. Their products are of high quality and are very wide-ranging.

4. **The launching of a product** [phrase, noun] (việc ra mắt sản phẩm mới): the introduction of a new product

=>**to launch a product** [phrase, verb]: to introduce a new product

Example: Companies have recognised that the services of the marketing industry are essential **to launch a new product** successfully.

5. **A loyal user** [noun phrase] (người dùng trung thành): someone who has been using a product of a certain company for a long time

Example: My boyfriend is **a loyal user** of Apple. Almost all of his electronic devices are products of Apple.

6. **To convey a message** [phrase] (truyền tải thông điệp): To convey information or feelings means to cause them to be known or understood by someone.

Example: The newest promotional video for UNICEF’s campaign **conveys a meaningful message** of child protection.

7. **To highlight** [verb] (nhấn mạnh) to emphasize something, so that people pay more attention to it

Example: Nike **highlighted** the quality of its trainers by using the Olympic gold medal winner Usain Bolt to promote the product.

8. **Target audience** [noun phrase] (khách hàng/khán giả mục tiêu): consumers whom businesses aim at when selling their products

Example: Companies which sell soft drinks, like Coca Cola, aim mainly at a **target audience** of children and adolescents.

9. **To make front page headlines** [phrase] (trở thành tin tiêu đề): to be an important item of news in the newspapers, on radio or TV.

Example: It seems that every insignificant event in the lives of celebrities **makes front page headlines**.

10. **To become the leading article** [phrase] (trở thành tin quan trọng nhất trong ngày): to become a piece of writing which deals with the most important news item of the day.

Example: Newspapers in my country often have **a leading article** on some sensational crime that has been committed.

11. **Brand awareness** [noun phrase] (độ nhận biết thương hiệu): the action of bringing the name of a company to the attention of the public

Example: Advertising, not the quality of the product, is responsible for creating **brand awareness** among consumers, as can be seen by the success of market leaders such as Nike or Coca Cola.

12. **To generate a craze for something** [phrase] (tạo nên một cơn sốt cho cái gì đó): to create an enthusiastic interest in something that is shared by many people but that usually does not last very long

Example: The catchy theme song in Điện máy xanh's commercial **generated a craze for** its goods.

13. **To focus on something** [phrase] (tập trung vào cái gì) to give attention to one particular thing

Example: The commercial for orange juice **focused on** the health benefits of the product.

14. **To attract consumers** [phrase] (thu hút khách hàng): to appeal to buyers so that they purchase a product

Example: It is common for brands to offer discounts occasionally to attract consumers.

15. **To be swayed by the advertisement** [phrase] (bị thuyết phục bởi quảng cáo): to be influenced to buy things as a result of advertising

Example: If consumers **were** not easily **swayed by advertisements**, the advertising industry would not exist.

PART 3

1.1. What are the different kinds of advertising?

I think that there are several ways of promoting a product, of which the most **dominant** type is broadcast advertising, where the products are **publicized** through TV commercials, radio or the Internet. Another common type of advertising is print advertising, which relies on **distributed** posters and **flyers** or advertisement columns in newspapers or magazines to boost a product's popularity. There is also outdoor advertising - advertising at outdoor events like concerts or trade

shows. Unfortunately, **surrogate** advertising exists as well, which markets banned products like alcohol or tobacco in the disguise of another product.

1.2. What kind of advertising is most common in Vietnam?

I'm not too sure about this, but I think it's fair to say broadcast advertising and print advertising are the two most popular means of promoting products in my country. Commercials are **aired** at a high frequency here in Vietnam, especially in the evening, when the number of viewers is considerably higher compared to that in the morning. It's also common to see flyers being given away and banners hung **on almost every corner of the street**.

1.3. What are the ways in which advertisements catch the attention of viewers?

Well, I guess it depends on the types of advertisement. With TV commercials, it's essential to have a **catchy theme tune** or a **slogan** used to identify the product, so that viewers can easily recognize it. McDonald's, for example, use 'I'm Lovin' It'. It also helps to have a celebrity who features in the commercial or **endorses** the product, this would make the product appealing to a larger number of viewers. Print advertisements, however, usually draw people's attention with their **vibrant** colors and unique graphic designs. The better the posters are, the more interest the product might attract.

1.4. Do big companies prefer to advertise on TV or in some other ways? (Why?)

In my opinion, broadcast advertising is still the most popular way for big organizations to promote their goods and services. TV has long been the most **prevalent** means of media communication, so getting a product advertised on TV equals making it known to a larger number of people. It would be even better to **secure a slot** during **prime time**, from about 8pm to 10pm, when **virtually** everyone is sitting in front of their television. Still, it's worth mentioning that online advertisements such as pop-ups are on the rise, as more and more people are spending time surfing the web.

1.5. What are the good and bad points of advertisements?

I suppose advertisements play an important role in introducing consumers to a wider variety of goods. With commercials, buyers are exposed to more options, including models, functions and prices before choosing the one product that is to their taste. On the other hand, a **well-produced** advertisement might not ensure a product of the same quality. It's not unusual to witness cases where people complain about the huge difference between what was advertised and what the product is really like. Besides, commercials can **trigger** the desire to purchase new goods, regardless of their impracticability, resulting in the waste of both time and money.

1.6. Is advertising on the internet very influential?

To be honest, I doubt the effectiveness of internet advertising. Although pop-ups are growing in popularity, most people find them rather **bothersome** and close them the moment they appear on the screen, instead of spending time reading them. Besides, **under the impression** that everything on the internet should not be trusted, people usually dismiss online advertisements as unreliable.

1.7. Are any kinds advertising in Vietnam considered illegal?

I'm not too knowledgeable about the issue, but I guess anything that fails to **obey** the terms of advertisement laws is considered illegal. One of the most commonly seen outdoor advertisements in Vietnam are billboards, which are basically huge posters that are erected on main streets or on top of buildings. This is a completely legal way of advertising, if the owners are granted a valid permit and take the boards down according to the contract. However, many owners **violate** the law by missing the deadline to remove them or erect them without permission.

1.8. Do you trust advertisements? (Why?/Why not?)

Quite frankly, I rarely place my trust in advertisements. They seem untruthful to me since almost everything is exaggerated and most of the time, the products themselves don't **live up to consumers' expectations**. They claim to be the best but very often there are some kind of faults. However, I do refer to advertisements when I'm looking for a product or a service, in order to broaden my range of choices. Still, only after a long time studying the product and reading reviews will I make up my mind to purchase one.

1.9. How do you feel about false advertising?

Like most people, I feel **outraged** by **misleading** advertisements. Untruthful commercials can lead to many problems, and some can be disastrous. Cosmetics advertisements, for example, if they do not cover all necessary aspects like origin, components and potential allergic reactions on some types of skins, may cause **complexion** diseases. The same goes for medicinal products. False advertising betrays the trust of consumers and diminishes the reputation of the company itself. By creating widespread **distrust**, the advertising industry as a whole is damaged by false advertising.

VOCABULARY

✓ *Dominant* (có ưu thế, có ảnh hưởng lớn) [adj]: most common

Example: TV has remained the most **dominant** means of media communication throughout the years.

✓ *Publicize* [v]: to make something known to the public

Example: He is in London to **publicize** his new book.

1. *Distribute* (phân phối, phân phát) [v]: to give or deliver (something) to people

Example: We need to **distribute** electricity equally over the country so that everyone can enjoy the benefits.

✓ *Flyer* [n]: a small sheet of paper advertising an event or product, given to a large number of people in the street

Example: I spent the morning handing out **flyers** for the new supermarket which has just opened.

✓ *Surrogate* (người/vật thay thế, đại diện) [n]: to put in the place of another

Example: He could not attend the meeting, so he sent his **surrogate**.

✓ *To be aired* (được phát sóng) [expression]: to be shown on the media, to be broadcasted

Example: The news program **is aired** at 7pm everyday.

✓ *On almost every corner of the street* (trên mọi góc phố) [expression]: almost everywhere

Example: Food stalls can be found **on almost every corner of the street**, so don't worry if you need to find somewhere to eat.

✓ *Catchy* [adj] pleasing and easily remembered

Example: Most popular TV series have a **catchy** theme tune to introduce the show.

✓ *Theme tune/theme song* (bài hát chủ đề) [n]: a song that is played at the beginning and end of a television show, movie, etc or in a commercial

Example: The **theme song** of the James Bond movie 'Live and Let Die' became a hit.

✓ *Slogan* (khẩu hiệu) [n]: a word or phrase that is easy to remember and is used by a group or business to attract attention

Example: Within days, virtually everyone was familiar with the newest advertising **slogan** for that brand of soda.

✓ *Endorse* (chứng thực, xác nhận) [v]: to publicly or officially say that you support or approve of (someone or something) OR to publicly say - in exchange for money - that you like or use (a product or service)

Example: That brand of sneaker is **endorsed** by several basketball stars.

✓ *Vibrant* (rực rỡ) [adj]: very bright and strong

Example: We painted the poster a **vibrant** blue so that it stands out.

✓ *Prevalent* (phổ biến, thịnh hành) [adj]: common or widespread

Example: Ripped jeans is a fashion trend that is **prevalent** among teenagers.

✓ *Secure a slot* [expression] get a position or time in a list of events

Example: She was very happy when she **secured a slot** in the big concert just before the star was due to perform.

✓ *Prime time* (giờ vàng) [expression]: a time in the evening when the largest number of people are watching television

Example: The program is popular because it is shown during **prime time**.

✓ *Virtually* (hầu như, gần như) [adv]: almost entirely

Example: We spent **virtually** all day shopping.

✓ *Well-produced* [adj]: well-made

Example: The movie was so **well-produced** that there was nothing I could complain about.

✓ *Trigger* (gây ra) [v]: cause something else to happen

Example: Smoke **triggered** the fire alarm.

✓ *Bothersome* (phiền toái) [adj]: causing trouble or difficulty

Example: I find my brother's habit of playing music really loudly is bothersome.

✓ *Under the impression* (có suy nghĩ rằng) [expression]: believing – usually wrongly - that something is true

Example: I waited at the station for you, **under the impression** that you were going to travel with me.

✓ *Obey* (nghe lời, làm theo luật) [v]: to do what someone tells you to do or what a rule, law, etc., says you must do

Example: He is a good boy, he always **obeys** his parents.

✓ *Violate* (vi phạm) [v]: to do something that is not allowed by (a law, rule, etc.)

Example: The company **violated** its customers' privacy.

✓ *Live up to one's expectation* (đạt được) [expression]: to be as good as good as someone thought something would be

Example: I thought the movie was going to be better than that. It totally failed to live up to my expectations.

✓ *Outraged* (rất tức giận) [adj]: very bad or wrong in a way that causes anger

Example: I felt outraged by her attitude! I will not put up with such treatment.

✓ *Misleading* [adj]: giving the wrong idea that something is true

Example: The **misleading** advertisement in the newspaper neglected to mention some important information about the used car.

2. Describe a city or town you have been.

You should say:

+Where it is

+When you visited it

+What you did there

And explain why you like it

Trích đề: Describe a place in other countries where you would like to work

You should say:

Where you would like to go

What kind of work/ job you would like to have

When you would like to go

And explain why you want to work in that place.

ANSWER

Today, I would like to talk about a place in foreign countries where I would like to work. It is Melbourne, the second largest city in Australia which has become home for millions of people from various countries around the world.

In Melbourne, I would like to work for an environmental NGO, as my specialty at/in university is Environmental Resources. So, right after I finish my studies in Vietnam, I will go to Melbourne to apply for a job there.

Well, the reasons why I would like to work in Melbourne are quite simple. First, I have a lot of friends and relatives who live and work in Melbourne. They can help me whenever I need. They also tell me that the community of Vietnamese overseas is very large in Melbourne. So, the multicultural challenge won't be a big problem for me. And what's more, like Sydney, Tokyo or some other cities in the world, Melbourne is a 'liveable city' due to / because of its high ranking in education, research and healthy lifestyle/ way of life. So I think that to live, study or work there will be an interesting experience.

VOCABULARY

✓ Various (khác nhau, nhiều loại): [adjective] different, a variety of, many types of.

Example: My students come from various countries in the world, such as India, Laos, Thailand, etc.

✓ Specialty (chuyên môn, chuyên ngành):[noun] focus, special field of study

Example: Marie Cury was a well-known scientist with her specialty in radiation

✓ Apply for a job/position(nộp đơn xin, đăng ký xin việc):[verb] to enroll in, to write a letter asking for a job

Example: She submitted a letter to apply for that post/ position

✓ Relatives (họ hàng, người nhà)

Someone who is close in the family branch, such as aunt, uncle, cousin, and so on.

Example: Tet holiday is an occasion for us to visit our relatives' houses and to give them best wishes

✓ Vietnamese overseas (Việt kiều)[noun]

Vietnamese people who live in foreign countries

Example: Each year, the Vietnamese overseas contribute a large amount of money to the country's development.

✓ Multi-cultural challenge(thử thách, khó khăn về đa văn hóa) [adj+n] difficulties caused by the clash between so many cultures

Example:Australia is an example of multi- cultural country

✓ Liveable (đáng sống, sống được) [adjective] + city: a city with favorable conditions for living

Example: This city is a liveable place for the poor

✓ Ranking (xếp hạng, thứ bậc, chất lượng)[noun] level, qualification

Example:

The ranking of education of Vietnam is still fairly low in the region

✓ Healthy (lành mạnh, khỏe mạnh) [adjective] good for health, good for operation

Example: Investors require a healthy environment for their business activities in Vietnam

QUESTIONS FOR PART 3

2.1. What kind of jobs are easy to get in a foreign country?

In today's society, thanks to the great strides in technology, I think that jobs related to this sector will be the easiest ones for expatriates to get in foreign countries.

Especially, in English-speaking countries, there are abundant jobs for IT employees such as computer programmers or mobile app developers, regardless of their nationalities, as long as they have sufficient qualifications and skills.

2.2. Should young adults work abroad?

Yes. It is useful for youngsters to take up a job abroad at least once, because they are energetic and enthusiastic enough to experience new things that may be obstacles when they get older.

Working overseas is a great opportunity for young people to meet different types of people and gain global understanding of their industry. It also provides them with experiences and skills that they would never get at home.

Not only that, most young people are energetic and adventurous; therefore working abroad provides them with opportunities to travel more, and be exposed to different cultures, which will result in higher level of knowledge and cultural sensitivity.

2.3. Why do many Vietnamese people want to work abroad?

There are various reasons behind the preference of Vietnamese people to work in foreign countries.

Firstly, working abroad is good for their personal growth. In addition to a higher salary, moving overseas or even getting a temporary contract abroad will give people opportunities to meet potential customers or partners who will help them further their career.

Secondly, expatriates can experience new cultures and a greater mix of backgrounds that will give them invaluable perspectives in all aspects of life, including work.

VOCABULARY

✓ Strides (noun): advances or improvements in the way that something is developing

Example: Since I started at a new school, I have been making great strides in my studies.

✓ Expatriate(s) (noun): (người không sống ở nước mình) a person living in a country that is not their own

Example: My family lived as expatriates in Hong Kong before I was born.

✓ Abundant (adjective): (phong phú, dồi dào) existing in large quantities; more than enough

Example: We have abundant evidence to prove his guilt.

✓ Take up (phrasal verb): (bắt đầu thứ gì đó mới) to start or begin something such as a job

Example: He takes up his duties next week as the head of the department.

✓ Experience (verb): to have a particular situation affect you or happen to you

Example: When I lived in Japan, I experienced a very different way of life.

✓ Obstacle (noun): (trở ngại) a situation, an event, etc. that makes it difficult for you to do or achieve something

Example: A lack of qualifications can be a major obstacle to finding a job.

✓ Adventurous (adjective): (phiêu lưu, mạo hiểm) willing to take risks and try new ideas; enjoying being in new, exciting situations

Example: For the more adventurous tourists, there are trips into the mountains with a local guide.

✓ Be exposed to (expression): introduced to, not protected from

Example: I was exposed to a completely new culture when I first went to the USA.

✓ Sensitivity (noun): (sự nhạy cảm) the ability to understand other people's feelings

Example: She pointed out with tact and sensitivity exactly where he had gone wrong.

✓ Further (verb): to help something to develop and be successful

Example: Although the salary was low, she took the job to further her career by learning all about the fashion industry.

✓ Invaluable (adjective): (vô giá, vô cùng hữu ích) extremely useful

Example: The research should prove invaluable in the study of children's language.

✓ Perspective (noun): a way of thinking about something

Example: The book gave me a new perspective on Indian culture.

3. Describe an interesting neighbor you have/had

Who he/she is

And explain why he or she is interesting

Today I'm going to tell you about about my lovely neighbor, whom I really adore and respect. I live in a beautiful and peaceful street and most of my neighbors are kind, benevolent and well-mannered. Among them, I would pick Mrs. Cam Nhung as the loveliest neighbor I have ever met. She is a retired English teacher and she has acquired a reputation as a very profound and dedicated teacher. Despite her advanced years, she looks really young and is always full of energy.

She lives with her family next to our house. She moved into our neighborhood 5-6 years ago and since then she has endeared herself to everybody living in the community. What I find most appealing about her is her great personality. Although she is not very wealthy, she always shows compassion for others, especially the poor and the underprivileged. She has opened a free English class for orphans in the hope of giving them more opportunities to follow academic education.

Another of her lovely traits is definitely her positivity. She always looks on the bright side of the problem even when it comes to her own misfortunes. Therefore, whenever I feel discouraged, I go to her house and seek her advice. She usually greets me with an irresistible home-baked cake or an encouraging piano song, from which I derive a great deal of pleasure. I have learnt many useful things from her, not only in everyday things, but also in attitudes to life.

To me, she is not just a normal neighbor, but a person for whom I feel a sense of empathy, despite the gap between our ages. Being with her gives me a sense of security and I really owe a lot of gratitude to this person.

VOCABULARY:

1. (to) RESPECT [verb]: to have a good opinion of sth/sb, to admire sb/sth.

Eg: She has always been honest with me, and I respect her for that.

2. PEACEFUL [adjective]: not involving a war, violence or argument.

Eg: They hope for a peaceful settlement (sự dàn xếp) of the dispute (cuộc cãi vã)

3. BENEVOLENT [adjective]: kind, helpful and generous

Eg: Nhien has a benevolent attitude, which is her most distinct trait.

4. WELL-MANNERED [adjective]: having good manners, courteous

Eg: Minh was educated carefully, which is the reason why he is always well-mannered.

5. REPUTATION [noun]: the opinion people have about sth

Eg: Hoa soon established a reputation as a first-class (đẳng cấp) cook.

6. PROFOUND [adjective]: showing great knowledge or understanding

Eg: This profound book is worth reading – you will learn a lot from it.

7. DEDICATED [adjective]: working hard at sth because it is very important to you.

Eg: Ngoc is one of the most dedicated employees in this company.

8. (to) ENDEAR [verb]: sb/yourself TO sb else: make sb/yourself loved.

Eg: Their policies (chính sách) on taxation did not endear themselves to voters.

9. WEALTHY [adjective]: having a lot of money, possessions (tài sản), etc.

Eg: Most top footballers in the world are fabulously wealthy.

10. THE UNDERPRIVILEGED [noun]: people having less money and fewer opportunities than most people in society.

Eg: The underprivileged in most nations are subject to suffer great inequality (sự bất bình đẳng).

11. ORPHAN [noun]: a child whose parents are dead.

Eg: Mike was an orphan and lived with his uncle

12. MISFORTUNE [noun]: bad luck

Eg: Misfortunes in life are unavoidable, and each of us has to confront (đối mặt với) them in order to be more mature (trưởng thành)

13. DISCOURAGED [adjective]: feeling less confident or less enthusiastic (nhiệt tình) about sth

Eg: Don't be discouraged by the first failure – try, try and try again!

14. (to) SEEK ONE'S ADVICE [verb]: ask sb for an opinion or suggestion about what sb should do

Eg: We were told to seek legal advice from a well-known lawyer.

15. IRRESISTIBLE [adjective]: so strong that it cannot be stopped or resisted

Eg: On such a hot day, the chance to swim in the sea is irresistible.

16. (to) DERIVE [verb]: sth FROM sth: get sth from sth

Eg: Huy derives great satisfaction (sự thỏa mãn) from painting.

17. ATTITUDE [noun]: the way you feel and think about sth.

Eg: Happiness depends largely on one's attitude to life, so always be positive.

18. EMPATHY [noun]: the ability to understand the emotions or situations of other people

Eg: Motivated by their feelings of empathy, many people donated money to the earthquake victims.

19. A SENSE OF SECURITY [noun]: the state of feeling certain, safe.

Eg: The presence of surveillance cameras in the shopping mall gives me a sense of security.

20. (to) OWE GRATITUDE TO SB [v]: feel grateful (biết ơn) and want to express your thanks to sb

Eg: First and foremost, I owe a huge debt of gratitude to my parents and teachers for my success in the exams.

Part 3:

1. Do people living in small cities know more about their neighbors than people living in big cities?

Well... yes, maybe they really do. The chance of meeting someone familiar to you in a small city is definitely higher than that in a bigger city, plus the fact that most people who live in a metropolis tend to be too busy to actually pay attention to anyone that lives next door.

2. What are the benefits of having kind neighbors?

Having friendly and nice neighbors can bring about some certain benefits. First, a kind neighbor can definitely offer help whenever you're suddenly in immediate need of something, for example when you lose your keys and cannot go to a friend's house because it's late. Second, I think you can always make friends with whoever is living next door and isn't it even better if that person turns out to be so nice? They can exert a positive influence on you and maybe help you with your problems, like giving advice on your social life for instance.

3. Why do neighbors seldom talk to each other nowadays?

The first reason, I think, is because people are getting busier and busier. They can hardly take care of themselves and their own family, let alone spare some time for their neighbors. Another reason is that people, especially those living in big cities, tend to live in an apartment, which is a very closed space and this hinders direct interaction among neighbors. The flourishing of social networks, which poses a threat to face-to-face communication, can also be one factor leading to the lack of interaction between someone and his/her neighbor.

4. How to improve the relationship among neighbors?

I think in order to strengthen the relationship among neighbors, people need to manage their time better. As I said, they can hardly find the time to talk to their neighbors as they are too busy, so time management is definitely something people need to work on. Another thing is that they need to pluck up their courage to come and talk to their neighbors. If you want to make a change to a

relationship, I believe you have to be the one to make the first move – talk to them first and they will talk to you back, and the relationship can naturally be improved.

Vocabulary:

✓ Metropolis [noun] (đô thị) a very large city, often the most important city in a large area or country

e.g. Soon afterwards he left the countryside to begin his career in the metropolis.

✓ Exert [verb] (sử dụng/áp dụng ảnh hưởng) to use something such as power, authority, influence, etc. in order to make something happen

e.g. If you want to exert your influence they might change their decision.

✓ Let alone do something [expression] (huống hồ/chưa kể đến) and to an even greater degree do something

e.g. Brian would never read a newspaper, let alone a book.

✓ Spare [verb] (dành (thời gian)) to give time, money, or space to someone, especially when it is difficult for you

e.g. I'd love to come, but I can't spare the time.

✓ Hinder [verb] (cản trở) to limit the ability of someone to do something, or to limit the development of something

e.g. Her progress certainly hasn't been hindered by her lack of experience.

✓ Work on something [phrasal verb] (luyện tập/thay đổi) to spend time repairing or improving something

e.g. His dancing technique is good, but he needs to work on his stamina.

✓ Pluck up your courage/Pluck up (the) courage to do smth [expression] (lấy hết can đảm làm gì) to force yourself to be brave to do something, although you are frightened or worried about it

e.g. He finally plucked up courage to ask her to marry him.

✓ Make the first move [expression] (hành động trước) to be the first to take action

e.g. Neither sides seemed prepared to make the first move towards reaching a peace agreement.

4. Describe a family member who has an important influence on you/ A good parent

You should say

Who the person is

How long you have known him /her

What qualities this person has

and explain why this person has had such an influence on you.

Well, in my life, there are several family members who have made unmatched contributions to help me go ahead, and among them my father's impact is the most meaningful. He is the person whom I love most in this world and I consider him to be a perfect father and role model with his honesty, bravery, resourcefulness and responsibility.

Together with my mother, he is the very person who brought me into this wonderful world. From my childhood, he has raised me with his great care, affection and mentorship. He has taught me moral lessons about the world, people and values. Despite having a busy schedule, he has always given motivational support to me on my education and has dedicated his life to his family.

My father is an exemplary person who has led an honest life. As a high ranking government officer, he had many chances to pile up personal riches but he has always known the right things to do and never broke the rules. The basic notion of humanity and the importance of education were values he delivered to me. He is now a retired person and leads his serene and peaceful life with contentment and happiness. Whenever I have to confront difficulties, he always stands by me and encourages me not to give up.

As a father, I would say he has done everything possible to raise me and my sister. He has spent his entire life catering for our demands and looking after our interests while he went through much hardship. His immense love and great sacrifice is an incentive for me to study and work harder.

VOCABULARY:

1. unmatched [adjective]: better than all others : không thể sánh bằng

Eg: He had a talent unmatched by any other politician in this country.

2. bravery [noun]: the will to do things that are dangerous, difficult or painful : lòng dũng cảm

Eg: His bravery in rescuing the survivors from the crash was reported on the news.

3. resourcefulness [noun]: the ability to be good at finding ways of doing things and solving problems : sự tháo vát

Eg: Resourcefulness is an essential quality for a good employee.

4. affection [noun]: the feeling of liking or loving sth/sb very much : tình yêu thương

Eg: Children nowadays need a lot of attention and affection.

5. motivational [adjective]: making sb want to do sth : có tính khích lệ

Eg: Her motivational support gave him strength to pass the difficult exam.

6. (to) dedicate [verb]: to give a lot of your time and effort to sth because you think it is important : tận tụy với

Eg: He has dedicated all his life to helping poor people.

7. exemplary [adjective]: providing a good example for sb to copy : gương mẫu

Eg: Minh is the most exemplary student in our class this semester.

8. contentment [noun]: a feeling of happiness and satisfaction: sự thỏa mãn

Eg: She looked back on her teaching career with contentment when she thought of all the students that she had helped.

9. (to) confront sth [verb]: to deal with a problem or difficult situation: đối mặt

Eg: She knew that she had to confront her fear of heights and climb the ladder.

10. hardship [noun]: a situation that is difficult and unpleasant : sự cực khổ

Eg: People had to suffer many hardships to overcome that winter.

11. sacrifice [noun]: the fact of giving up sth important or valuable to you to get or to give it to sb else : sự hi sinh

Eg: His parents made sacrifices so that he could have a good education.

12. incentive [noun]: sth that encourages you to do sth : sự khích lệ, cổ vũ

Eg: There is no incentive to continue doing this project – our design will never be approved.

Part 3:

1. Who are more important to you, friends or family?

Well, definitely my family. You can have many friends but your family members are irreplaceable. Friends can come and go at different stages of your life like secondary school, high school, university but it is your family who never abandon you no matter what happens.

2. Have you ever traveled with your family?

Yes, I have a lot. We frequently visit different provinces in my country in the summer. Last year, we had a whale of time in Nha Trang and Da Lat. While I enjoyed the sunny beaches with breathtaking views in Nha Trang, my sister and my mom were charmed by Da Lat's weather and food.

3. What kinds of family activities are popular in Vietnam?

Well, there are numerous family activities in our country, but they often take place on special occasions. For example, on the Tet holiday, all the family members will gather around and then children will wish longevity for their grandparents. Conventionally, the old will also give their children some lucky money.

4. How to get along well with family members?

Clearly, there are some differences in terms of interests, dispositions, and perspectives between family members. Therefore, to preserve the family's harmony, each member should respect, sympathize and sometimes sacrifice for others. What they should do is to focus on the good sides instead of the drawbacks of their loved ones.

5. What do you usually do with your family during national holidays and festivals?

Well, we usually go to special places like supermarkets or restaurants to enjoy precious family time on days-off. Or we can also hold some parties and invite our relatives to come to our house. Sometimes my mom and I try out novel food recipes from the Internet for special family meals.

6. In Vietnam today, what is the structure of the typical family?

In the past, it was quite common to see many generations living together. However, nowadays, as life is becoming increasingly modernized, especially in hectic cities, only parents and children live together.

7. What are the advantages and disadvantages of big families as opposed to small ones?

Well, in big families, there are definitely more connections and interactions between family members. Besides, grandparents could also teach valuable lessons and essential manners to their children. However, the difference in age amongst family members could hinder understanding..

8. What are some pros and cons of three generations living together?

In terms of the advantages, we can see that the appearance of more family members will ease the burden of raising kids. However, there exists some generation gaps when three generations are living together, which sometimes increases the tension between family members.

9. Whose responsibility do you think it should be to (financially) look after old people- the government's responsibility or the family's?

Personally, I think it should be the family's responsibility. Unless in cases when the children are too poor to cater for their parents, others have a moral responsibility to take care of their father and mother. Those who intentionally ignore their parents' well-being deserve extreme criticism.

10. How much do you think people should be responsible for the welfare of their parents?

Well, they should be responsible thoroughly. It is the parents who give them life and raise them with unconditional love, so they should receive the same amount of love from their kids

11. Do you think family's relationships are important?

Yes, they are the most meaningful relationships in one's life. Without motherhood or brotherhood, one will find themselves extremely lonely and clueless. Everybody should treasure these relationships and never harm them.

VOCABULARY:

1. irreplaceable [adj]: cannot be replaced: không thể thay thế được

Eg: Her position in his heart is irreplaceable.

2. (to) abandon [v]: to leave sb, especially sb you are responsible for : rời bỏ

Eg: The baby had been abandoned by its heartless mother.

3. have a whale of time [expression]: have great fun : có một khoảng thời gian vui vẻ

Eg: We were pleased to hear that he had a whale of time in Paris.

4. breath-taking [adj]: beautiful in an impressive way : đẹp không tưởng

Eg: The beach is famous for its breath-taking views.

5. (to) charm [v]: to please or attract sb in order to make them like you or do what you want: quyến rũ

Eg: Minh was charmed by her beauty and wit.

6. longevity [n]: long life, the fact of lasting a long life : sự trường thọ

Eg: We wish you both good health and longevity.

7. conventionally[adv]: in a traditional way: một cách truyền thống

Eg: Ao dai is conventionally dressed on the Tet holiday.

8. disposition [n]: the natural qualities of a person's character: tính khí

Eg: Nhi is loved for her cheerful disposition.

9. harmony [n]: a state of peaceful existence and agreement: sự hòa thuận

Eg: I wish my family to live together in perfect harmony.

10. (to) sympathize[v]: to show that you understand and feel sorry about sb's problem : thông cảm

Eg: I find it very hard to sympathize with him.

11. precious[adj]: valuable or important and not to be wasted: quý giá

Eg: Clean water is a precious commodity in the world.

12. novel [adj]: new, untried before: mới lạ

Eg: Novel things always bring me a sense of pleasure.

13. (to) modernize [v]: to make sth more modern and more suitable for use at the present time: hiện đại hóa

Eg: The factory is investing more money to modernize its facilities.

14. hectic [adj]: very busy, full of activity : sôi động

Eg: Ho Chi Minh is a very hectic city.

15. valuable [adj]: very useful or important: có giá trị

Eg: The book provides valuable information on recent trends.

16. (to) hinder [v]: to make it difficult for sb to do sth or sth to happen: cản trở

Eg: There is a political situation that hinders economic growth.

17. burden [n]: a duty that causes worry, difficulty or hard work : gánh nặng

Eg: I don't want to become a burden to my family when I'm old.

18. tension [n]: a situation when people do not trust each other, or feel unfriendly towards each other : sự căng thẳng

Eg: There is mounting tension in the company.

19. moral [adj]: concerned with principles of right and wrong behavior: thuộc về đạo đức

Eg: Proper punishment by parents will teach children moral lessons.

20. criticism [n]: the act of expressing disapproval of sb/sth: sự chỉ trích

Eg: The plan has attracted criticism from the consumer group.

21. thoroughly[adv]: completely and with great attention to detail: một cách hoàn toàn

Eg: The work had been done very thoroughly.

22. unconditional [adj]: without any conditions or limits : vô điều kiện

Eg: Every mother gives her children unconditional love.

23. meaningful[adj]: serious and important: có ý nghĩa

Eg: Visiting Ha Noi is a meaningful experience for me.

24. (to) treasure [v]: to have or keep sth that you love and that is extremely valuable to you : trân quý

Eg: I always treasure his loyal friendship.

5. Describe a book you want to read again

You should say

what the book is about

when you read it

how long you read it for

and explain why you want to read it again

Actually, I'm not a bookworm but sometimes, I still seek comfort in reading books, especially fiction books. There's a book of this type that I read when I was a child and I read it over and over again. It has many wonders in it and always makes me absorbed in its interesting content.

The book is called “Diary of a cricket”, written by To Hoai. It is a short novel, initially written for children. However, I believe this book is suitable for all other ages thanks to the storytelling ability of To Hoai. The book describes the adventure of a cricket through the world of animals and people, of the good and bad, war and peace, ideals and life purpose in colorful yet insightful perspectives. The cricket experienced countless setbacks and challenges but overcame them to eventually become a force of good. In general, the main character has his own charismatic power. His adventure story is so magical and enchanting that every page I turned tempted me to read further. The first time I read this book, I found it extremely hard to put it down.

It is such a great book that has been translated into more than 100 languages. In my opinion, it is a good source of bilingual books for Vietnamese children. Parents who grew up with this story will love to enjoy it again with their children. I believe that in the company of this book, a child, even a hyperactive one, is never going to feel bored or restless.

Vocabulary

1. Bookworm [noun] a person who reads a lot (mọt sách)

Eg: The girl who would rather stay inside and read than go out and play is an example of a bookworm.

2. Absorbed in sth [adjective] very interested in something and not paying attention to anything else (say mê, chăm chú)

Eg: Simon was so absorbed in his book that he didn't even notice me come in.

3. Storytelling [noun] the art of telling stories (nghệ thuật kể chuyện)

Eg: The feasting and storytelling was over, and the crew turned in for the night.

4. Insightful [adjective] having or showing a clear, deep, and sometimes sudden understanding of a complicated problem or situation (sâu sắc)

Eg: Her analysis of the problem was very insightful and everything became clear to me.

5. Setback [noun] a difficulty or problem that delays something or makes a situation worse (khó khăn)

Eg: The team suffered a setback when their best player was injured.

6. Charismatic [adjective] having a personal quality to attract and impress other people (cuốn hút)

Eg: He is a very charismatic leader who is very popular in his country.

7. Enchanting [adjective] very pleasant (làm say mê)

Eg: It's described in the guide book as "an enchanting medieval city".

8. Company [noun] the fact of being with a person or people, or the person or people you are with (sự đi cùng, hỗ trợ)

Eg: Margot came to stay for a week as company for my mother while I was away.

9. Hyperactive [adjective] Someone who is hyperactive has more energy than is normal, gets excited easily, and cannot stay still or think about work (hiếu động)

Eg: Hyperactive children often have poor concentration and require very little sleep.

10. Restless [adjective] unable to stay still or be happy where you are, because you are bored or need a change (thao thức, không yên)

Eg: After 3 years in his boring job, he was feeling restless and unhappy.

Part 3

1. Who likes to read more often, young people or old people?

I think it doesn't matter; age, that is. No matter how old or young one is, if people are real book lovers, they will manage to find themselves some free time to read books. I've known young people who are real bookworms, who have read maybe hundreds of books a year, and older ones who just prefer watching TV or taking care of their garden. So I think it's hard to tell who reads more between youngsters and old people.

2. Who have some young people come to dislike reading books over recent years?

Well I guess it's because of the appearance of modern technology, especially smartphones and tablets with tons of interesting applications in their Play Store or App Store. These applications are fun and addictive, and may be more appealing than books to some young people. Another reason is that some youngsters with a short attention span tend to be attracted to films rather than books, which consist of mere words and hardly any pictures.

3. Are there many libraries in Vietnam?

I don't think there are many libraries in Vietnam. Maybe there's one small library in most schools and universities, but there're not many large libraries for dwellers of a city. For example, in my hometown, there's only one small and really old provincial library, and there're not many books in

there. What's more is that in some parts of Vietnam, especially poor villages in the middle of Vietnam, libraries can even be regarded as the exception rather than the norm.

What kinds of books should children read?

I think children wouldn't find novels full of words attractive, so they should read picture books first. They can get used to words through the illustrations, and gradually they might become interested enough to read books which contain only words. Another option is comics, especially Japanese comics. They are called "mangas", and parents can buy some for their children to read. Some mangas are really good; they often try to deliver the message of friendship and love between family members, which can definitely create a positive impact on a child's personality and viewpoint.

Vocabulary:

✓ Bookworm [noun] (mọt sách) A person who loves reading

e.g. Jane always has her nose in a book – she's a real bookworm.

✓ Appealing [adjective] (hấp dẫn) Attractive or interesting

e.g. Village life is somehow more appealing to people these days as an escape from the noise and crowds of big cities.

✓ Attention span [noun] (khoảng tập trung) The length of time that one can listen to or watch something or somebody carefully and with interest

e.g. Before I learned to concentrate hard on my studies, I used to have a short attention span.

✓ Mere [adjective] (chỉ) Used to emphasize how small or insignificant someone or something is

e.g. The city is a mere 20 minutes from some stunning countryside.

✓ Dweller [noun] (cư dân) A person or animal that lives in or at a specified place

e.g. The majority of urban dwellers live in small apartments.

✓ Illustration [noun] (tranh minh họa) A picture illustrating a book, newspaper, etc.

e.g. His magazine illustrations and the drawings he made for his paintings have much in common.

6. Describe an experience in which the use of a mobile phone was not allowed

You should say

When it is
Why mobile phone is not allowed
Whether you followed the rules
And explain how you felt about the experience

Today I'm going to describe an occasion when mobile phones were not allowed. It was when I took the university entrance exam, about 4 years ago.

The university entrance exam is very crucial in Vietnam as it can determine our future path, so it is always organized in the fairest way possible. During the two-day exam, students were not permitted to keep their mobile phones with them, let alone use them. Otherwise, they would be disqualified from the test. The purpose was to prevent cheating, as students can store notes in their phones or text to ask for answers. This rule was clearly stated in prior written notifications as well as repeated by examiners on the exam days. However, to my surprise, some students still paid little attention to it, or they underestimated its importance as some still tried to break the rule. If the examiners had not checked every student carefully, some students could have brought the phones with them. Not having mobile phones apparently hit some students hard. They kept bothering others to ask for answers. So, the examiners had to walk around to monitor and remind these students. Unlike them, I was totally fine – the rule didn't cause me any inconvenience because I had studied everything carefully.

I think that this rule was indeed beneficial and should as it helped students concentrate on the tests without being distracted by phones ringing or people calling out. More importantly, as its main aim, it helped to keep the exam fair in order to assess students' true ability.

VOCABULARY

1. crucial (adjective): extremely important, because it will affect other things (quan trọng)

Eg: Parents play a crucial role in preparing their children for adult life.

2. determine (verb): decide in a definite direction (quyet dinh)

Eg: His performance in the interview will determine whether he gets the job.

3. path (noun): a plan of action or a way of achieving something (con đường)

Eg: Working hard is the most certain path to success.

4. fair (adjective): treating everyone equally and according to the rules or law (công bằng)

Eg: It's not fair! He always gets more than me.

5. permit (verb): to allow somebody to do something or to allow something to happen (cho phép)

Eg: Visitors are not permitted to take photographs.

6. let alone (idiom): used after a statement to emphasize that, because the first thing is not true or possible, the next thing cannot be true or possible either (chưa nói đến)

Eg: There isn't enough room at the table for us, let alone any guests.

7. disqualify (verb): to prevent somebody from doing something because they have broken a rule or are not suitable (loại khỏi)

Eg: He was disqualified from the competition for using drugs.

8. prevent (verb): to stop somebody from doing something; to stop something from happening (ngăn chặn)

Eg: No one can prevent you from attending this meeting if you wish to go.

9. state (verb): to formally write or say something, especially in a careful and clear way (tuyên bố, nói rõ)

Eg: The facts are clearly stated in the report.

10. prior (adjective): happening or existing before something else or before a particular time (trước)

Eg: Please give us prior notice if you need an evening meal.

11. notification (noun): the act of giving or receiving official information about something (thông báo)

Eg: You will receive a notification of our decision in the next week.

12. surprise (noun): a feeling caused by something happening suddenly or unexpectedly (sự ngạc nhiên)

Eg: To everyone's surprise, the plan succeeded.

13. underestimate (verb): to not realize how good, strong, determined, etc. somebody really is (đánh giá thấp)

Eg: Never underestimate your opponent or you will lose.

14. break a rule (expression): not follow a rule (phá luật)

Eg: He was punished for breaking school rules.

15. hit (verb): to have a bad effect on somebody/something (gây ảnh hưởng xấu)

Eg: His death didn't really hit me at first, but when I realised I broke down and cried.

16. bother (verb): to interrupt somebody; to talk to or distract somebody when they do not want to talk to you (làm phiền)

Eg: Stop bothering me when I'm working.

17. monitor (verb): to watch and check something over a period of time in order to see how it develops, so that you can make any necessary changes (giám sát)

Eg: Each student's progress is closely monitored.

18. remind (verb): to help somebody remember something, especially something important that they must do (nhắc nhở)

Eg: I called to remind him about the party.

19. inconvenience (noun): trouble or problems, especially concerning what you need or would like yourself (sự bất tiện)

Eg: I chose a different route to avoid the inconvenience of going through the town centre.

20. beneficial (adjective): having a helpful or useful effect (có lợi)

Eg: Work experience is usually highly beneficial for students.

21. distract (verb): to take somebody's attention away from what they are trying to do (gây xao nhãng)

Eg: Don't talk to her—she's very easily distracted.

22. assess (verb): to make a judgement about the nature or quality of somebody/something (đánh giá)

Eg: Interviews allow you to assess the suitability of candidates.

Part 3

1. Do you like having a mobile phone?

Yes, of course. I don't think I could live without it. It enables me to keep in touch with my family and friends even when they live far away. It's also a convenient device that can be used for a variety of tasks, such as listening to music, watching movies, playing games, browsing, storing notes, making video calls, and even setting an alarm sometimes to wake me up. It has become my daily personal assistant.

2. Is it a good or a bad thing to have a mobile phone? Why?

Well, it's hard to say, because it depends on how we use it. The advantages are numerous, but today you can see that many people overuse it and have become slaves of this gadget, which is a worrying

trend I think. When we're preoccupied by mobile phones, we tend to forget the immediate surroundings, and easily get distracted. So, excessive use of mobile phones can lead to adverse effects on relationships, health and work or study.

3. Do old and young people use mobile phones in the same way?

Well, although we all use mobile phones for various purposes like communication, entertainment and work or study, I believe there are some differences in the way different generations utilize mobile phones. Old people do not overuse these gadgets to the same extent as young ones. They don't always stare at their phone screen for hours on end like teenagers. What's more, from what I've seen, old people mainly use phones for work like calling their colleagues or checking emails, while young people use phones for entertainment and communication.

4. What can be done to avoid children becoming inattentive in class because of mobile phones?

Children's span of attention is becoming shorter and shorter due to their constant exposure to electronic devices, so it's crucial that we take some actions to prevent this. One way is limit the time children spend on things like phones, TV or laptops. More importantly, children should not be allowed to use these devices while studying. Instead, they should be encouraged to take active roles in classroom activities.

5. Do you think translation applications on mobiles will make learning another language unnecessary?

Definitely not! If someone communicates with foreigners only depending on machine translation, he or she will always have a problem of making complete sentences or conveying clear information. And of course there are benefits of learning a second language, not just opening new mental horizons but also actually improving the function of the brain.

6. What do you prefer, using maps or asking people for directions? Why?

I would rather use maps because I'm quite a good map user and above all, I don't want to bother others by asking them for directions. When I travelled to Danang, I asked a local for directions but I just received lukewarm responses. So since then, I have always used maps instead. Beside paper maps, today we have such applications as Google Map in our phone, so it's more convenient and reliable to use them.

Vocabulary:

1. Enable somebody to do something [verb]: to make it possible for somebody to do something (làm cho có thể (làm gì))

Eg: This new programme will enable older people to study at college.

2. Browse (something) [verb]: to look for or to look at information on a computer, especially on the Internet or a specific website (lướt web)

Eg: I spent the whole evening just browsing on the Internet.

3. Store something [verb]: to keep information or facts in a computer or in your brain (lưu trữ)

Eg: We are conducting research into how information is stored in the brain.

4. Assistant [noun]: a person who helps or supports somebody, usually in their job (người phụ tá)

Eg: The company is expanding and the manager has employed an assistant to help with the office work.

5. Numerous [adjective]: existing in large numbers (nhiều)

Eg: He has been late on numerous occasions because of the frequent train delays.

6. Overuse something [verb]: to use something too much or too often (dùng quá nhiều)

Eg: 'Good' is a very overused word.

7. Slave [noun]: a person who is so strongly influenced by something that they cannot live without it, or cannot make their own decisions (nô lệ)

Eg: Sue's a slave to fashion, so she is always buying the latest designs.

8. Gadget [noun]: a small tool or device that does something useful (công cụ, thiết bị)

Eg: We live in a world filled with high-tech gadgets, like cell phones or satellite navigation systems in cars.

9. Worrying [adjective]: that makes you worry (gây lo lắng)

Eg: The recent high unemployment statistics are very worrying.

10. Trend [noun]: a general direction in which a situation is changing or developing (xu hướng)

Eg: The data indicates a trend towards earlier retirement.

11. Preoccupied (with something) [adjective] thinking and/or worrying continuously about something so that you do not pay attention to other things (bận tâm)

Eg: We live in a world preoccupied by sport instead of more serious matters.

12. Immediate surroundings [expression] the things which are near us at any particular time (những thứ ngay xung quanh ta ở một thời điểm nào đó)

Eg: The immediate surroundings of the house were pleasant – a park and a play area for children.

13. Distracted (by somebody/something) [adjective]: unable to pay attention to somebody/something because you are worried or thinking about something else (bị xao nhãng)
Eg: She seemed slightly distracted, as if something was worrying her.
14. Excessive [adjective]: greater than what seems reasonable or appropriate (quá mức)
Eg: They complained about the excessive noise coming from the upstairs flat.
15. Adverse [adjective]: negative and unpleasant; not likely to produce a good result (bất lợi, có hại)
Eg: This drug is known to have adverse side effects.
16. Utilize something (as something) [verb]: to use something, especially for a practical purpose (sử dụng)
Eg: Vitamin C helps the body utilize the iron present in your body.
17. To the same extent [expression]: as much as (cùng mức độ, cường độ)
Eg: He doesn't train to the same extent as he used to.
18. Stare (at somebody/something) [verb]: to look at somebody/something for a long time (nhìn chăm chăm)
Eg: Peter stared in disbelief at the message on the screen.
19. For hours on end [expression]: for a very long time, without a break (liên tục trong một khoảng thời gian dài)
Eg: She talks for hours on end to her online chatroom friends.
20. Span [noun]: the length of time that something lasts or is able to continue (khoảng thời gian từ lúc bắt đầu đến lúc kết thúc)
Eg: Small children have a short attention span, and they soon lose concentration.
21. Constant [adjective]: that does not change (không thay đổi)
Eg: There was constant noise that continued all day during the festival.
22. Exposure (to something) [noun]: the state of being in a place or situation where there is no protection from something harmful or unpleasant (sự phơi bày, tiếp xúc)
Eg: The report recommends people to avoid prolonged exposure to sunlight.
23. Crucial [adjective]: extremely important, because it will affect other things (quan trọng, cần thiết)
Eg: Parents play a crucial role in preparing their child to face the problems of adult life.

24. Limit something (to something) [verb]: to stop something from increasing beyond a particular amount or level (hạn chế)

Eg: They introduced measures to limit carbon dioxide emissions from cars.

25. Encourage [verb]: to give somebody support, courage or hope (động viên)

Eg: 'Good girl, you're doing fine,' he encouraged her.

26. Active [adjective]: always busy doing things, especially physical activities (năng động)

Eg: Although he's nearly 80, he is still a very active member of the gym.

27. Convey [verb]: to make ideas, feelings, etc. known to somebody (chuyển tải)

Eg: He tried to convey to the police how urgent the situation was.

28. Horizon [noun]: the limit of your desires, knowledge or interests (sự hiểu biết)

Eg: Her trips to Asia have broadened her cultural horizons.

29. Function [noun]: a special activity or purpose of a person or thing (chức năng)

Eg: The function of the heart is to pump blood through the body.

30. Local [noun]: a person who lives in a particular place or district (người địa phương)

Eg: The locals here are very friendly and are happy to help strangers.

31. Lukewarm [adjective]: not interested or enthusiastic (thiếu nhiệt tình)

Eg: She was lukewarm about the plan.

32. Response [noun]: a spoken or written answer (sự phản hồi)

Eg: What was their response to the question?

33. Reliable [adjective]: that is likely to be correct or true (đáng tin)

Eg: Our information comes from a reliable source.

7. Describe a holiday/trip you want to go on in the future

You should say:

- Where this place is
- Who you would like to go with
- What you would do there
- explain why you want to go there

Well, for a future vacation, as something of an ecotourist, Da Lat city is on the top of my list. It is a renowned destination in the south of Vietnam. I'm going to tell you some ideas about a great vacation in Da Lat that popped up in my mind.

I would go there on my own and choose a homestay rather than a hotel in order to experience the intimate and affectionate lifestyle of Da Lat farmers. It's kind of community-based tourism, which means that during my homestay, I would mingle with simple farmers who make local agricultural products; participate in their daily activities, go to market, buy food, cook traditional local dishes, cultivate, look after and harvest crops; study, visit local tourist attractions and historic sites.

In short, I would become an amateur farmer. Very soon, I could be able to join new family members to embark on harvesting agricultural products. And I would also help sort out products prior to delivering them to wholesale outlets.

Moreover, I would be able to enjoy Da Lat's distinctive mild climate along with misty weather which makes this small city the ideal destination for a holiday escape away from the busy metropolises. In terms of attractions, I would have tons of choices. The natural wonders of Langbiang Mountain, Xuan Huong Lake, Doi Thong Hai Mo and the Valley of Love top the list. On the cultural and historical side, Bao Dai Summer Palace, Domaine de Marie Church and Truc Lam Monastery are the treasures that hold the rich history and culture of Da Lat and the region.

I believe the happy days shared in Da Lat would make me want to stay forever and never have to say farewell. And with all the knowledge and valuable experience during my stay, I would enrich my experiences in life and be more successful.

Vocabulary

1. ecotourist [noun] a person who goes on an organised vacation that is designed so that the tourist damages the environment as little as possible

Eg: She is an ecotourist who spends every vacation helping on organic farms.

2. renowned [adjective] famous for something (nổi tiếng)

Eg: The region is renowned for its outstanding natural beauty.

3. pop up [phrasal verb] to appear or happen, especially suddenly or unexpectedly (bật ra, xuất hiện đột ngột)

Eg: She's one of those movie stars who pops up everywhere, on TV, in magazines, on Broadway.

4. affectionate [adjective] showing feelings of liking or love (yêu thích)

Eg: His books show an affectionate understanding of rural life in Vietnam.

5. mingle [verb] to mix or combine, or be mixed or combined (trộn lẫn)

Eg: The excitement of starting a new job is always mingled with a certain apprehension.

6. outlet [noun] a company or organization that sells goods of a particular type from a store or shop

Eg: The farming cooperative have a large warehouse which is an outlet for all its products.

7. metropolis [noun] a very large city, often the most important city in a large area or country (đô thị)

Eg: Soon afterwards he left the countryside to begin his career in the metropolis.

8. farewell [noun] an occasion when someone says goodbye (tạm biệt)

Eg: He bid us both an affectionate farewell.

Part 3:

1. What is the importance of travelling?

There are several reasons why travel can be a powerful tool for personal development. Traveling can feel empowering when surrounding yourself with people who don't know the encyclopedia of your past. It reinforces your willingness to broaden your horizons, to get unstuck and to move in new directions. It provides learning and education about places and history and connects us to other cultures and people. Another importance that few people think about is that travelling gives us a chance to face one's fears of the unknown, which enables us to test ourselves.

2. What type of places do you recommend people to visit on vacation?

Well, it depends. For example, if I have to give advice to a person who is an introvert at heart, which means he or she tends to crave one-on-one conversations, personal time for reflection, and really getting away from it all when they travel, then I would recommend Laos as an acceptably good choice. Laos is a landlocked country with rugged mountains and an enduring favorite of introverted travelers. Travelers can walk through the markets without being overly hassled and feel comfortable dining alone in restaurants while exploring the area.

3. Do Vietnamese people prefer to travel by car or by train?

I'm not sure but I guess they would choose trains over cars. First, for a person who has motion sickness, travelling by train is much more comfortable compared to travelling by car. Second, some people find the rhythmic motion and noise of this mode of transport whilst viewing the changing scenery totally enthralling. It is suitable for a landscape loving type of person. And finally, the most common reason is the economic material benefit. Traveling by train is obviously cheaper.

4. What are the advantages of travelling with a group of people?

Taking in the sights with a group of people surely has tons of benefits. Safety in numbers is the first one I think of. Travelling to unfamiliar destinations can sometimes seem daunting. A group of tourist is less of a target than a single person. Also, if you get sick or hurt, there are people around to help you out. The second one is that it's cost – effective. Holidaying with a group can help you reduce travel expenses since everyone will be sharing the costs of accommodation, transportation, food, and even tour tickets. It also allows you to take advantage of group rates and discounts.

5. Should young people travel abroad?

Certainly, yes! Travelling to a foreign country teaches the young things they can't get at school, for example, budgeting skills. Most young travelers have relatively tight budgets. Dealing with budgets is a vital travel skill to learn, and an imperative skill for a successful life financially. They can also learn problem – solving skills. Things don't always go as planned, which requires being able to think under pressure—another important skill for every-day life.

6. Are international trips popular with people in your country?

In the past, it was something only for rich people, but thanks to technological advancements and low-cost airlines, international travelling is now affordable to virtually all classes of Vietnamese people. Therefore it's getting more and more popular with people in my country. I reckon it is a positive trend due to the benefits of travelling abroad.

7. What do you consider when you take a trip?

Well, it's necessary to spend extra time up front considering how to plan your trip in order to make your entire vacation run smoothly from start to finish. The first thing I would consider is

documentation, especially when travelling abroad. The second is the daily budget. I would need to figure out what my total trip budget is and subtract the initial necessary costs like flights and visa fees. The last one would review travel warnings and alerts just to be sure I'd have a safe vacation.

Vocabulary

1. Reinforce [verb] to make something stronger (làm mạnh thêm, củng cố)

Eg: The pockets on my jeans are reinforced with double stitching.

2. At heart [expression] used to say what someone is really like (thực sự, bản chất thực)

Eg: He had dozens of friends, but he was a private person at heart.

3. Crave [verb] to have a very strong feeling of wanting something (khao khát)

Eg: Many young children crave attention.

4. Reflection [noun] serious and careful thought (sự ngẫm nghĩ)

Eg: After 30 years as a judge, her reflections on justice were well worth listening to.

5. Acceptably [adv] in a way that can be accepted, approved of, or allowed to continue (tương đối, chấp nhận được)

Eg: His communication skills are acceptably good.

6. Enthralling [adj] keeping someone's interest and attention completely (mê hoặc, cuốn hút)

Eg: I found your book absolutely enthralling!

7. Daunting [adj] making you feel slightly frightened or worried about your ability to achieve something (làm thoái chí, nản chí)

Eg: The country was faced with the daunting prospect of overcoming four decades of division.

8. Imperative [adj] extremely important or urgent (cực kì quan trọng/ khẩn cấp)

Eg: The president said it was imperative that the release of all hostages be secured.

9. Initial [adj] of or at the beginning (khởi đầu)

Eg: Initial reports say that seven people have died, though this has not yet been confirmed.

10. Alert [noun] a warning to people to be prepared to deal with something dangerous (sự báo động)

Eg: The public were warned to be on the alert for (= watching carefully for) suspicious packages.

8. Describe your dream house/apartment

You should say

what it looked like
how big it was
where it was located
and explain why it is your dream house/apartment

I'm going to talk about my uncle's house, which I first visited when I had just graduated. It is a palatial house which is located near the city centre.

It is a splendid house with a lovely swimming pool and a huge garage in Tay Ho District, Ha Noi. The land area is 300 sq.m with 4 bedrooms, 4 bathrooms, a living room and modern kitchen. I have to say that is naturally illuminated, with its floor-to-ceiling windows. The walk out deck in the back yard offers a pleasant and quiet space for the family beside the pool, while the downstairs family room is a great place for kids or adults to play or watch movies. The house is spacious but still cosy because it is elaborately decorated with wooden floors and antique furniture.

The most striking thing about the house is its gigantic fish tank wall. It's extremely eye-catching. Right from the moment you enter the living room, you can see this unique feature. It's full of saltwater fish. The tank is gorgeously framed in teak to match the woodwork of the room. My uncle said that building an aquarium into a wall was always his dream, and he made it reality. I felt like being one of his admirers after hearing those words because I was still on my way to purchasing my own dream – an average apartment in the city centre. I hope someday I can tell my nephew the same thing that my uncle told me.

Vocabulary

1. palatial [adjective] A palatial house is very large and beautiful (nguy nga, lộng lẫy)

Eg: The President lives in a palatial residence, with no less than 30 rooms.

2. splendid [adjective] excellent, or beautiful and impressive (tuyệt đẹp, tuyệt vời)

Eg: It is splendid to feel the wind blowing in my face and the lively movement of my horse.

3. illuminate [verb] to light something and make it brighter (chiếu sáng)

Eg: The streets were illuminated with strings of coloured lights.

4. floor-to-ceiling [adjective] used for describing things such as windows or pieces of furniture that are the full height of a wall. (từ sàn đến trần)

Eg: A dramatic floor to ceiling stone fireplace is the focal point in this living room.

5. cosy [adjective] comfortable and pleasant, especially (of a building) because of being small and warm (ấm cúng)

Eg: This small living room is nice and cosy in the winter.

6. elaborately [adverb] containing a lot of careful detail or many detailed parts (nhiều chi tiết)

Eg: The dancers leading the procession were dressed elaborately in colorful costumes.

7. striking [adjective] interesting and unusual enough to attract attention (bắt mắt)

Eg: The hotel staff wore striking red and white uniforms.

8. eye-catching [adjective] very attractive or noticeable (bắt mắt)

Eg: She was very beautiful and the diamond ring on her finger was quite eye-catching.

9. unique [adjective] very special and unusual, often the only one of its type (độc đáo)

Eg: He has a unique talent for painting, so it is not surprising that he wants to be an artist.

10. gorgeously [adverb] in a very beautiful and attractive way (một cách tuyệt đẹp)

Eg: She was gorgeously dressed in the most fashionable designer clothes.

11. frame [verb] to put or make a frame or border around something (đóng khung)

Eg: I have framed my favourite photo of my parents and put it in my living room.

Part 3:

1. What are some of the housing problems that exist in your city?

Well, the citizens in my country have to confront numerous housing problems, one of which is extortionate house prices. In fact, urbanization and overpopulation have caused house prices to increase more than ever before. Besides, the houses of underprivileged people are normally substandard.

2. What is the government doing to solve these problems?

Practically, the government has come up with some possible solutions like constructing low-cost apartments for the middle class. Some projects have allowed the impoverished to borrow money for

housing with a low interest. However, at this stage, these solutions have not proved to be really effective.

3. In cities in your country, are there many people who do not have a place to live?

Yes, there are. Thousands of beggars and homeless people in my country cannot afford even three meals a day, let alone a place to sleep. A well-furnished house is usually regarded as a luxury in my country, especially for the poor people.

4. Where do they sleep?

Having no place to live, they frequently sleep in the streets or near the station. Their shelters could also be found near large places like supermarkets or malls. As you know, homeless people do not have a stable place to live.

5. Do you think the prices of homes in your country are too expensive for the average person?

Yes, I do and this situation is common in big cities. The price of land is quite exorbitant these days. Moreover, people also have to spend an enormous amount of money on building a house. Sometimes, there are those who have to work diligently for their whole life to buy a house.

6. What are some of the reasons why the prices are so high?

Well, this might be due to the increasing shortage of land. Nowadays, stretches of land have been used for industrialization to build offices, companies, enterprises, etc. Furthermore, I think overpopulation also puts a great strain on accommodation demand.

7. What is the government doing about this problem?

As I have said, the government has introduced some projects that assist poor people in buying a house. Besides, reasonable prices for apartments are also offered to people with an average income.

8. What can the government do about this problem?

Well, I think the government should strictly regulate the cost of housing and most importantly, they should try their best to enhance the overall standards of living for citizens. Only through these actions will people have more chance of getting access to a house.

9. Do you think the government should help low income people to buy a home?

Well, I think they should, but to a certain extent. After all, it is neither realistic nor necessary to help all poor people, as the government cannot shoulder the onerous burden of housing demand. Money is also needed to invest in other areas, such as poverty, health, etc.

10. Do you think the government should supply low-cost housing for those who have low income?

Yes, they should. However, houses and apartments which are low cost have to meet standard requirements and the safety of the users must always be guaranteed.

VOCABULARY:

1. extortionate [adj]: very expensive: đắt cắt cổ

Eg: This bank offers loans at extortionate rates of interest.

2. urbanization [n]: the movement to city : đô thị hóa

Eg: The increasing speed of urbanization in developing countries has led to many problems.

3. substandard [adj]: not as good as normal, as acceptable : dưới tiêu chuẩn

Eg: Substandard goods are not accepted in this prestigious market.

4. the impoverished [n]: the poor : những người nghèo khổ

Eg: Recent earthquakes have devastated the impoverished.

5. effective [adj]: producing successful results : hiệu quả

Eg: Aspirin is a simple but highly effective treatment.

6. beggar [n]: a person who lives by asking people for money or food : người ăn xin

Eg: In underdeveloped nations, people are reduced to be beggars.

7. (to) furnish[v]: to put furniture in a house, room: sắm sửa nội thất

Eg: The room was furnished with antiques.

8. luxury [n]: a thing that is expensive and enjoyable but not necessary: thứ đồ xa xỉ

Eg: I love having a long, hot bath-it's one of life's little luxuries.

9. shelter [n]: a place to stay or live: chỗ trú ẩn, nơi che chắn

Eg: Human beings need food, clothing and a shelter.

10. stable[adj]: firmly fixed, not likely to move, change : ổn định

Eg: The patient's condition is not very stable.

11. exorbitant[adj]:much too high: đắt đỏ

Eg: The prices of this shop are extremely exorbitant.

12. enormous [adj]: extremely large: to lớn

Eg: The problems facing the president are enormous.

13. diligently [adv]: in a way which shows care and much effort: một cách cẩn mẫn

Eg: Lan always works diligently, which makes her stand out.

14. industrialization [n]: the development of industry : công nghiệp hóa

Eg: The rate of industrialization in Vietnam is increasing.

15. put a strain on sth[expression]: put pressure on sth: gây áp lực lên

Eg: Grades put a great strain on her scholastic performances.

16. accommodation [n]: a place to live, work or stay in: chỗ ở

Eg: Accommodation prices have increased greatly in recent days.

17. (to) assist [v]: to help sb : trợ giúp

Eg: Minh assisted me a lot in this project.

18. reasonable [adj]: fair, practical and sensible : phải chăng

Eg: We sell good quality food with reasonable prices.

19. (to) regulate [v]: to control sth by means of rules: kiểm soát

Eg: The activities of credit companies are regulated by law.

20. (to) enhance [v]: to increase or further improve the quality of sth: cải thiện

Eg: This is a good opportunity to enhance the reputation of the company.

21. realistic [adj]: sensible or appropriate, possible to achieve: thực tế

Eg: We must set realistic goals.

22. burden [n]: a duty, responsibility that causes worry : gánh nặng

Eg: The main burden of caring for old people falls on the state.

23. requirement[n]: something you want or you need: nhu cầu

Eg: All he needs is the basic requirements of life.

24. (to) guarantee [v]: to promise to do sth : đảm bảo

Eg: We cannot guarantee that our flights will not be delayed

9. Describe the most polite person you know

You should say

who this person is

how you met him/ her

whether you enjoy his/ her company or not

and explain why do you think him/ her to be the most polite person.

Today I'm going to talk about my college teacher, the most well-mannered person I know. Her name is Xuan Dung and she is my speaking teacher and thesis advisor. She is my favourite teacher at college because she is always nice to students and treats them with respect rather than as someone inferior to her, as other teachers often do.

The way my teacher shows politeness is very natural, and does not seem forced at all. I have to say her manners are impeccable. She always says "Thank you" when we do anything helpful or hand in assignments by deadline, or greets us with 'Good morning, how are we all feeling today?'. When we give presentations in front of class, she is always all ears no matter how boring they are. This really makes us feel warm and self-confident because in other classes, other teachers sometimes pay little attention or even interrupt us. At the end of every presentation, she will give nice feedback about both the strengths and weaknesses of each group. This encourages us a lot. I still remember a time when she was so terribly sick that she couldn't come to class, she posted a notification on Facebook in which she didn't forget to apologize.

She is our role model for good manners, and how to be grateful/appreciative towards other people. I'm so lucky to have such a polite and sensible teacher like her. Thanks to her, I try to be always polite with others even when they don't treat me well.

VOCABULARY:

1. well-mannered (adjective): having good manners (lịch sự)

Eg: My uncle is the most well-mannered gentleman I have ever known.

2. thesis (noun): a long piece of writing completed by a student as part of a university degree, based on their own research (luận văn)

Eg: Students must submit a thesis on an agreed subject within four years.

3. advisor (noun): a person who gives advice, especially somebody who knows a lot about a particular subject (người cố vấn)

Eg: Students can sit down with a careers advisor and discuss what to do next.

4. inferior (adjective): not good or not as good as somebody/something else (thua kém)

Eg: Women are often regarded as inferior, although public attitudes are now changing.

5. forced (adjective): not sincere; not the result of genuine emotions (giả tạo)

Eg: She said she was enjoying herself but her smile was forced.

6. manner (noun): the way that somebody behaves towards other people (thái độ, cử chỉ)

Eg: I got into trouble if I didn't show good manners towards/toward other people.

7. impeccable (adjective): without mistakes or faults (hoàn hảo)

Eg: Her written English is impeccable and she should score 100% in the exam.

8. deadline (noun): a point in time by which something must be done (hạn cuối)

Eg: The deadline for applications is 30 April.

9. greet (verb): to say hello to somebody or to welcome them (chào)

Eg: She greeted us with a smile.

10. be all ears (idiom): to be waiting with interest to hear what somebody has to say (lắng nghe)

Eg: 'Do you know what he said?' 'Go on—I'm all ears.'

11. feedback (noun): advice, criticism or information about how good or useful something or somebody's work is (phản hồi)

Eg: The teacher will give you feedback on the test.

12. strength (noun): a quality or an ability that a person or thing has that gives them an advantage (thế mạnh)

Eg: The ability to keep calm is one of her many strengths.

13. weakness (noun): a weak point in a system, somebody's character, etc. (điểm yếu)

Eg: We all have our weaknesses, and my weakness is that I have no patience.

14. terribly (adverb): very much; very badly (rất tệ)

Eg: The experiment went terribly wrong and some people were injured.

15. notification (noun): the act of giving or receiving official information about something (thông báo)

Eg: You will receive a notification of our decision in the next week.

16. apologize (to somebody) (for something) (verb): to say that you are sorry for doing something wrong or causing a problem (xin lỗi)

Eg: She apologized for being late.

17. model (noun): a person or thing that is considered an excellent example of something (hình mẫu)

Eg: He's a model student who works hard and participates actively in class.

18. grateful (adjective): feeling or showing thanks because somebody has done something kind for you or has done as you asked (biết ơn)

Eg: I am extremely grateful to all the teachers for their help.

19. appreciative (adjective): feeling or showing that you are grateful for something (trân trọng, biết ơn)

Eg: My boss was very appreciative of my hard work on the new project.

20. sensible (adjective): able to make good judgements based on reason and experience rather than emotion; useful and practical (sáng suốt, hợp lý)

Eg: Choose a sensible diet and stick to it.

Part 3:

1. Who taught you to be polite when you were a child?

I think no one actually taught me. I learnt it by seeing people around me. My mother is very polite and she talks to people very nicely. No matter what the other person is saying I never remember her losing her patience. My grandmother is kind, too. She once told me never to raise my voice in an argument, but rather improve myself. I have kept these things in mind and have benefited a lot from my politeness.

2. Why is it important to be polite to people?

I think because of two simple reasons. First, most people tend to react to the way you talk to them. So, if you want others to be nice to you, you have to start it by yourself. Secondly, well-mannered people tend to have better relationships from which they can benefit a lot. If you're impolite, it's likely that the others may take offence, and the relationships may die.

3. Do you think people have become less or more polite since the time you were a child?

Well, it's difficult to say. I believe people have become more open minded, less formal and more bold in making statements. So, they tend to just say as it is. But, this does not necessarily mean that they don't respect their parents or elders. I think the problem is that people are not able to express what they feel in a more respectful way.

4. What according to you is politeness?

In my definition, politeness is basically treating people with respect, and the goal of politeness is to make all people relaxed and comfortable with one another. For example, we can speak softly and avoid using harsh words even when we cannot control our temper any more. We should show our gratitude or regret when someone does something good for us or we do something which is not good for others.

5. Do you think we should be polite to those who are not being polite to us?

Yes, definitely! Being polite can not only affect our relationships but also reflect our personality and educational background. Even when you think you don't need to befriend someone, you shouldn't be impolite because you may be considered rude or ignorant. You know bad news travels fast. You can lose all others' respect just due to a harsh word you use when losing your temper.

6. In your country's culture, how do you show that you are being polite?

We really value politeness and good manners in Vietnam, and there are many types of polite behaviour. One of the first things we learn as children is to say such polite words as "thank you" or "please" as well as use suitable personal forms of address. As adults, I think we are careful not to be too direct in the language we use. For example, we would never say "Bring me the bill" in a restaurant because this kind of direct instruction would sound rude. It would be much more polite to say "Could we have the bill, please?".

VOCABULARY

1. patience (noun): the ability to stay calm and accept a delay or something annoying without complaining (sự kiên nhẫn)

Eg: Teaching children with special needs requires patience and understanding.

2. argument (noun): a conversation or discussion in which two or more people disagree, often angrily (cuộc tranh cãi)

Eg: We had an argument with the waiter about the bill.

3. react (verb): react (to something) (by doing something) to change or behave in a particular way as a result of or in response to something (phản ứng)

Eg: Her family reacted with horror when she told them about her accident.

4. well-mannered (adjective): having good manners (lịch sự)

Eg: My uncle is the most well-mannered gentleman I have ever known.

5. offence (noun): the act of upsetting or insulting somebody (sự xúc phạm, làm bực mình)

Eg: No one will take offence (= feel upset or insulted) if you leave early.

6. open-minded (adjective): willing to listen to, think about or accept different ideas (cởi mở)

Eg: I encourage the children to be open-minded about new ideas and experiences.

7. bold (adjective): not afraid to say what you feel or to take risks (dũng cảm)

Eg: I would like to try mountain climbing, but I'm not bold enough to face the dangers.

8. express (verb): to show or make known a feeling, an opinion, etc. by words, looks or actions (thể hiện)

Eg: Words cannot express how pleased I am that you passed the exam.

9. respectful (adjective): showing or feeling respect (thể hiện sự tôn trọng)

Eg: We all stood in respectful silence during the ceremony.

10. softly (adverb): in a soft way (nhẹ nhàng)

Eg: She closed the door softly behind her, making no noise.

11. harsh (adjective): cruel, severe and unkind; unpleasant to listen to (thô lỗ, khó nghe)

Eg: He later regretted his harsh words to the students with bad marks.

12. control (verb): to manage to make yourself remain calm, even though you are upset or angry (kiểm soát, điều chỉnh cảm xúc)

Eg: He was finding it difficult to control his feelings of anger during the President's speech.

13. any more (adverb): often used at the end of negative sentences and at the end of questions, to mean 'any longer' (không còn nữa)

Eg: She doesn't live here any more. She went to England 3 months ago.

14. gratitude (noun): the feeling of being grateful and wanting to express your thanks (sự biết ơn)

Eg: They deserve our gratitude for all the useful work they do.

15. regret (noun): a feeling of sadness or disappointment that you have because of something that has happened or something that you have done or not done (sự hối tiếc)

Eg: She showed no regret about leaving her country.

16. reflect (verb): to show or be a sign of the nature of something or of somebody's attitude or feeling (phản ánh)

Eg: His music reflects his interest in Asian culture.

17. befriend (verb): to become a friend of somebody, especially somebody who needs your help (làm bạn)

Eg: Shortly after my arrival at the school, I was befriended by an older girl.

18. ignorant (adjective): with very bad manners (thiếu lịch sự)

Eg: Too many of the staff were badly-trained and ignorant, so of course many customers complained.

19. bad news travels fast (proverb): Information about trouble or misfortune travels quickly (Tiếng xấu đồn xa)

Eg: You are the third person telling me that Johnson's house was on fire this morning. Bad news travels fast!

20. lose one's temper (idiom): to fail to control your anger (mất bình tĩnh)

Eg: She lost her temper with a customer and shouted at him.

21. value (verb): to think that somebody/something is important (coi trọng)

Eg: During my serious illness I learned to value the ordinary things in life.

22. form of address (noun): the correct title when you talk to somebody (các gọi, các xưng hô)

Eg: You will lose your job if you continue to use that disrespectful form of address to your boss.

23. direct (adjective): saying exactly what you mean in a way that nobody can pretend not to understand (thẳng thắn)

Eg: She has a very direct way of speaking and gives clear instructions to students.

10. Describe a cake that is special to you.

You should say

What it looks like

How it tastes

How you get the cake

And explain why you find it special

Everyone deserves a cake on their birthday so I find it nothing special to receive a cake on my annual birthday, but there's one that is **exceptional**. Let me tell you about the story about it.

In the first year of university, I **had a crush on** one of my classmates. Unlike me, an introvert, he is truly a **social butterfly**, who is socially dynamic, networking, **charismatic**, and personally gregarious. He and I were like two people from two different worlds. I had never **detected** any "real" signs of interest coming from him, such as trying to **make small talk** with me, and I always thought it would be a forever **unrequited** love. In addition to that, I **heard through the grapevine** that he had someone he liked. Therefore, I had never made any moves or anything like that. But he did the opposite. He made a big step on my birthday by making a small cake.

It was a cupcake topped with strawberry cream cheese frosting that was just as tasty as the red velvet cupcake itself. It was rich, tender, and moist. Each bite seemed to completely melt in my mouth – though most of it ended up on my face and fingers. And every bite was better than the one before.

In my area, it is believed that before eating the birthday cake, if you make a private wish, it will come true if all the candles are **extinguished** in a single breath. He asked me what I had wished. I said nothing. He continued "Did you wish to be my lover?". I replied "How did you know?". Then he answered, "Because I did the same." That's how a cupcake brought me a lover.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Communication and Personality

1. A social butterfly

Meaning: refers to an extroverted person who loves to socialize

Example: A social butterfly is a person who is socially dynamic, networking, charismatic, and personally gregarious.

2. Make small talk

Meaning: to talk in a polite way about unimportant matters such as the weather

Example: I enjoy a serious discussion and I don't like to make small talk or exchange pleasantries with others simply in order to be polite.

3. To hear through the grapevine

Meaning: to hear news from someone who heard that news from someone else, to learn of something informally and unofficially by means of gossip or rumor.

Example: Never believe the gossip that you hear through the grapevine – always try to find the truth from an official source.

Các từ khác

1. **Exceptional** (xuất chúng)

[adj] much greater than usual, especially in skill, intelligence, quality, etc.

Eg: The company has shown exceptional growth over the past two years.

2. **To have a crush on** (cảm nắng ai)

[phrasal verb] to have a secretly burning desire to be with someone who you find very attractive and extremely special.

Eg: My heart broke when I found out my crush was seeing another person.

3. **Charismatic** (lôi cuốn, cuốn hút)

[adj] used to describe a person who has a special power that some people have naturally that makes them able to influence other people and attract their attention and admiration

Eg: Few were able to resist this charismatic and persuasive leader.

4. **Unrequited** (không được đáp lại)

[adj] If the love that you feel for someone is unrequited, it is not felt in the same way by the other person

Eg: It's just another poem on the pain of unrequited love.

5. **Tender** (mềm)

[adj] easy to cut or chew

Eg: The meat was well cooked and tender, which made up for the lack of seasoning.

Part 3

Have you made a cake yourself?

Actually, I'm quite a **clumsy** person so I rarely make things by myself. In addition, there are masses of bakeries nowadays, so a homemade cake is quite unnecessary. Therefore, I have to say that I've never made a cake before, and have probably never baked anything since school days.

Do Vietnamese people have some special food for special festivals? Why is the food so special?

My first thought is about Chung Cake and Trung Thu Cake. Through the foods meticulously prepared that bring families together in **gastronomic** enjoyment – the Tet and Mid Autumn Festival are always reminders of the connection between humans and their natural and spiritual world. What's eaten in those festivals differs from region to region in Vietnam, because of differences in weather and taste preferences. It is the reasons that give those kinds of food their own **unique** significance.

Do people have to pay a lot of money for food on some special occasions?

I would say yes, if they want to enjoy some special dishes at luxury restaurants or those made with the highest quality ingredients to celebrate special events. For example, if you want to prepare a dish with white truffles, you have to know that truffles always **cost the earth** because they are not easy to **cultivate**.

Do you cook at home? Why or why not?

I have been cooking for the whole family since school days. There are tons of reasons why I love cooking at home. Among them, the main reason is that I believe **homemade food** can meet the recommended **intakes** for various nutrients, as part of **a balanced diet**, since I'm in control of the food I cook and the food I consume. Moreover, I suppose family dynamics can greatly improve with more family meal times at home. Therefore, no matter how busy I am, I always try to make my family delicious meals.

Why do rich people like to eat some special kinds of food?

Since rich people can afford very costly foods, I find no reasons why they don't opt for the best ingredients to ensure what they are eating is beneficial for their health and to avoid **food poisoning** completely. It's also a **status** thing - some rich people eat special dishes at fine dining restaurants to **show off** their wealth.

Do you think food is much better than before? Why?

In my opinion, it isn't. Although now a wide range of spices is available, we have fridges, and a choice of cooking and prep techniques, foods in the past were made with fresher ingredients than these days. For example, vegetables straight from the garden are almost always more flavorful, while today we often buy our fruit and vegetables from **food retailers**, so that what we eat is no longer fresh, having travelled many **food miles**. Unfortunately, too, much of our food today is full of **artificial coloring and flavoring**.

Do you think it is important to have family meals? Why?

Yes of course, apart from the most well-known benefit, which is to ensure everyone has food in their stomachs, sharing meals does more than feed each person physically; it also feeds them emotionally and draws them together as a **close-knit family**. Family meals allow conversations to take place. Simply being together and chatting about the day can be enough to help you stay connected with other family members. This time spent having meals together is important in **the formative years** of children

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Food

1. **Homemade food**

Meaning: a stomach illness as a result of eating food containing harmful bacteria

Example: In order to prevent cases of food poisoning, local authorities must regularly inspect places in which food is prepared or sold to the public.

2. **A balanced diet**

Meaning: a diet with the correct types and amounts of food

Example: **A balanced diet** must include lots of fresh fruit and vegetables.

3. **Food poisoning**

Meaning: food which is prepared at home using individual ingredients

Example: In developed countries, the young generation must rediscover the art of preparing home-made food, as part of a healthy lifestyle.

4. **Food retailers**

Meaning: businesses which sell food to the public

Example: My neighborhood has many **food retailers**, including supermarkets and small shops.

5. **Artificial coloring and flavoring**

Meaning: any colours or flavours added to food, in order to make it look more attractive or to enhance the flavour.

Example: Consumers today expect food to look attractive and to have a distinctive taste, so **artificial colouring and flavouring** is often used in the food production process.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Family and children

1. A close-knit family

Meaning: a family having strong relationships with each other, helping with problems and enjoying a lot of time together

Example: Children who come from a **close-knit family** generally perform well at school and enjoy a happy childhood.

2. Formative years

Meaning: A period of a person's life, usually childhood, that has a big influence on the person they become later in life

Example: UNICEF states that the early childhood years from birth through age 8 are **formative years** in terms of intelligence, personality and social behavior.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Environment

1. Food miles

Meaning: Distance food has to travel between where it is grown or made and where it is consumed

Example: We can all reduce our carbon footprint by flying less, and reduce our **food miles** by buying local produce.

Các từ khác

1. Clumsy

[adj] A clumsy person often has accidents because they do not behave in a careful, controlled way

Eg: He's very **clumsy**, always breaking things or falling over the cat.

2. Gastronomic

[adj] relating to the preparation and consumption of good food

Eg: This dish is a **gastronomic** delight.

3. Unique

[adj] very special or unusual, often the only one in existence

Eg: The stone sculptures of the Temple of Literature are **unique**, and many tourists come to see them.

4. Cost the earth

[idiom] extremely expensive

Eg: She said she had no money but she still bought a dress that **costs the earth**.

5. Cultivate

[verb] to prepare land and grow crops on it, or to grow a particular crop

Eg: Most of the land there is too poor to **cultivate**.

6. Intake

[noun] the amount of a particular substance that is eaten or drunk during a particular time

Eg: It says on the packet that four slices of this bread contains one half of your recommended daily **intake** of fibre.

7. Status

[noun] high social position

Eg: Her important new job has raised her social **status**, and she now ignores her old friends.

8. Show off

[phrasal verb] to try to impress other people

Eg: He bought a really expensive new car to **show off** in front of all the neighbors.

11. Describe a place where you can relax (not home)

You should say:

where it was

what you can do there

and explain why it is relaxing to be there

Today I would like to talk about the one and only public library in my hometown, which used to be my weekend **hideaway** during childhood. Located in the city centre, the two-storey building has made itself a welcome contrast to **concrete jungles**. In terms of its exterior decoration, library visitors would feel comfortable at the sight of its rustic simplicity with reddish-brown bricks and mortar. Once inside, people can be awestruck by its **state-of-the-art** facilities. The bottom half provides computers with free Internet access and E-books if people prefer to conduct further online research. The top half is occupied by stacks of books, newspapers, periodicals and other reading materials where visitors can **dig deep into** every field. At the weekend, I prefer to be **engrossed in** classic novels and develop my **literary appreciation**. As I grew up, I switched my focus to various genres to **broaden my horizons**. Personally speaking, the highlight of the library was its unique tranquility which was really thought-provoking to readers. However, as it is the sole shelter for bookworms in the city, its frequent state of overcrowding allows little room to enjoy it at the weekend.

Vocabulary

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Reading:

broaden one's literary horizons [v] (mở mang hiểu biết văn học): to widen the limit of your desires, knowledge, or interests by reading widely

Eg: Schools should broaden the literary horizons of pupils by encouraging them to read in class and at home.

to dig deep (into something) [v] (đào sâu tìm hiểu về cái gì): to search thoroughly for information

Eg: : Computer technology has enabled authorities to dig deep into all kinds of personal records relating to ordinary citizens.

to be engrossed in sth [v] (mê mải vào cái gì): to be completely focused on something

Eg: A good work-life balance is important, because if people are too engrossed in their work their family life may suffer.

literary appreciation [n] (cảm thụ văn học): pleasure that you have when you recognize and enjoy the qualities of a good piece of writing

Eg: Although a literary genius like Shakespeare is rare, it is important for governments to subsidise creative writing classes for all ages.

Các từ khác:

hideaway [n] (nơi ẩn nấp bình yên): a place where you can go to hide or to be alone

Eg: He escaped to his hideaway in the country at weekends.

concrete jungle [n] (tổ hợp nhà cao tầng): a way of describing a city or an area that is unpleasant because it has many large modern buildings and no trees or parks

bricks and mortar [n] (những tòa nhà): buildings, when you are thinking of them in connection with how much they cost to build or how much they are worth; housing, when it is considered as an investment.

Eg: Bricks and mortar are a sound investment.

awestruck [adj] (bất ngờ): feeling very impressed by something

Eg: People were awestruck by the pictures the satellite sent back to Earth.

state-of-the-art [adj] (hiện đại): using the most modern or advanced techniques or methods; as good as they can be at the present time

Eg: The Physics Department has state-of-the-art facilities; what with the computer and projector.

tranquility [n] (sự bình yên): the state of being quiet and peaceful

Eg: The tranquility of the country brings peace of mind to us.

thought-provoking [adj] (đáng suy ngẫm, kích thích tư duy): making people think seriously about a particular subject or issue.

Eg: Romeo and Juliet is a brilliant and thought-provoking play.

Part 3

(tham khảo các câu hỏi của chủ đề book)

12. Describe a painting or work of art that you have seen.

You should say:

when you saw this work of art

where you saw it

what it looked like

and explain your impression of it.

My uncle is an art collector and a real **connoisseur of** arts so last year I had a once in a lifetime chance to follow him to a **private viewing** of a famous Vietnamese **Realism** artist's exhibition.

Among the collection was an oil painting called "Father and daughter" that has left a profounding impression on me until now.

The exhibition was in the Old Quarter and offered a heart-warming **portrayal of** family relationships during the Vietnam Subsidy period. As I walked in full of curiosity, the first painting that caught my attention was hung right in the centre of the room. It portrayed a poor father fetching some meat to his little daughter's rice bowl while he has barely anything for himself. I could see how hard life was back then through his tired look, bony fingers and their old, torn clothes. The painting was coated in plain, dark colors but the touching fatherhood it conveyed shone brightly. It immediately touched my emotions because my father has also sacrificed a lot to give me a fulfilling childhood. I believe that to ordinary **art viewers**, sometimes a **valuable work of art** isn't judged by its price, techniques or colors, but by the emotional experience it gives to them.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Art:

to be a connoisseur of sth [expression] (người am hiểu cái gì đó): an expert on matters involving the judgment of beauty, quality or skill in art or music

Eg: In order to enjoy beautiful paintings, it is not necessary to be a connoisseur of works of art.

private viewing [n] (đi xem trước triển lãm): an occasion when a few people are invited to look at an exhibition of paintings before it is open to the public.

Eg: Paintings are sometimes considered as a form of investment, and art dealers arrange private viewings for art collectors to purchase works of value.

the portrayal of something/somebody [n] (miêu tả chân dung/ khắc họa chân dung ai đó): the act of showing or describing something/somebody in a book, painting, play or film.

Eg: In the past, the portrayal of women in art was often as possessions, owned by rich men.

a work of art/a work of music/a work of literature [n] (một tác phẩm hội họa/ âm nhạc/ văn học): a painting, sculpture, book, play, piece of music etc

Eg: Shakespeare's plays are considered as some of the greatest works of literature in the English language.

Các từ khác:

art viewers [n] (người thưởng thức nghệ thuật): people who come to admire works of art.

Realism [n] (Chủ nghĩa hiện thực): a style of painting and sculpture developed in about the mid-19th century in which figures and scenes are depicted as they are experienced or might be experienced in everyday life.

13. Describe a piece of clothes that is your favorite

You should say

what it is and when you bought it

where you bought it from

why you decided to buy it

and explain why it is your favorite.

I'm going to talk about one of my T-shirts which is actually a **hand-me-down** from my sister. To be honest, I got fed up with my sister's hand-me-downs but this one is an exception.

My sister is a **shopaholic** so she purchases fashion items a lot of the time. You can never imagine how much space her clothes take up and how wrinkled they get. So my mother often tells me to wear them instead of buying new ones **to make cutbacks** on my pocket money. Normally, I will refuse immediately but when I saw this one, I changed my mind.

It is a **gender-neutral** T-shirt with a **minimalist** design – it has white color and only a small slogan on it saying “I’m not trying to be different...it just comes naturally”. With that simple design, I find it extremely easy to **mix and match** this T-shirt with other items. I can wear it when going out with my friends or going to university. A lot of my friends are into this T-shirt and they praise me that I have a sense of style to wear this one.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Communication and Personality

1. A shopaholic

Meaning: a person who spends too much time working/too much time shopping

Example: Although I take my studies seriously, I would not describe myself as a workaholic, because I have other interests too.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Business

1. To make cutbacks

Meaning: to decrease, to reduce

Example: The company made cutbacks at their stores in New York and many employees were dismissed

Các từ khác

1. gender-neutral (trung tính)

[adj] not especially to men or to women

Eg: Emma Watson has won the first gender-neutral prize at the MTV TV & Movie Awards.

2. Minimalist (người theo chủ nghĩa tối giản)

[adj] belonging or relating to a style in art, design, and theatre that uses the smallest range of materials and colours possible, and only very simple shapes or forms

Eg: The set for the ballet is minimalist - white walls and a chair.

3. to mix and match (kết hợp)

[idiom] to assemble a limited number of items, usually clothing, in a number of different ways

Eg: Gary always bought black, blue, and gray trousers and shirts so he could mix and match without too many bad combinations.

Part 3

Do all people enjoy shopping for clothes?

I would say no. People have different priorities; some people like to go shopping, other people prefer traveling. Take me for example. I just go shopping for clothing that is appropriate for the weather when I have to. Otherwise, I like to occupy my time with other things that interest me, like reading a book, painting, creating house designs, or decorating.

Why do women like to do shopping?

It's one of the oldest **stereotypes**, but it's also probably one of the most accurate: women love to shop for a number of reasons. First, girls like keeping themselves up to date with the latest trends in the fashion world and to be the center of attraction, so they always need to go shopping to get new clothes and keep up with the latest fashions. Another reason is that shopping **lifts one's mood**, but here I don't share the **sexist attitude** that there are **inherent differences** between men and women when it comes to spending money on consumer goods. Retailers increasingly target both genders when **promoting their products** and it seems that everyone now enjoys shopping.

Why do some women buy cheaper clothes and expensive ones at the same time?

The main reason for this may be the fact that some women do not care about **designer labels**, because they are only into the designs and materials of the clothes they choose. Clothing can be attractive at any price. Some people, however, are **insecure** about themselves and so try to make themselves feel better by purchasing super expensive designer clothing. Other people have an eye for what is flattering and know that what will look good on them can be bought at a sale price or at a discount store, or even at a **thrift shop**.

Do you think it is good for people buy expensive clothes? Why?

Expensive clothes are worth the price provided that the quality **correlates** with the cost. This is not always the case - sometimes the price seems to be justified only by the brand name and/or style.

However, regardless of whether or not there is a fancy label attached to an article of clothing, if the

material is top quality and it fits your body type well, then I would say there's nothing wrong with paying top dollar for it.

Why do some people like shopping with friends?

Some people like **browsing** and **window shopping** with friends or family. It's fun to pick out clothes or shoes that they might not otherwise notice, or play with make-up colours and just have fun while doing it. Sometimes, if they are shopping for clothes they like having a second opinion, especially if they are **in two minds** about a particular item.

Why do people shop for clothes online?

There are a lot of reasons why people **opt for** shopping for clothes online. For example, one can get several brands and products from different sellers at one place and compare prices. You can shop from retailers in other parts of the country or even the world without being limited by geographic area...Another reason maybe to avoid **buying goods impulsively**. Many times when we go out shopping we end up buying things which we do not really need, because of the sales skills of the store assistants. Shopping online helps us to avoid these things since we have time to **have second thoughts**.

What risks do you run when shopping online? Why?

When it comes to online shopping, there are several benefits, yet there are things all online shoppers should beware of. At its simplest, the sizes they provide might be totally different from the ones you have, clothes in the pictures might not actually look exactly the same as they do when they arrive, for example they may have stains or other defects.

Do you like jewelry?

Yes, I do, because beautiful jewelry is **a work of craftsmanship**, not just a fashion item. Its **aesthetic qualities** do not depend on the price. Whether I need something as simple as a bracelet for my niece's birthday, or as elaborate as a necklace for a very special occasion, there's a piece of jewelry that I can buy or wear. Jewelry comes in such a wide variety of styles, colors, that there's always something that meets my needs and that I can afford at the time.

Do you wear many jewels?

No, I just choose the one that is the best match with what I'm wearing. I use jewelry to complement even the most complex of outfits. But I don't **go over the top**. Too much jewelry **distracts** attention from my clothes and makes my appearance **cluttered**, so that pieces lose their individuality, hidden away in an assemblage of jewelry.

Why do some people wear a piece of jewelry for a long time?

The common reason is that each item of jewelry has its own meaning. For example, engagement rings, wedding bands, and anniversary bands are all **mementos** of life's most wonderful moments. Jewelry that you wear regularly is there for every moment of your life, and you can start to even feel **incomplete** without it. Each time you wear it, a piece of jewelry becomes less of an accessory and more of a part of the wearer.

Vocabulary

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Gender

1. sexist attitude

Meaning: the belief that women are in some way inferior to men in the way they think or behave

Example: Traditional **sexist attitudes** in the workplace are disappearing and women are now given equal opportunities at work.

2. inherent differences

Meaning: differences that exist as a natural or basic part of something

Example: Since there are no **inherent differences** between the intellectual abilities of both genders, there is no reason why more women should not be encouraged to study maths or engineering.

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Media and Advertising

1. to promote their products

Meaning: to make products more popular by advertising them

Example: Cosmetics companies are now increasingly **promoting their products** to male consumers, using famous sports celebrities.

2. to buy goods impulsively

Meaning: to buy goods suddenly and without thinking if you really need or want them

Example: Stores display their goods in an attractive way, hoping the customers will **buy goods impulsively**.

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Traditional vs Modern

1. works of craftsmanship

Meaning: objects made by people who are very skilled with their hands

Example: The museums of every city are full of beautiful hand-made **works of craftsmanship** made by skilled workers in past centuries.

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Art

1. **aesthetic qualities**

Meaning: the qualities of beauty which something possesses

Example: One advantage of studying the arts is that students learn to appreciate the **aesthetic qualities** of paintings, literature and music.

Từ vựng khác:

1. **lift one's mood**

[verb] If something lifts your spirits or your mood, or if they lift, you start feeling more cheerful.

Eg: Shopping is sometimes called 'retail therapy', because it **lifts one's mood** when we buy something that we want.

2. **designer label**

[noun] a famous company that makes expensive clothes, bags etc and that is a well-known brand

Eg: Some people are obsessed with **designer labels** like Nike or Gucci.

3. **insecure**

[adj] Insecure people have little confidence and are uncertain about their own abilities or if other people really like them:

Eg: I wonder what it was about her upbringing that made her so **insecure**.

4. **thrift shop**

[noun] a store selling secondhand clothes and other household goods, typically to raise funds for a charitable institution.

Eg: I sometimes like to shop in **thrift shops** to pick up unusual things and save money.

5. **correlate**

[verb] if two or more facts, numbers, etc. correlate or are correlated, there is a relationship between them:

Eg: Stress levels and heart disease are strongly **correlated**.

6. **opt for**

[phrasal verb] to choose something, especially over some other option

Eg: I **opted for** a king-sized bed when I made my hotel reservation.

7. **browse**

[verb] look at a lot of things in a store, without looking for one particular thing

Eg: I **browsed** the shelves of the bookshop for something interesting to read on the train.

8. window shopping

[noun phrase] looking at goods in the windows of shops without intending to buy anything

Eg: I went **window shopping** on Sunday, just to pass the time although I had no money to spend.

9. have second thoughts

[expression] to begin to have doubts about a decision you have made

Eg: The President **is having second thoughts** about the new health care policy.

10. go over the top

[expression] to do something in an exaggerated or excessive way

Eg: After he scored a goal, Messi **went over the top** with his celebrations, so the referee showed him a yellow card.

11. distract

[verb] to make someone stop giving their attention to something:

Eg: He tried to **distract** attention from his own illegal activities.

12. cluttered

[adj] covered with a lot of things, in a way that is untidy

Eg: The kitchen looked **cluttered** after the party had finished and the guests had left.

13. memento

[noun] a thing that you keep or give to somebody to remind them of a person or place

Eg: I keep his old watch as a **memento** of the happy times that I spent with my father.

13. incomplete

[adj] not having some parts, or not finished:

Eg: The decision was based on **incomplete** or inaccurate information.

14. Describe a couple you know who have a happy marriage

You should say:

who they are

how you know them

how long they have been married

and explain why you think they are happily married.

Well, the first married couple that came to mind when I saw this topic were my grandparents, because as far as I know, they are a very **contented** and **devoted** couple, so I'd like to tell you a little bit about them.

They were married by the arrangement of their parents as soon as they **entered adult life**, just like most Vietnamese couples did at that time. Surprisingly, they both **fell in love at first sight** and decided to **tie the knot** 2 weeks after their first encounter.

The one thing I find most admirable in their relationship is that though my parents had to live apart from each other shortly after their marriage due to war, they still managed to **maintain a healthy relationship**. While my grandfather left home for almost 10 years to fight in the South, his wife faithfully waited for him and fulfilled her role as **a working mother** to 2 children. When the war had finally come to an end, my grandparents had a tearful reunion and they **lived in harmony** ever after. Until this day, they show their deepest care for each other in the smallest action. For instance, my grandpa would always get up early and make tea for my grandmother, who is not **a morning person**, so that her day could start more pleasantly. Most importantly, they still hold hands when walking side by side, as **endearingly** as they did decades ago.

As more and more couples are **dissolving their marriage**, I think that we can learn a great deal about how pure love can survive hardships and **socio-economic changes** through the marriage of my grandparents.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Communication and Personality:

1.to live in harmony with one another

Meaning: to live with others in a way which avoids conflict or disagreement

Example: The students who share the house are all good friends and they are able to **live in harmony with one another**.

Dịch đại ý

To live in harmony with one another: sống hòa hợp với người khác

Nghĩa: sống với những người khác một cách hòa hợp, tránh gây mâu thuẫn với nhau

Ví dụ: Sinh viên sống cùng một nhà là những người bạn thân và họ có thể sống hòa hợp với nhau.

2. working mothers

Meaning: women who have a job and also have to take care of their children

Example: As more and more women have entered the workforce, **working mothers** have to balance the demands of home and work.

Dịch đại ý

Working mothers: các bà mẹ đi làm

Nghĩa: phụ nữ có công ăn việc làm đồng thời phải chăm sóc con họ

Ví dụ: Khi ngày càng nhiều phụ nữ tham gia vào lực lượng lao động, các bà mẹ đi làm phải cân bằng giữa những yêu cầu của công việc và gia đình.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Family and Children:

1. to enter adult life

Meaning: the stage when adolescents are just old enough to be legally independent of their parents

Example: Parents who have devoted time and thought to raising and educating their children have given them a good preparation **to enter adult life**.

Dịch đại ý

To enter adult life: bước vào thế giới người lớn

Nghĩa: giai đoạn khi thanh niên đủ tuổi được tự lập

Ví dụ: Những cha mẹ dành nhiều thời gian và suy nghĩ để nuôi dạy con cái đã chuẩn bị cho họ thật tốt để bước vào thế giới người lớn.

2. to dissolve a marriage

Meaning: to officially end a marriage

Example: Couples are sometimes unwilling **to dissolve their marriage** and they stay together for the sake of the children.

Dịch đại ý

To dissolve a marriage: kết thúc hôn nhân

Nghĩa: chính thức chấm dứt một cuộc kết hôn

Ví dụ: Đôi khi các cặp vợ chồng không sẵn sàng chấm dứt hôn nhân và họ lại ở cùng nhau vì lí do con cái.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Society:

1. socio-economic changes

Meaning: changes relating to the society and economy of a country

Example: Mass migration to cities is a result of **socio-economic changes**, especially the growth of industry.

Các từ khác

1. contented (adj): feeling or showing happiness and satisfaction (hài lòng)

Example: Having finally retired from work, he was a very **contented** man.

2. devoted (adj): having great love for and loyalty to somebody (hết lòng, tận tụy)

Example: They were **devoted** to their children.

3. to fall in love at first sight: to be in love immediately after you meet someone (yêu từ cái nhìn đầu tiên)

Example: He **fell in love at first sight** with the girl who lived next door.

4. to tie the knot: to get married. (kết hôn)

Example: After 4 years of dating, they decided **to tie the knot**.

5. a healthy relationship: a positive relationship. (một mối quan hệ tốt đẹp)

Example: One secret of **a healthy relationship** is to always tell the truth.

6. a morning person: Some one who is particularly active in the morning (con người của buổi sáng)

Example: Since she is **a morning person**, she is always full of energy when she wakes up.

7. endearingly (adv): In a manner that inspires affection (một cách yêu chiều)

Example: She endearingly called her son “my little treasure”.

Part 3:

If you are 35 years old and still single, are you still waiting for your true love? Why?

Sometimes people tell me that I am **set in my ways** and even I myself have felt **behind the times** in my outlook, but I still cannot change my mind. I suppose a marriage without true love makes no sense, therefore, I will still wait for my true love despite the fact that I am 35 or 45 years old. In my opinion, the main reasons for getting married are fellowship, **companionship**, and **mutual** help and

comfort, not just to start a home and have children. It has to be done with the one you love, otherwise it means nothing.

Who pays for the wedding costs? The man or woman or both? Why?

Traditionally, in my country, the groom and his family **foot** the majority of **the bill**. Of course, this rarely applies these days since we are living in **an egalitarian society**. Rather than burden one family with practically the entire cost of a wedding, it is common practice these days for both the bride and groom to share expenses.

What do you think is the best age to marry?

In the past, people often used to marry at a very young age. But along with **socio-economic changes**, thoughts about families and marriage have changed, too. In the modern world, the best time to marry is when you're capable of having a healthy relationship and bringing up children well. Waiting a long time does make it more difficult both for men and for women to have children, and increases the odds of birth defects. So I suppose the optimum age is somewhere around the late 20s.

Do you think that a Vietnamese wedding wastes lots of money?

Yes, I have to agree with that view. The traditional Vietnamese wedding is a significant day not only for the couple involved but also for both families. Thus, it usually includes quite a few formal **ritual** observances. And some of them involve unnecessary expenses. For example, on the wedding day, the groom's family and relatives go to the bride's house, bringing a lot of gifts wrapped in red paper. Those gifts often cost a lot of money, but they are actually just for show.

Why spend a lot of money on the wedding?

The main reason I would say is because it follows a long tradition. Since everyone does the same thing, people often think that have **to follow suit**. And it's also an occasion to show off a family's wealth. And another reason is, I know for a fact that a lot of girls grow up imagining their perfect wedding. They do not hesitate to spend untold money holding a luxurious wedding, since they think of it as the most important event in their life.

In a traditional Vietnamese family, what do men do in the family? And what about women? Why?

In traditional Vietnamese families, roles are **rigid**. The man of the house is primarily responsible for the family's economic well-being and takes pride in his role as provider. The woman of the house looks after her in-laws as well as her parents, husband and children. In rural areas, women

also do a lot of agricultural work. The reason is that Vietnamese people traditionally consider men as the **breadwinners** while women are thought of as the weaker sex, who are 'smaller, weaker, less intelligent' and are not capable of making money.

Do you think men should take care of babies? Why?

Well, I think men should give a hand to their wife in taking care of babies, to make it a bit less of a burden to women. In addition, this really strengthens **family bonds**. More importantly, a father's care and love contributes as much to a child's intellectual and emotional development as mom's love does. The love and care of mom and dad have an equal impact on their children's well-being, happiness and, in later years, academic success.

Do you think men should do housework? Why?

Actually, I think men should share some of the **domestic responsibilities** because, sometimes, it's absolutely necessary to help out. Nowadays, a **dual-income family** is becoming much more common. This means that women have to work and take care of the house at the same time. If those **working mothers** do not receive help from their husband, it will be extremely hard for them.

At a traditional wedding in Vietnam, what kind of dress does the bride wear?

There are 2 main kinds of dress Vietnamese brides often wear: Ao dai or a western wedding dress. After the Nguyễn Dynasty, women began to wear **elaborate** Áo dài for their weddings. This tradition has been **passed on** through generations and continues to **thrive** these days. On the other hand, some Vietnamese brides nowadays choose western wedding dresses, which are usually designed in white color and are strapless or sleeveless.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Communication and Personality

1. set in my ways

Meaning: A person who is set in his or her ways is stubborn and committed to their current way of doing things. They aren't open to changing, even if the change would be an improvement

Example: As people get older, they often become **set in their ways** and are reluctant to try anything new.

2. behind the times

Meaning: refers to a person who is old-fashioned and has not adopted certain modern customs, beliefs, or behaviors

Example: He was angry when they said that his accounting methods were **behind the times** because he did not use computer software.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Society

1. an egalitarian society

Meaning: a society in which everyone has the same rights and opportunities

Example: I believe that crime would be reduced if we lived in a more **egalitarian society**.

2. socio-economic changes

Meaning: changes relating to the society and economy of a country

Example: Mass migration to cities is a result of **socio-economic changes** that include the industrialisation of agriculture.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Family and Children

1. dual-income family

Meaning: a family where both the father and mother work

Example: Changes in society have resulted in the **dual-income family** becoming the most common family type.

2. working mother

Meaning: women who have a job and also have to take care of their children

Example: As more and more women have entered the workforce, **working mothers** have to balance the demands of home and work.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Gender

1. the breadwinner

Meaning: the member of a family who earns the money that the family needs

Example: Men are often expected to be **the breadwinner** in a family.

2. domestic responsibilities

Meaning: household chores and other work relating to the home

Example: Traditionally, wives have assumed most **domestic responsibilities**, while husbands have taken the responsibility of providing income for the family.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Traditional vs Modern

1. to pass on

Meaning: to give someone something that someone else has given you

Example: Traditional skills that **are passed on** to children by parents and elders need to be preserved as the most valuable treasures in each community.

Các từ khác

1. companionship

[noun] the enjoyment of spending time with other people:

Eg: I lived on my own for a while but I missed the **companionship** of others.

2. mutual

[adj] (of two or more people or groups) feeling the same emotion, or doing the same thing to or for each other:

Eg: There was a partnership based on **mutual** respect, trust and understanding.

3. to foot the bill

[verb] to pay an amount of money:

Eg: His parents **footed the bill** for his college tuition.

4. ritual

[noun] a set of fixed actions and sometimes words performed regularly, especially as part of a ceremony:

Eg: Coffee and the newspaper are part of my morning **ritual**.

5. to follow suit

Meaning: to act or behave in a way that somebody else has just done:

Example: After my friend got a job in McDonald's, I decided **to follow suit** and apply.

5. rigid

[adj] stiff or fixed; not able to be bent or moved:

Eg: The rules of the company are very **rigid** – no smoking in the workplace.

6. family bond

[noun] a close connection joining people in a family:

Eg: In societies with strong **family bonds**, people tend to live longer.

7. elaborate

[adj] containing a lot of careful detail or many detailed parts:

Eg: They're making the most **elaborate** preparations for the wedding.

8. thrive

[verb] to grow, develop, or be successful:

Eg: His business **thrived** in the years before the war.

15. Describe an invention that has changed people's life

You should say:

What the invention is

Who invented it

What changes it brought

It is pretty difficult to pick out one particular invention among millions of **advances in technology** that have had a profound impact on human life. Personally, I believe the computer is one of the most vital and **impactful** inventions of mankind.

Although there is a lot of debate about who was responsible for their invention, computers have certainly become an **irreplaceable** part of our everyday life. Just think of the time when nothing like a computer existed, people relied on **conventional skills to** carry out their tasks manually and it took forever to complete one. However, ever since the introduction of the computer, human life has undergone **radical** changes. Almost every single task, from writing a letter to operating an entire production process, can now be easily completed using computers. And computers can offer users help with not only their work and study, but their entertainment activities as well. For example, on a day with bad weather and you just don't want to go out, you can stay at home and read novels, comics, watch movies, listen to music or play games – all on your personal computer.

Another important impact of computers is in the workplace, where many of the old ways of working **have been made obsolete**. Almost all factories and businesses are **computerized**, and it is **an inevitable consequence** that most employees should be **computer-literate** in order to successfully fulfill their tasks or **to move up the career ladder**. You can look at the description of jobs for **white-collar workers** and most of the time you will see the requirement to be able to work with computers.

For all the profound influences it has brought about to human life, I believe it is not exaggerating at all to say that the computer - a **technological breakthrough** - has **changed our lives for the better**.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Technology:

1. to be computer-literate

Meaning: able to use computers well

Example: In today's competitive job market, it is essential to be **computer-literate**.

Dịch đại ý

To be computer-literate: sử dụng tốt máy tính

Nghĩa: biết sử dụng thành thạo máy tính

Ví dụ: Trong thị trường lao động đầy cạnh tranh hiện nay, sử dụng thành thạo máy tính là rất cần thiết.

2. to computerize something

Meaning: to provide a computer or computers to do the work

Example: The factory has been fully **computerized**, enabling it to produce more efficiently.

Dịch đại ý

To computerize something: máy tính hóa/ đưa máy tính vào làm việc

Nghĩa: cung cấp máy tính hoặc để máy tính thực hiện nhiệm vụ

Ví dụ: Nhà máy đó đã được máy tính hóa hoàn toàn, cho phép việc sản xuất hiệu quả hơn.

3. advances in technology

Meaning: the improvement or development in technology

Example: Recent **advances in medical technology** are making a great contribution to the search for a cure for Aids.

Dịch đại ý

Advances in technology: tiến bộ công nghệ

Nghĩa: sự tiến bộ hay phát triển của công nghệ

Ví dụ; Những tiến bộ gần đây trong công nghệ y học đã đóng góp rất lớn cho việc tìm phương pháp chữa bệnh AIDS.

4. a technological breakthrough

Meaning: an important new discovery in technology

Example: The development of the micro-chip was a **technological breakthrough** which transformed the way in which people communicate.

Dịch đại ý

A technological breakthrough: một đột phá về công nghệ

Nghĩa: một phát hiện mới quan trọng về công nghệ

Ví dụ: Sự phát triển của micro-chip là một đột phá trong công nghệ, đã thay đổi cách mọi người giao tiếp.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Work:

1. to move up the career ladder

Meaning: to move through a series of stages by which you can make progress in your career

Example: She has **moved up the career ladder**, from being a secretary to a director of the company.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Traditional vs Modern

1. to make something obsolete

Meaning: not in use any more, having been replaced by something newer

Example: The introduction of the computer **has made the typewriter obsolete**.

2. **an inevitable consequence**

Meaning: certain to happen and impossible to avoid or prevent

Example: The loss of traditional customs is **an inevitable consequence** of globalization.

Các từ khác:

1. **Impactful [adj]** (having a powerful effect on a situation or person): ảnh hưởng lớn

E.g. The speech he made about information technology was very **impactful**.

2. **Irreplaceable [adj]** (too good, rare etc to be able to be replaced if lost or damaged): không thể thay thế

E.g. The stolen works of art are **irreplaceable**.

3. **Change for the better [expression]** (to improve): tiến bộ, thay đổi theo hướng tốt hơn

E.g. Her attitude has definitely **changed for the better** since she started this new job.

4. **Radical [adj]** (thorough; complete): triệt để

E.g. He has made **radical** changes to his business plans after joining that networking event.

5. **White-collar [adj]** ((of workers, jobs etc.) not manual; (working) in an office etc.): nhân viên hành chính

E.g. She prefers being a **white-collar** worker; she hates to get her hands dirty!

Part 3

1. Is your country changing rapidly?

Actually, **technological breakthroughs** have brought radical changes to Vietnam in the past few decades. At home, **labour-saving appliances** such as washing machines or dishwashers have facilitated household chores. Besides, portable electrical devices namely smart phones, laptops or tablet computers are ubiquitous all over the country. Most of them are even developed by Apple and Samsung, who are **ahead of the game** in the digital market. Obviously, Vietnam is adapting to global **advances in technology** at a breakneck pace.

2. What can a smart phone do these days?

It is beyond a shadow of a doubt that people can derive substantial benefits from smart phones. First and foremost, they offer a wide range of communication tools such as video calls, **text-messaging** and **video conferencing**, rather than the conventional voice calls. Furthermore, if people are desperate for a source of entertainment after brain numbing office hours, smart phones **come in**

handy. They can play video games, go **online shopping** or even carry out **e-commerce** on the spot. In the modern world, besides youngsters, a section of the old generation have become real **silver surfers** as they are so **engrossed in** the cyber world, scrolling down the screen to update the latest news or chatter with friends.

3. Since most people do work on their computer, why do they still need to go to offices?

As a matter of fact, the number of those who are **computer-literate** is increasing, leading to the prevalence of working from home. However, personally speaking, it is essential for them to go to the office. The first reason is about human communication. Long hours spent in a computer-based **working environment** really **discourages real interaction** while in the workplace, colleagues can exchange words and enhance their interpersonal skills. Even, **becoming over-reliant on** computers could trigger a mental illness such as autism if workers **segregate themselves from** the human contact in the long run.

4. Do you think people's work in the future will be heavily affected by technology?

Yes, of course. The boom in technology may bring about both positive and negative impacts on people's work in the future. On the one hand, **robotics technology** will greatly boost **labour productivity** in manufacturing and workers may enjoy a superior **working environment** when the workplace is **computerized** and equipped with **state-of-the-art** facilities. On the other end of the scale, the introduction of new-fangled technological tools could be at the expense of an accelerating rate of unemployment. As the workforce is **superseded** by modern machines, more blue-collar workers will be **dismissed** and, as a result, fall prey to social evils.

5. Compare the pace of technological progress in the past and now.

Compared to technological advances in the past, those of the present are much more rapid. It takes even less than one year for an Iphone version to be introduced and people keep **following suit**, **forking out money** in order not to buy things which are **obsolete**. Whereas in the past, television, for example, took several decades to be invented. To me this is understandable because technology in the olden days was **in its infancy** so it took ages for new inventions to be brought to life, which became the backbone for modern applications to develop in **leaps and bounds**.

Vocabulary

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Technology:

a technological breakthrough [noun] (một đột phá về công nghệ): an important new discovery in technology

Eg: The development of the micro-chip was a technological breakthrough which transformed the way in which people communicate.

advances in technology [expression] (tiến bộ công nghệ): the improvement or development in technology

Eg: Recent advances in medical technology are making a great contribution to the search for a cure for Aids.

video conferencing [noun] (hội thoại thấy hình): to see and discuss with people in different locations using the Internet.

Eg: In the worlds of business and education, video conferencing has enabled people to exchange ideas without travelling across the world.

labour-saving appliances [noun] (thiết bị tiết kiệm sức lao động): machines that reduce the amount of work or effort needed to do something.

Eg: The technological revolution in the home started with the introduction of labour-saving appliances such as washing machines and dishwashers.

e-commerce [noun] (giao dịch thông qua mạng Internet): buying and selling products or services using the internet

Eg: Businesses which rely on e-commerce make huge savings on offices, retail outlets and rents paid to landlords who own high-street properties.

online shopping [noun] (mua sắm trực tuyến): shopping while connected to the internet

Eg: For people who are physically disabled, or even for people who are simply very busy, online shopping is convenient and may also be cheaper.

text-messaging [noun] (gửi tin nhắn văn bản): the act of sending written messages using a mobile/cell phone

Eg: The ability to write using accurate grammar is declining, partly as a result of text-messaging instead of writing letters.

robotics technology [noun] (công nghệ rô bốt): the design, construction and operation of robots

Eg: There are examples of robotics technology everywhere, from space programs to manufacturing.

to be in its infancy [expression] (đang trong thời kì thai nghén): to be in the early development of something

Eg: It is clear that robotics technology is still in its infancy, and it is impossible to imagine the possible future developments

to become over-reliant on [expression] (quá phụ thuộc vào): to need something so that your survival or success depends too much on it

Eg: Businesses have become over-reliant on complicated computer systems, so that if these systems fail the results will be disastrous.

to become obsolete [expression] (trở nên lỗi thời): to be no longer used because something new has been invented

Eg: Technological innovation is now so rapid, that even the latest electronic devices soon become obsolete.

to be computer-literate [expression] (sử dụng thành thạo máy tính): able to use computers well

Eg: In today's competitive job market, it is essential to be computer-literate.

to computerize something [verb] (máy tính hoá): to provide a computer or computers to do the work

Eg: The factory has been fully computerized, enabling it to produce more efficiently.

silver surfer [noun] (người già dùng mạng): an old person who spends a lot of time using the Internet

Eg: Although young people are often more computer-literate than the older generation, nevertheless there are many silver surfers who use the internet all the time.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Reading:

to be engrossed in [expression] (mê mải vào cái gì): to be completely focused on something

Eg: A good work-life balance is important, because if people are too **engrossed in their work** their family life may suffer.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Work:

Labor productivity [noun] (năng suất lao động): the rate at which a worker, a company or a country produces goods, and the amount produced, compared with how much time, work and money is needed to produce them

Eg: Wage rates depend on levels of labor productivity.

Working environment [noun] (môi trường làm việc): the conditions that you work in

Eg: If work is to be enjoyable, then a friendly working environment is essential.

To dismiss somebody (from something) [verb] (sa thải ai): to officially remove somebody from their job

Eg: Employment legislation prevents employers from dismissing an employee without a good reason.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Society:

segregate somebody (from somebody) [verb] (cô lập một ai đó): to separate people of different races, religions or sexes and treat them in a different way.

Eg: Although society no longer tolerates the policy of segregating whites from blacks, many people of different origins live in their own separate communities.

Từ vựng khác:

ahead of the game [expression] (chiếm vị trí dẫn đầu): ahead of one's competitors or peers in the same sphere of activity.

Eg: Coca cola has been ahead of the game in the beverage market for years.

follow suit [expression] (làm theo, a dua): to do the same thing

Eg: When one airline reduces its ticket prices, the rest usually follow suit.
come in handy (trở nên hữu dụng): to be useful.

Eg: I think that this gadget will come in handy in the kitchen.

state-of-the-art [adj] (hiện đại): using the most modern or advanced techniques or methods; as good as it can be at the present time

Eg: The Physics Department has state of the art facilities what with the computer and projector.

new-fangled [adjective] (mới lạ và độc đáo): different from what one is used to; objectionably new.

Eg: I really don't understand these newfangled computergames that my grandchildren play.

leaps and bounds [expression] (nhanh chóng): rapidly; by large movements forward

Eg: The profits of my company are increasing by leaps and bounds.

16. Describe an occasion where everybody smiled.

You should say

when this situation took place

what happened

how you reacted and why you found the situation funny.

Last weekend, my family **had a good laugh** together from what started as a heated argument between my parents. I returned from the gym that afternoon to find my father red in the face and my mother looking sullen. They exchanged **curt** words and didn't even look at each other. **Reading between the lines**, it **came to my knowledge** that my father had got mad because he couldn't find the hamburger he had just bought anywhere.

Since my mother had always been complaining about his liking for **junk food**, he assumed that it was she who had hidden or thrown his hamburger away. He even **held her responsible for** violating his freedom to eat, shouting that he felt suffocated because of her **overprotective** manner. My mother, on the other hand, **resolutely refuted** his accusation and stated that it was unreasonable of him to **throw such a tantrum**. That remark **added fuel to the fire**, with my father **storming out of** the room. However, when he reached the door, he turned and said: "You made me really mad. Now give me some money so that I can go and have a beer with my friend!". After hearing that, I couldn't **keep a straight face**, though he was very serious. He looked at me curiously, yet a few seconds later, **it dawned on** him that he was in such an **ironic** situation.

Like many **dual-income families** in our country, my father gives most of his salary to my mother so she is the cashier of the family. Anyway, once my father realized that he had just asked my mother for his own money when he was fighting with her, he couldn't stop laughing. Soon enough, we three **broke into laughter** till our stomachs ached. In the end, we found out it was Lulu-our dog - who had stolen the hamburger.

Vocabulary

Từ thuộc chủ đề Environment:

1. to hold sbdy accountable for + noun/gerund

Meaning: to consider someone responsible for something; to blame something on someone

Example: Companies which discharge chemical waste from their factories into the sea or into rivers must be **held accountable for** their actions and be fined heavily.

Dịch đại ý

To hold sb accountable for: đổ trách nhiệm cho ai

Nghĩa: coi ai đó có trách nhiệm cho cái gì/ đổ lỗi cho ai về chuyện gì đó

Ví dụ: Các công ty xả rác thải hóa chất từ nhà máy ra biển hoặc sông hồ cần phải chịu trách nhiệm cho hành động của mình và bị phạt nặng.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Family and Children:

1. dual-income family

Meaning: a family where both the father and mother work and earn money

Example: Changes in society have resulted in the **dual-income family** becoming the most common family type.

Dịch đại ý

A dual-income family: gia đình có 2 thu nhập

Nghĩa: gia đình có cả mẹ và cha cùng đi làm có thu nhập

Ví dụ: Những thay đổi trong xã hội dẫn tới việc gia đình có 2 thu nhập đang là loại gia đình phổ biến nhất.

2.to be overprotective

Meaning: to be too worried about the safety of someone, especially a child

Example: If parents **are overprotective** of their children, there is a danger that the children will become too dependent on their parents.

Dịch đại ý

To be overprotective: bảo vệ quá mức

Nghĩa: lo lắng thái quá về sự an toàn của ai đó, đặc biệt là của một đứa trẻ

Ví dụ: Nếu cha mẹ bảo vệ con cái quá mức, con cái sẽ trở nên quá phụ thuộc vào cha mẹ mình.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Reading

1.to come to somebody's knowledge

Meaning: to become known by somebody

Example: If it **comes to the knowledge of your manager** that you are honest and hard-working, your promotion prospects will be improved.

Dịch đại ý

To come to somebody's knowledge: được ai đó biết tới

Nghĩa: được ai đó biết tới

Ví dụ: Nếu được nhà quản lý biết tới là một người chân thành và chăm chỉ thì khả năng được thăng tiến của bạn sẽ tốt hơn.

2.to read between the lines

Meaning: to look for a meaning that is not openly stated

Example: **Reading between the lines**, the reports of recent international conferences are not optimistic about achieving agreement on climate change.

Dịch đại ý

To read between the lines: hiểu rõ những gì đọc được/ nghe thấy/ biết đến

Nghĩa: hiểu được ý nghĩa dù không biết chi tiết

Ví dụ: Hiểu rõ những gì đang xảy ra, các báo cáo ở những hội thảo gần đây không lạc quan lắm về việc đạt được thỏa thuận về thay đổi khí hậu.

Từ thuộc chủ đề Food and Diet:

junk food

Meaning: food that is quick and easy to prepare and eat, but that is thought to be bad for your health

Example: The consumption of too much **junk food** is a major factor in the increase of childhood obesity.

Dịch đại ý

Junk food: đồ ăn vặt

Nghĩa: Đồ ăn chế biến và ăn nhanh nhưng thường không tốt cho sức khỏe

Ví dụ: Việc tiêu thụ quá nhiều đồ ăn vặt là một trong những lí do chính dẫn đến gia tăng bệnh béo phì ở trẻ em

Từ thuộc chủ đề Communication and Personality:

to throw a tantrum

Meaning: to become very angry and unreasonable

Example: When you are a grown-up, you don't **throw a tantrum** if something offends you, you discuss it.

Dịch đại ý

To throw a tantrum: tức giận vô cớ

Nghĩa: cực kỳ tức giận 1 cách vô lý

Ví dụ: Khi đã là một người trưởng thành, bạn sẽ không còn tức giận vô cớ nếu có gì không vừa lòng, mà sẽ thẳng thắn nói về điều đó.

Các từ khác

1.have a good laugh: to have fun. (cười vui vẻ)

Example: I love spending time with my little sister, we always **have a good laugh**.

2.curt (adj): rudely brief (cộc lốc)

Example: his reply was curt, so it was not surprising that his boss was offended.

3.resolutely refute: to deny something strongly (phản đối một cách mạnh mẽ)

Example: he **resolutely refuted** the idea that men and women should have equal pay for doing the same job.

4.add fuel to the fire: make an already bad situation worse (đổ dầu vào lửa)

Example: I'm even afraid to respond to this, for fear that it **adds fuel to the fire**.

5.storm out of sth: to burst out of some place or situation angrily. (đi ra ngoài một cách giận giữ)

Example: Carol **stormed out of** the office in a rage.

6.keep a straight face: to avoid showing any emotion, esp. amusement (giữ nghiêm túc)

Example: I thought it would be funny to tell him he had white suncream on his nose, but it was hard to **keep a straight face** when I was talking to him.

7.it dawn(s/ed) on sb that: to become apparent to someone, to realise something (ai đó nhận ra rằng)

Example: On the way home, **it dawned on me that** I had never returned your call, so when I got home I called immediately.

8. ironic(adj) happening in an unexpected way (mỉa mai)

Example: it was **ironic** that now everybody had plenty of money for food, they couldn't obtain it because everything was rationed.

9.break into laughter: to start laughing suddenly (phá lên cười)

Example: When my dog followed me into the classroom one day, the whole class **broke into laughter**.

PART 3

16.1. How would you define happiness?

I believe different people have different ways of defining happiness, but for me, happiness means living this life knowing that I am loved by the people around me and no matter what I decide to do with my life, I am sure that those people would always be by my side, to not only support me but also to **guide me through** the tough times. It is thanks to such positive ways of thinking that I am/have been able to feel much happier and more confident about myself.

16.2. Do Vietnamese people like to watch comedy?

Yes, definitely. Even though comedies are not as popular as they used to be, I think Vietnamese people still tend to seek out good comedy TV shows to have a good laugh and **decompress** after a hard day at the office or school.

16.3. Who is the most popular comedian in Vietnam?

Honestly I'm not really into Vietnamese comedy shows so I'm not so sure who the most popular comedian is at the moment. But my most favorite gagman, I would have to say, is Xuan Bac. He's been in showbiz for, I think, nearly 20 years now but he's still very **well-loved** by the public and continues to be one of the most **sought-after** men in comedy right now.

16.4. What do you do when you feel unhappy?

It depends, really. Some days I just want to go out and be with somebody I'm comfortable with like my close friends. If I'm **in a chatty mode**, I may share with them about all the things that have been troubling my life, but if I don't feel like talking then I'd rather just forget about it all and try to have some fun with my friends doing things that we love, such as going shopping, going to the cinema or eating some good food. Other days, I may want to spend the whole day being by myself and watch some of my favorite Korean **variety shows** which have never failed to **lift my mood** and help me **unwind my thoughts** in some of the most difficult times of my life.

16.5. Why do children tend to be happier than adults?

I think it is because most children are naïve and so they have the ability to simplify everything that they see, feel and encounter, which helps them to be more **carefree** and not **over-analyze** things like most adults do. For those kids who often forget what happened five minutes ago, neither the past nor the future is of significant importance to them, and that's the reason why most of the time we don't see kids wasting time worrying about the future or letting a past mistake stop them from enjoying their present. Though obviously children don't have responsibilities and haven't been exposed to the darker side of the world like adults, I personally believe such simplicity in children's way of thinking is the key to living a life with much freedom and joy.

VOCABULARY

✓ To guide sb through: hướng dẫn, dẫn dắt (ai đó) qua điều gì

I will really appreciate if you guide me through this and tell me which Career Path will be more suitable for me according to my situation.

✓ Decompress (verb): giảm sức ép

After two weeks' hiking, we'll need a few days to decompress.

✓ Well-loved (adj): được yêu thích

In his closet, all his sneakers and boots looked brand new, but his Converse shoes appeared faded and well-loved.

✓ Sought-after (adj): được săn lùng

At the age of 17 she is already one of Hollywood's most sought-after actresses.

✓ To be in a chatty mode: trong trạng thái muốn tán chuyện, buôn chuyện

✓ Variety show (noun): show truyền hình giải trí

Running Man has constantly been one of most famous Korean variety shows in recent years.

✓ To lift sb's mood: làm tâm trạng (ai đó) khá hơn

Food can lift my mood instantly.

✓ To unwind sb's thought: gỡ rối suy tư

It took me so many years to unwind my thoughts and fill myself with positive thoughts.

✓ Carefree (adj): vô tư, thanh thoi

I remember my carefree student days.

✓ Over-analyze (verb): phân tích quá mức

More people are prone to over-analyze than they will readily admit.

17. Describe a place where you felt crowded

You should say

where it was

why you went there

why it was crowded

and explain how you felt about being there.

Actually, coping with crowded places presents a challenge to me. Therefore, in my holidays, I often stay at home or find peaceful places to take a trip, but last spring, I made a wrong decision when I decided on Tam Coc, Ninh binh, as a quiet spot and **paid a visit**.

I thought I would escape **the hustle and bustle** of busy Hanoi for the relaxing pace of Tam Coc, which is often referred to as the Halong Bay of the land, because of its spectacular and peaceful

scenery. But when I arrived, it turned out to be the most crowded place I've ever encountered on my travels.

Coming to Tam Coc, you have to board row boats for a journey of over an hour, passing through 3 caves to be able to see a **brehtaking view** of lush green rice paddies during the rice growing seasons and stunning limestone karsts. But it was not easy to get a boat. In fact, I had to wait for about 2 hours. The pier was always **swarming with tourists** and the noise was **deafening** at times. We were **running out of** patience and out of space. My family and I felt really tired; but we still kept on waiting. Fortunately, we were **rewarded by an unforgettable vista**. But no matter how stunning the scenery is, I won't go back there after that experience.

I think **the local authorities** should **introduce restrictions on** the numbers of tourists. I visited Tam Coc 2 months after the Tet holiday, which means that it was not **the height of tourist season**, but the **resort** was still **thronged with holidaymakers**. In my opinion, Tam Coc has become too **touristy** and commercial. I suppose that over-rapid development will **hurt tourism** and not ensure **sustainable development** for the local people.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Tourism

1. Breathtaking view

Meaning: an extremely beautiful view

Example: From the top of the mountain, there is a **breathtaking view** of the coast.

2. To swarm with tourists

Meaning: when people swarm somewhere, they move there in a large group or in large numbers.

Example: During the summer, the little seaside town **is swarming with holidaymakers**.

3. To be rewarded by a vista

Meaning: to see a view, especially a beautiful view from a high position

Example: After a hard climb, we **were rewarded by a breathtaking vista** of the valley and river below.

4. The height of tourist season

Meaning: the time of year when the greatest number of people visit a place and when the prices are at their highest level

Example: Mid-summer in the UK is normally **the height of the tourist season**, so remember to book a hotel in advance.

5. To be thronged with tourists

Meaning: refers to the situation of a place having a great number of visitors crowded together

Example: At weekends, London, in particular, is swarming with tourists and certain areas of the city such as Oxford Street and Covent Garden **are thronged with visitors**.

6. A (holiday) resort

Meaning: a place where lots of people go for a holiday

Example: If you like going to the beach, Thailand has some excellent **resorts** to offer.

7. To hurt tourism

Meaning: to have negative impacts on tourism

Example: A weaker dollar could **hurt** outbound **tourism**.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Government

1. Local authorities

Meaning: government organizations acting in a small, local area

Example: Control over the development of tourism must be the responsibility of national and **local authorities**.

2. To introduce restrictions on

Meaning: to limit what people can do or what can happen

Example: The authorities must **introduce restrictions on** smoking in public places.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Environment

1. To achieve/ensure sustainable development

Meaning: economic development without damaging the natural resources or natural beauty of a place

Example: The government is adopting measures **to ensure the sustainable development** of holiday resorts by controlling construction and pollution.

Các từ khác

1. Hustle and bustle

[idiom] busy and noisy activity (sự nhộn nhịp)

Eg: There was a lot of **hustle and bustle** in the shopping mall, as loads of people walked by.

2. Deafening (rất to)

Meaning: very loud

Example: The noise of the machinery in the factory was **deafening**.

3. To run out of (dùng hết cái gì)

[phrasal verb] Exhaust a supply or quantity of

Eg: We're about **to run out of** coffee and sugar.

4. Touristy (đông khách du lịch)

[adj] A touristy place is not attractive because a lot of tourists visit it and it is full of things for them to buy and do

Eg: This used to be a pretty little fishing town, but now it's become very **touristy**.

18. Describe a TV program (TV Series) you have watched

You should say

what kind of TV program it was, e.g. comedy, romantic

when you saw the TV program.

what the TV program was about

I'm going to talk about "The Suite life of Zack and Cody". Well, unlike kids nowadays who have tons of ways to entertain themselves, back in 2005, we were totally **glued to** the Disney Channel, a popular channel for kids which is loved by adults as well. Not only me, but also my siblings love this channel and we often watch it together in **family gatherings**.

This channel has several programs. And one of our favorite comedy shows back then was "The Suite Life of Zack and Cody", which starred the lovable twins Dylan and Cole Sprouse living in an exclusive hotel. Lasting three seasons, the show even had a **spin-off**. In the 4 parts, Zack was the funny character and Cody was the smart one. Apart from the two main characters, this program had lots of other supporting characters and each had their own distinctive personality, which gave the program a wide audience appeal. I have to admit that the main reason I was a big fan of this program was not because of Zack and Cody but **a side character** - London Tipton, who was an obvious **parody** of the socialite Paris Hilton. She appeared in almost every episode of "The Suite Life of Zack & Cody" and was presented as a ditzy, **privileged** girl with hidden depth. Another reason is that I learnt countless new things by watching this show. At the age of 13, I learned about how some Western people **bring up their offspring**. I was impressed by the way they treat and talk

to their children as a friend, which helps a lot to bridge the **generation gap** and make family relationships much more intimate.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Family and Children

1. A family gathering

Meaning: a meeting of family members for a particular purpose

Example: In traditional societies, **family gatherings** are common to celebrate special occasions.

2. Bring up their offspring

Meaning: to bring up means to raise; this is what you do as a parent with your children; you educate them, nurture them, etc.; offspring refers to your children;

Example: They are **bringing up their offspring** in a very strict household

3. The generation gap

Meaning: the experience of not understanding your parents or grandparents and them not understanding you, due to being raised during different time periods, in a different cultural setting

Example: They were able to bridge **the generation gap** by watching old and new movies together and discussing them.”

Các từ khác

1. Spin-off

[Noun] a programme or other show involving characters from a previous programme (ngoại truyện, chương trình dẫn xuất)

Eg: The stage show is a **spin-off** from a television programme.

2. Side character/ supporting character

[noun] a character in a narrative that is not focused on by the main storyline, but appears or is mentioned in the story (nhân vật phụ)

Eg: Most TV series have a number of **supporting characters**, in addition to the main characters in the show.

3. Parody

[noun] humorous or satirical imitation of a serious piece of literature or writing (một thể loại nhái)

Eg: His hilarious **parody** of Hamlet's soliloquy is going viral.

4. Privileged

[adj] having an advantage that only one person or group of people has, usually because of their position or because they are rich (có đặc quyền)

Eg: As an ambassador, she enjoys a very **privileged** status.

2.1. Do you think (watching) films have (has) any educational benefits?

Personally, I agree with the idea that films bring a lot meaningful lessons to the audience. For example, romantic films can educate people about the value of love, honesty, and faithfulness. They can make the audience **sympathize** with other people and respect what they have. Indeed, films can teach people **good virtues** in order to be better citizens through stories.

2.2. In what ways are documentary films and films only for entertainment different?

Documentary films are different from entertaining films in various aspects, especially their purposes.

Regarding their objectives, documentary filmmakers **strive to document** some aspects of reality, **primarily** for the purposes of instruction, education or maintaining a historical record.

In contrast, entertaining films aim mainly to provide fun. Directors try to find funny **storylines** and hire the best comedy actors, such as Jackie Chan, and use good **scriptwriters** to **come up with dialogues** that will make audiences laugh.

2.3. Why do you think documentary films are not so popular?

Documentary films are not as popular as entertainment films because audiences may prefer to watch films in order to escape from the **harsh realities** of everyday life and problems.

Documentary films are primarily aimed at educating audiences and they may, therefore, lack entertaining features as well as dramatic elements. As a result, there is always a danger that audiences may feel bored or distracted.

2.4. How are movies and real life different ?

Movies are not the same as reality in a number of ways.

Firstly, movies contain dramatic scenes which can make audiences experience various emotions, through happiness to sorrow or excitement just in a few seconds. In real life, this rarely happens.

Secondly, films will often **dramatize** and **invent scenarios** for the convenience of moving a story along or making the audience feel sympathy or some other emotion for a character.

However, these scenarios contrast sharply with what would happen if these situations were encountered in real life.

2.5. Do men and women like to watch the same kinds of films?

Personally, I think men and women have different preferences when it comes to films.

In general, men tend to watch **action films** with fast and dangerous scenes like car chases, or **science fiction films** which relate to unrealistic stories with imaginative, **futuristic** plots.

On the other hand, a large number of women prefer romantic films or comedies which bring **worthy messages**.

2.6. Do different age groups like the same kinds of films?

It is obvious that different generations prefer different kinds of films. For example, youngsters are usually fond of funny cartoons or comedies. Adults tend to watch various types of films such as action films, romantic films or films based on real events, depending on their interests.

2.7. Do you like any particular film star? Why?

Yes. My favorite film star is Emma Watson, who was the actress in the Harry Potter film series which I have followed since I was a child. I particularly like her due to her **superb** performance and **admirable** personal qualities.

In terms of performance, I have been really impressed by her acting ability, playing **convincing** roles in all the films she has **starred** in. Moreover, she has also received various important awards for the best actress.

In terms of her personality, she is a **kind-hearted**, generous person who is always willing to help **disadvantaged** people.

Every time I see her on TV, I remember my childhood and that makes me happy. I think I will continue to follow her career in the long run.

VOCABULARY

✓ **Sympathize (verb): (thông cảm, đồng cảm)** to feel sorry for somebody; to show that you understand and feel sorry about somebody's problems

Ex: I know what it's like to have migraines, so I really **sympathize** (with you).

✓ **Strive (verb):** try very hard to achieve something

Ex: This restaurant **strives** to serve good food at reasonable prices.

✓ **Document (verb): (dẫn chứng bằng tài liệu, ghi lại chi tiết sự việc)** to record the details of something

Ex: Causes of the disease have been well **documented**.

- ✓ **Primarily (adverb): (chính, chủ yếu)** mainly
Ex: The report is **primarily** concerned with aircraft safety.
- ✓ **Storyline (noun):** the basic story in a film/movie
Ex: Some of Shakespeare's plays have a very sad and tragic **storyline**.
- ✓ **Scriptwriter (noun):** a person who writes the words for films/movies
Ex: Every good actor needs an expert **scriptwriter** in order to play their role well in a film.
- ✓ **Come up with (phrasal verb):** find or produce an answer or idea
Ex: He **came up with** an idea for a movie about dinosaurs.
- ✓ **Dialogue (noun):** conversations in a film/movie
Ex: The **dialogues** in romantic films are usually longer than the **dialogues** in action films.
- ✓ **Harsh realities (expression):** the difficulties [of daily life]
Ex: For many elderly people, coping with poor health is one of the **harsh realities of life**.
- ✓ **Dramatize (verb): (soạn thành kịch)** to present a book, an event, etc. as a play or a film/movie
Ex: Jane Austen's 'Emma' was **dramatized** on television recently.
- ✓ **Scenario(s) (noun): (viễn cảnh có thể xảy ra)** a description of how things might happen in the future
Ex: The **worst-case scenario** (= the worst possible thing that could happen) would be for the factory to be closed down.
- ✓ **Superb (adjective): (tuyệt vời, xuất sắc)** excellent; of very good quality
Ex: Taylor scored a **superb** goal at the end of the first half.
- ✓ **Admirable (adjective):** having qualities that you respect
Ex: The dedication of the doctors and nurses in this hospital is **admirable**.
- ✓ **Convincing (adjective):** that makes somebody believe that something is true
Ex: The dinosaurs in the film are very **convincing** – in fact, children are quite scared of them!
- ✓ **Star (verb):** have one of the main parts in a film/movie
Ex: Next year, she plans to **star** in a new romantic movie filmed in Paris.
- ✓ **Kind – hearted (adjective): (tốt tính)** A kind-hearted person is one who likes other people a lot and always wants to help them.

Ex: She is also a **kind-hearted**, generous person who is always willing to help disadvantaged people.

✓ **Disadvantaged (adjective):** not having enough money or skills to succeed in life

Ex: The free meals service is designed to help **disadvantaged** people in the local community.

19. Describe a plan you haven't done yet

You should say:

- What it is about
- When you plan to do
- Why you want to do it

And explain why you haven't done now.

I have been planning on starting a blog for a couple of years now, yet I haven't really got to do it for several reasons.

Two years ago, I happened to come across an article on the Internet which talked about blogging as a career. I was pretty interested in writing - I already wrote some short stories and I also managed to **consistently** write diaries at the time. The idea of **earning a living** out of what I loved doing was really appealing to me. As a result, after searching for more **in-depth** information about blogging, I chose to receive **newsletters** from one site which claimed to teach people detailed steps towards becoming a blogger.

I started following the instructions listed in every newsletter I received, yet after some time, I began having difficulty continuing writing blogs. I realized that blogging required a high level of commitment, **marketable** ideas and also good writing skills. I was a high school student at the time, and with a completely full schedule of studying and part-time working, it was **out of the question** for me to **devote** myself to blogging. There were also some other reasons, one of which was that I couldn't produce good ideas for my articles, maybe because I wasn't **knowledgeable** enough about **breaking news** or because I couldn't provide **up to the minute news coverage**. That led to my decision to **cease** my blogging process - I decided that I should at least work on my writing skills or **broaden my literary horizons** first, and that I would only start my blogging career when I was well-prepared.

Từ vựng chủ đề **Business and Money**:

- **To earn a living**

Meaning: to earn money

Example: I used to earn a living as a teacher, but now I sell used cars.

Dịch đại ý

To earn a living: kiếm sống

Nghĩa: kiếm tiền trang trải cuộc sống

Ví dụ: Tôi từng kiếm sống bằng nghề giáo viên, nhưng giờ thì tôi đi bán ô tô cũ, đã qua sử dụng.

Từ vựng chủ đề **Media and Advertising**:

- **news coverage**

Meaning: the reporting of news and sport in newspapers, tv, or radio.

Example: The US presidential election received global **news coverage**, so that the whole world became interested in the outcome.

Dịch đại ý

News coverage: việc đưa tin tức

Nghĩa: việc đưa tin thời sự, tin thể thao trên báo chí, tv, đài phát thanh

Ví dụ: Cuộc bầu cử tổng thống Mỹ đã được đưa tin trên toàn cầu, cả thế giới đều mong chờ biết kết quả

- **breaking news**

Meaning: newly received information about an event that is currently taking place

Example: One disadvantage of the printed media is that it is unable to carry the latest **breaking news** stories.

Dịch đại ý

Breaking news: tin nóng, tin đặc biệt

Nghĩa: Những thông tin quan trọng mới nhận được về một sự kiện đang diễn ra

Ví dụ: Một bất lợi của báo in là không thể có những tin nóng mới nhất.

- **up to the minute**

Meaning: having the latest information

Example: Newspapers are unable to provide **up to the minute** news coverage of events as they happen.

Dịch đại ý

Up to the minute: cập nhật từng phút

Nghĩa: có những thông tin mới nhất

Ví dụ: Báo chí không thể cập nhật tin tức từng phút về sự kiện ngay khi vừa diễn ra.

Từ vựng chủ đề Reading:

- **broaden one's literary horizons**

Meaning: to widen the limit of your desires, knowledge, or interests by reading widely

Example: Schools should **broaden the literary horizons** of pupils by encouraging them to read in class and at home.

Dịch đại ý

To broaden one's literary horizons: mở mang hiểu biết văn học

Nghĩa: mở mang kiến thức, khao khát, hứng thú bằng cách đọc nhiều hơn

Ví dụ: Trường học nên mở mang hiểu biết văn chương của học sinh bằng cách khuyến khích các em đọc tại lớp và tại nhà.

Từ vựng khác:

- **Consistently** [adv] (happening in the same way and continuing for a period of time): liên tục, kiên trì

E.g. We have argued **consistently** for a change in the law.

- **In-depth** [adj] (very thorough and detailed): sâu sắc, chi tiết

E.g. Ed conducted an **in-depth** research on the development of France's economy.

- **Newsletter** [noun] (a report contains news of the activities of a club or an organization that is sent regularly to all its members)

E.g. I have been receiving **newsletters** of my Marketing Club for more than a year.

- **Marketable** [adj] (easy to sell; attractive to customers or consumers): dễ bán

E.g. ABC's new shaving cream is really **marketable**; hundreds of people have bought it though it was launched just 30 minutes ago!

- **Out of the question** [expression] (impossible): không thể thực hiện được

E.g. It was **out of the question** for you to have seen me at that club yesterday; I was staying with my grandma all day long!

- **Devote yourself to sth** [expression] (to give most of your time, energy,... to something):
dành thời gian công sức để làm gì
E.g. She **devoted herself to** her career.
- **Knowledgeable** [adj] (knowing a lot): hiểu biết rộng
E.g. She is very **knowledgeable** about plants - she can name every kind of plants in this garden!
- **Cease** [verb] (to stop something from happening or existing): làm cái gì ngừng lại
E.g. They voted to **cease** strike action immediately.

Part 3

(tham khảo đề A plan that is not related to work and study)

20. Describe a bicycle tour.

You should say:

When you had this trip

Whom went on with you

What did you do during this trip

And explain why you like it

I am going to talk about a tour on bike that I have fortunately had the chance to experience recently. Last month, my mom and dad decided that it was time we left behind the **hustle and bustle** of the city and lined up an intimate **family outing** in the countryside **to get away from it all**. Because my mother has serious **motion sickness** and we did not want **to break the bank** for the trip, instead of renting a private car as usual, we decided to travel as **backpackers** by bike! It was such a **brand new** experience for me.

We were up early in the morning to prepare our luggage and we were ready on our own bikes, and then set off for our camping site in a park in the country. Riding a bike granted me the opportunity to go sight-seeing without my view being blocked, which is far more satisfying than looking through the window of a fast-moving car. As we entered the countryside region, **a breath-taking view** appeared in front of our eyes. Hours of riding our bikes absolutely paid off as we **were rewarded by a picturesque vista** of rolling hills towering above borderless green rice fields. That was heavenly beautiful!

The real allure of the trip to me is how I got to spend really quality time with my family. We always had to **keep in mind that** we were a team and we **kepttogether**. Every time we took a rest, I would get a chance to see my father take care of my mom and that was the sweetest thing ever, which I had not seen for a while. I could feel our bond growing stronger and stronger each time I or my dad slowed down so that my mom could keep up. This trip is among the best trips that I have taken.

Vocabulary:

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Tourism

· Family outings

Meaning: family excursions for pleasure

Example: It's time to give your child a bigger world to discover by lining up a few fun **family outings** that are tailor-made for the little ones in your life.

Dịch đại ý

Family outings: dã ngoại gia đình

Nghĩa: những chuyến thám hiểm với cả gia đình nhằm mục đích giải trí

Ví dụ: Đã tới lúc cho con bạn khám phá thế giới rộng lớn bằng cách tổ chức một số chuyến dã ngoại gia đình, những chuyến đi đã được làm lại để phù hợp với trẻ nhỏ.

· Motion/travel sickness

Meaning: an irritated feeling which is caused by repeated unusual movements during travelling

Example: During long car or bus journeys, she often suffers from **motion sickness**.

Dịch đại ý

Motion/ travel sickness: say xe

Nghĩa: say xe

Ví dụ: Trong những chuyến đi dài bằng xe ô tô hay xe bus, cô ấy thường bị say xe.

· To break the bank

Meaning: to use up all one's money/ to cost too much.

Example: Having a winter vacation in the sun without **breaking the bank** is a dream come true

Dịch đại ý

To break the bank: dùng hết sạch tiền

Nghĩa: dùng hết tiền/ chi cái gì quá đắt

Ví dụ: Có được một kì nghỉ mùa đông dưới ánh mặt trời mà không phải chi hết sạch tiền bạc là một giấc mơ có thực.

· **Backpackers**

Meaning: people who travel on holiday carrying all their equipment and clothes in a backpack, like a large very strong bag which they carry on their back'

Example: London has cheap accommodation for **backpackers** who don't have much money to spend on hotels.

Dịch đại ý

Backpackers: khách du lịch ba lô (người Việt Nam gọi là tây ba lô)

Nghĩa: chỉ những người đi du lịch mang theo tất cả dụng cụ và quần áo trong 1 chiếc ba lô (một cái túi rất to đeo trên lưng).

Ví dụ: London có những phòng nghỉ giá rẻ cho du khách ba lô, những người không có nhiều tiền để ở khách sạn.

· **To get away from it all**

Meaning: to have a holiday in a very quiet place where you can relax.

Example: Tourists have always traveled to natural areas of beauty to avoid the noisy crowds and **to get away from it all**.

Dịch đại ý

to get away from it all: thoát khỏi cuộc sống hiện tại

Nghĩa: có một kì nghỉ tại một nơi vô cùng yên tĩnh để có thể hoàn toàn thư giãn.

Ví dụ: Du khách luôn tới những cảnh đẹp tự nhiên để tránh đám đông ồn ào và thoát khỏi nhịp sống vội vã thường ngày.

· **To be rewarded by a vista**

Meaning: to see a view, especially a beautiful view from a high position after a hard time

Example: After a hard climb, we were **rewarded by a picture-postcard vista** of rolling hills under a deep blue summer sky.

Dịch đại ý

To be rewarded by a vista: được chiêm ngưỡng một cảnh tượng hùng vĩ

Nghĩa: được chiêm ngưỡng một cảnh tượng xinh đẹp/hùng vĩ từ một vị trí cao (khó khăn mới tới được)

Ví dụ: Sau khi vất vả trèo lên đỉnh, chúng tôi đã được chiêm ngưỡng cảnh tượng đẹp như trong tranh của những ngọn đồi dưới bầu trời xanh thẳm của mùa hè.

Từ vựng khác:

1. brand new [expression]: completely new

Ex: a brand new computer

Nghĩa: hoàn toàn mới

VD: Một chiếc máy tính hoàn toàn mới.

2. hustle and bustle [idm]: confusion and business.

Ex: I can't stand the hustle and bustle of big cities.

Nghĩa: sự hỗn loạn và công việc

Ví dụ: Tôi không thể chịu đựng được sự ồn ào bận rộn của thành phố.

3. keep (it) in mind that [idm]: a statement emphasizing something that the speaker wants remembered.

Ex: You should keep in mind that I am the boss.

Nghĩa: nhớ thứ gì đó

VD: Anh nên nhớ rằng tôi mới là ông chủ.

4. keep together [idm]: to remain as a group.

Ex: We will keep together to the very end.

Nghĩa: bám nhau thành nhóm

VD: chúng tôi bám sát nhau như 1 nhóm đến tận cùng.

Part 3

1. **Do you think it is important to develop transport? Why?**

It goes without saying that the development of transport is of great significance to the well-being of the community. As can clearly be seen, poor transport facilities have resulted in various traffic-related problems such as congestion or accidents, which have put citizens under constant stress of losing time and risking their life. **By investing in transport infrastructure,** governments can put a dent in the problems of traffic jam and road **dilapidation**, which means a **sped-up journey** time and safer streets.

2. **What kind of transportation do you choose when you go out?**

As for me, my favorite means of transport is the bus. I guess the primary attraction of this transportation is how economical it is compared to the other options. **As far as I can tell**, the bus fare is so much cheaper than taxi fare or the cost of motorbike fuel and maintenance. Moreover, going by bus is extremely convenient and comfortable. As our government has made an effort to **upgrade and expand public transport provision**, buses with up-to-date air conditioners and soft seats now extend to every corner of my city. I feel blessed to have **access to this means of public transportation**.

3. **Do people like to travel by bike in your hometown? Why?**

Sadly, my neighboring citizens donot value the bicycle as an optimum means of transport. I guess this **stems from** the bicycle's limited speed. As people in my hometown are usually obliged to travel considerable distances to their work places, motorcycles or the car are utilized **to speed up their journey time**. Another possible reason is that there is yet to be a **dedicated cycle lane**, so cyclists may find it difficult to compete with other faster and more powerful vehicles for road space.

4. **What kinds of transportation are good for environment protection? Why?**

Talking about **environmentally friendly** forms of transport, the bicycle and electric means of transportation are the outstanding examples. This is mainly because they do not discharge toxic exhaust fumes into the environment like conventional vehicles do, which radically reduces humans' **carbon footprint**. Some may argue that thermal electricity may cause pollution, which is true, but as our electricity production has now shifted to rely on **alternative energy sources** such as wind and water, this is becoming less of a problem.

5. **Do you think travel by bicycle is better in traffic? Why?**

Well that is an interesting question. As far as I can tell, traveling by bike **may ease traffic flow** if it is done widely among people. It can be easily seen that the bicycle is light-weight and takes up less space than any other vehicles. By riding a bicycle instead of going in cars or taxi, travelers are able to free a huge area of the road that is normally wasted by not fully occupied cars, giving way for people to travel and alleviate congestion.

Vocabulary

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Transportation:

- **to upgrade and expand public transport provision**

Meaning: to improve bus and train services and to make these services more available

Example: One way to reduce traffic on the roads is **to upgrade and expand public transport provision**.

Dịch đại ý

To upgrade and expand public transport provision: nâng cấp và mở rộng hệ thống giao thông công cộng

Nghĩa: cải thiện dịch vụ xe bus và tàu và khiến các dịch vụ ấy trở nên sẵn sàng hơn

Ví dụ: Một cách để giảm lượng phương tiện trên đường là nâng cấp và mở rộng hệ thống giao thông công cộng.

· **to invest in transport infrastructure**

Meaning: to spend money on improving roads, railway lines, train and bus stations

Example: Governments must **invest in transport infrastructure** to make journeys by road and rail safer.

Dịch đại ý

To invest in transport infrastructure: Đầu tư vào giao thông hạ tầng

Nghĩa: chi tiền cho việc cải thiện đường bộ, đường ray, các ga tàu và bến xe bus.

Ví dụ: Chính phủ cần đầu tư vào giao thông hạ tầng để việc di chuyển trên đường bộ và đường tàu hỏa an toàn hơn.

· **to have access to public transport**

Meaning: the right or opportunity to use public transportation

Example: Many people who live in rural areas have no **access to public transport** and have to rely on private cars or taxis.

Dịch đại ý

To have access to public transport: tiếp cận với giao thông công cộng

Nghĩa: quyền và cơ hội được sử dụng hệ thống giao thông công cộng

Ví dụ: Rất nhiều người ở vùng ngoại ô không thể tiếp cận với giao thông công cộng và phải dựa vào xe cá nhân hoặc taxi.

· **dedicated bus lanes/cycle lanes**

Meaning: a section of a road, indicated by white lines that only buses or cycles are allowed to use.

Example: City authorities should create **dedicated bus lanes and cycle lanes** to encourage people to take public transport or to cycle in cities.

Dịch đại ý

Dedicated bus lanes/ cycle lanes: làn ưu tiên

Nghĩa: một phần đường bộ được phân bằng đường kẻ trắng dành riêng cho xe bus hoặc xe thô sơ.

Ví dụ: Chính quyền thành phố nên dành ra những phần đường ưu tiên cho xe bus và xe đạp để khuyến khích mọi người dùng phương tiện giao thông công cộng hoặc đạp xe trong thành phố.

· **to speed up journey times**

Meaning: to reduce the amount of time spent travelling

Example: The creation of dedicated bus lanes would **speed up journey times** and encourage more people to use bus services.

Dịch đại ý

To speed up journey times: tiết kiệm thời gian di chuyển

Nghĩa: giảm lượng thời gian đi lại

Ví dụ: Việc tạo ra các làn đường ưu tiên cho xe bus sẽ tiết kiệm thời gian di chuyển và khuyến khích mọi người sử dụng xe bus nhiều hơn.

· **to ease traffic flow**

Meaning: to enable traffic to move more easily

Example: The introduction of bus and cycle lanes would help **to ease traffic flow** in city centres.

Dịch đại ý

To ease traffic flow: giảm lưu lượng giao thông

Nghĩa: cho phép các phương tiện di chuyển dễ dàng hơn

Ví dụ: Việc dành đường ưu tiên cho xe bus và xe đạp sẽ giúp giảm lưu lượng giao thông tại các trung tâm thành phố.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Environment:

· **to stem from**

Meaning: to be caused by

Example: Scientists say that global warming partly **stems from** the increase in car exhaust emissions.

Dịch đại ý

To stem from: bắt nguồn từ

Nghĩa: được tạo ra bởi cái gì

Ví dụ: Các nhà khoa học cho rằng sự nóng lên toàn cầu 1 phần bắt nguồn từ lượng khí thải của xe ô tô tăng lên.

· **environmentally friendly**

Meaning: behavior or products that do not harm the environment

Example: We can help to protect the environment by using detergents and cosmetics that are **environmentally friendly**.

Dịch đại ý

Environmentally friendly: thân thiện với môi trường

Nghĩa: các hoạt động hay các sản phẩm không gây hại tới môi trường

Ví dụ: Chúng tôi có thể giúp bảo vệ môi trường bằng cách sử dụng các chất hóa mỹ phẩm thân thiện với môi trường.

· **alternative energy sources**

Meaning: refers to any energy source that is an alternative to fossil fuel

Example: Clean energy which does not pollute the Earth can only come from a greater reliance on **alternative energy sources**.

Dịch đại ý

Alternative energy sources: các nguồn năng lượng thay thế

Nghĩa: chỉ các nguồn năng lượng có thể thay thế cho nhiên liệu hóa thạch

Ví dụ: Năng lượng sạch, không gây hại cho Trái đất chỉ có là những nguồn năng lượng thay thế.

· **carbon footprint**

Meaning: a measure of the amount of carbon dioxide that is produced by the daily activities of a company or person

Example: By providing subsidies, governments should encourage companies to reduce their **carbon footprint** through energy efficiency or other ‘green measures’.

Dịch đại ý

Carbon footprint: Dấu chân carbon

Nghĩa: số lượng khí carbon được tạo ra từ những hoạt động thường ngày của một công ty hay một cá nhân nào đó

Ví dụ: Bằng việc trợ cấp, chính phủ các nước khuyến khích các doanh nghiệp giảm dấu chân carbon qua việc sử dụng năng lượng hiệu quả hay các biện pháp xanh khác.

Từ vựng khác:

1. **go without saying [idm]:** To be unambiguous, perfectly clear, or self-evident; to be already acknowledged, established, or accepted.

Ex: This should go without saying, but you will receive an automatic zero if you are caught cheating on the exam.

Nghĩa: điều này là rất rõ ràng

VD: Điều này đã rất rõ ràng, bạn sẽ tự động nhận điểm 0 nếu bạn bị bắt được gian lận trong thi cử.

2. **Dilapidation [n]:** the state of being ruined.

Ex: The building is in a state of dilapidation.

Nghĩa: bị xuống cấp

VD: Tòa nhà đang trong tình trạng bị xuống cấp.

3. **as far as I know, as far as I can remember, see, tell, etc. [expression]:** used to say that you think you know, remember, understand, etc. something but you cannot be completely sure, especially because you do not know all the facts

Ex: As far as we knew, there was no cause for concern.

Nghĩa: Theo tôi nhớ/được biết/ có thể nói được... thì...

VD; Theo chúng tôi được biết thì không có gì đáng lo ngại cả.

21. **Describe an organization or company where you live that employs a lot of people.**

You should say:

What it is

How many employees work there

What its work is

And explain what you think about it.

The company I'm going to tell you about is a merger of two **start-up** companies, which were YoungAd and VietDesign, YoungAd's focus was on advertising and marketing, while VietDesign, as its name suggests, was aimed at designing logos and websites. Both companies spent 2 years **breaking into the market**. Soon the directors realized that together they would make a prosperous organization since their two domains were closely related. Therefore, to **make the most of their potential**, YoungAd and VietDesign **amalgamated** in 2016 to make YAVD.

The number of employees from both companies combined is nearly 100 at present, a pretty impressive figure for a start-up business at that age. **Collaborators** are also recruited during big

marketing campaigns to support official employees. The company adopts a flexible policy when it comes to **human resource management**: freelancers who perform beyond expectation are retained as employees or paid generously.

In my opinion, YAVD is likely to grow and **thrive** for two reasons. Firstly, because the two former companies had their stable markets, YAVD **gains a competitive edge** regarding its **customer base**. Secondly, because marketing and designing make a perfect service package, YAVD is able to cater for the need of their customers in a comprehensive manner, which probably **singles them out** in the market.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Money and Business:

1.To break into a market

Meaning: to enter a market with the sense that entrance to the industry was difficult.

Example: It is difficult to break into the market for designer sportswear because there is too much competition from leading brands like Nike.

Dịch đại ý

To break into a market: thâm nhập thị trường

Nghĩa: gia nhập vào thị trường có rào cản gia nhập cao (khó thâm nhập)

Ví dụ: Rất khó khăn để thâm nhập thị trường quần áo thể thao do sự cạnh tranh mạnh từ các thương hiệu dẫn đầu như Nike.

2.To make the most of something

Meaning: to make something appear as good as possible; to exploit something; to get as much out of something as is possible.

Example: They designed the advertisements to make the most of the product's features.

Dịch đại ý

To make the most of something: tận dụng cái gì

Nghĩa: tạo ra cái gì một cách tốt nhất cái gì hoặc khai thác cái gì một cách triệt để.

Ví dụ: Họ thiết kế những quảng cáo có thể khai thác tối đa các đặc trưng của sản phẩm.

3.A merger

Meaning: the action of joining two or more businesses into one

Example: The directors of Kentucky Fried Chicken and Burger King are considering a merger of

the two companies.

Dịch đại ý

A merger: sự sáp nhập

Nghĩa: liên kết/ sáp nhập 2 hay nhiều công ty thành 1

Ví dụ: Các nhà quản lý của Gà rán Kentucky và Burger King đang xem xét việc sáp nhập 2 công ty thành 1.

4.To gain a competitive edge

Meaning: to achieve an advantage over another company or organization, often by providing the same goods or services at a lower price

Example: The high quality of VW cars, combined with their affordable price, has enabled the company to gain a competitive edge over all its rivals in world markets.

Dịch đại ý

To gain a competitive edge: có được lợi thế cạnh tranh

Nghĩa: đạt được lợi thế hơn công ty hay tổ chức khác, thường do cung cấp dịch vụ hay sản phẩm tương tự với giá thành thấp hơn.

Ví dụ: Chất lượng cao của những chiếc ô tô Volks Swagen, cùng với giá cả hợp lý đã khiến công ty có lợi thế cạnh tranh hơn tất cả đối thủ trên thị trường thế giới.

Các từ khác

1.amalgamate (verb) Combine or unite to form one organization or structure.

Example: numerous small British railway companies amalgamated.

2.Start-up (noun): A newly established business

3.Collaborator (noun) A person who works jointly on an activity or project; an associate.

Example: his collaborator on the book

4.Human Resource Management (HRM): the function within an organization that focuses on the recruitment of, management of, and providing direction for the people who work in an organization.

5.thrive (verb) to prosper; be fortunate or successful.

6.customer base: the group of customers who repeatedly purchase the goods or services of a business.

7.Single sth out (phrasal verb): choose one person or thing from a group for special attention

Part 3

1. Do you think a good job means a high salary job? Why?

Well, personally, I think that a good job should be accompanied by a decent salary and other financial bonuses. I don't consider a career as one of the top priorities in my life, so such factors as **promotion opportunities** and **job prospects** don't matter much to me. Thus, provided that my job enables me to **support my family** and travel several times a year, I would have little to complain about.

However, many people think that a good job also means **job satisfaction**, good **working environment** and **job security**. Those are also critical criteria to determine whether a job is good enough. In short, a high salary job wouldn't necessarily mean a good job, but a good job should definitely be well-paid.

2. What kind of job do most people like to do?

It's rather difficult to answer this question without over-generalization. I reckon that most people would aspire for the job that helps them **foot the bill**. Salary, again, should be one of the biggest concerns since people can hardly enjoy other aspects of their job or life in general if they don't earn enough to cover their basic needs. Therefore, many people prefer to **have a steady job** to ensure a **stable income**. In Vietnam especially, state jobs, namely government officers, policemen and civil servants are highly desirable.

A great number of people, however, opt for jobs that challenge them and are willing to **juggle between jobs**. In recent years, unconventional jobs, typically freelancers, are gaining loads of attention. I assume that people who go after this career path probably put job satisfaction first on their list.

Ultimately, it is what people are looking for that decides what kind of job they want. In my opinion, there are two tendencies when it comes to popular jobs, as I have just mentioned.

3. What kind of job do you think is worth being well-paid? Why?

I think that all types of job should be paid generously as they all serve our society. However, if there is any kind of job that should be most worthy of high salary, I would say it is doctor. The first reason is that the medical profession can directly influence people's lives. This **puts enormous pressure on** the doctors since they **are held responsible for** the fate of their patients. Hence, it is understandable that we pay doctors a fair amount for their vital and highly stressful role.

The second reason relates to the sacrifice one has to make if he/she chooses to become a doctor. Undeniably, doctors and surgeons are the top most demanding positions. Many people have to

forgo some aspects of their personal lives, typically marriage, to pursue their career. Hence, we should compensate the struggles that doctors have to overcome with a high salary..

4. **How to make an employee work with passion? Who takes responsibility for this? Why?**

In my opinion, passion comes from real interest and a sense of **organizational justice**. Therefore, to make the employees passionate about their work, it is essential to assign them with tasks which excite them. In addition, employees would contribute with much more enthusiasm if they thought that there is fairness in their workplace and they are working towards a meaningful goal.

With that being said, managers should be accountable for instilling passion in the employees. It is the managers' job to deal with **task distribution**, making sure that most employees are happy with their tasks. Also, managers must treat employees with respect, fairness and appreciation so that employees feel they belong to the organization they are working for and would even be willing to handle **donkey work** with enthusiasm.

5. **Do you think it is hard for teenagers looking for a job?**

I don't believe that teenagers are having a hard time getting a job. The demands for teenagers just like tutors, waiters/waitresses, shop assistants and web designers, etc are **burgeoning**. Employers favour teenagers for their energy and creativity. They are also more easy-going when it comes to payment and job benefits. So as long as teenagers are active, there are many jobs that require little extensive **expertise** waiting for them.

6. **Do you think universities should support student seeking jobs?**

Yes, I definitely think that universities should **lend a helping hand** when students, especially graduates, enter the job market. By this I mean the universities can organize **job fairs**, offer students professional connections and introduce them to **internships**. Those measures would greatly assist freshly-graduated students with a little knowledge of how to get a job. However, I am a strong believer that the decisive role should be played by students themselves in order to **land the job** that they desire,

7. **What kind of jobs do young woman like? Why?**

From my perspective, many young women go for exciting jobs such as flight attendants, designers and marketers. Since young women, most of the time, are yet to have **family commitments**, they tend to be fascinated by jobs that involve lots of traveling and meeting new people.

To those who are **working mothers**, I suppose they would choose stable jobs such as teachers, accountants... so that they have more free time to take care of their families.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Work:

1. Promotion opportunities

Meaning: chances to move to a more important position in a company or organization

Example: Perhaps the most important factor when choosing a job are the promotion opportunities/promotion prospects.

Dịch đại ý

Promotion opportunities: cơ hội thăng tiến

Nghĩa: cơ hội được điều chuyển lên vị trí cao hơn trong công ty

Ví dụ: Có lẽ yếu tố quan trọng nhất khi lựa chọn công việc là cơ hội thăng tiến hay triển vọng công việc.

2. Job prospects

Meaning: the chances of being successful and having more opportunities at work

Example: People with qualifications and experience usually have the best job prospects.

Dịch đại ý

Job prospects: triển vọng công việc

Nghĩa: cơ hội để thành công và có nhiều cơ hội hơn trong công việc

Ví dụ: Những người có bằng cấp và kinh nghiệm thường có triển vọng công việc tốt hơn.

3. Working environment

Meaning: the conditions that you work in

Example: If work is to be enjoyable, then a friendly working environment is essential.

Dịch đại ý

Working environment: môi trường làm việc

Nghĩa: điều kiện làm việc

Ví dụ: Nếu muốn hưởng thụ công việc, thì một môi trường làm việc thân thiện là rất cần thiết.

4. Job satisfaction

Meaning: the good feeling that you get when you have a job that you enjoy

Example: A high salary is not necessarily the most important factor in job satisfaction.

Dịch đại ý

Job satisfaction: sự hài lòng trong công việc

Nghĩa: cảm giác hạnh phúc khi được làm công việc mà bạn thấy vui vẻ

Ví dụ: Mức lương cao không phải yếu tố quan trọng nhất về sự hài lòng trong công việc.

5.To have a steady job

Meaning: to have a job which you are unlikely to lose, but which is usually the same routine

Example: Although some people prefer to change jobs, others prefer to have a steady job and a set daily routine at work.

Dịch đại ý

To have a steady job: có công việc ổn định

Nghĩa: có việc bạn chắc chắn không bị sa thải, nhưng thường làm việc giống nhau

Ví dụ: Dù một số người thích thay đổi công việc, những người khác lại thích công việc ổn định và làm việc hàng ngày như nhau hơn.

6.An internship

Meaning: a period of time in which a student or new graduate gets practical experience in a job

Example: In order to gain essential professional experience, graduates should do an internship if they have the opportunity.

Dịch đại ý

An internship: kỳ thực tập

Nghĩa: thời gian sinh viên hay người mới tốt nghiệp lấy kinh nghiệm làm việc thực tế

Ví dụ: Để có được kinh nghiệm làm việc cần thiết, những người mới tốt nghiệp cần thực tập khi có thời gian.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Family and Children

1.to support a family

Meaning: to have enough money to be able to look after a family

Example: Young people often delay marriage because they do not earn enough money to support a family.

Dịch đại ý

To support a family: nuôi sống gia đình

Nghĩa: có đủ tuổi để chăm sóc 1 gia đình

Ví dụ: Những người trẻ hiện nay trì hoãn không kết hôn vì họ không kiếm đủ tiền để nuôi gia đình.

2.working mothers

Meaning: women who have a job and also have to take care of their children

Example: As more and more women have entered the workforce, working mothers have to balance the demands of home and work.

Dịch đại ý

Working mothers: các bà mẹ đi làm

Nghĩa: phụ nữ có công ăn việc làm đồng thời phải chăm sóc con họ

Ví dụ: Khi ngày càng nhiều phụ nữ tham gia vào lực lượng lao động, các bà mẹ đi làm phải cân bằng giữa những yêu cầu của công việc và gia đình.

Từ thuộc chủ đề Environment:

to hold sbdy accountable for + noun/gerund

Meaning: to consider someone responsible for something; to blame something on someone

Example: Companies which discharge chemical waste from their factories into the sea or into rivers must be held accountable for their actions and be fined heavily.

Dịch đại ý

To hold sb accountable for: đổ trách nhiệm cho ai

Nghĩa: coi ai đó có trách nhiệm cho cái gì/ đổ lỗi cho ai về chuyện gì đó

Ví dụ: Các công ty xả rác thải hóa chất từ nhà máy ra biển hoặc sông hồ cần phải chịu trách nhiệm cho hành động của mình và bị phạt nặng.

Các từ khác:

1.Job security (n): sự bảo hộ công ăn việc làm

Eg: Vietnamese people consider job security as the most essential feature of a good job.

2.Foot the bill (idiom): Thanh toán hóa đơn

Eg: She earns just enough to foot the bill.

3.A stable income (noun): Thu nhập ổn định

Eg: Working as a teacher provides her with a stable income

4.To juggle between jobs: chuyển công việc liên tục

Eg: His parents feel uneasy because he constantly juggle between jobs.

5.To put enormous pressure on sb/sth: đặt gánh nặng lên ai/ cái gì

Eg: Her tuition fees put enormous pressure on her parents.

6.to forgo (verb) từ bỏ

Eg: She forgwent tertiary education to get married.

7.organizational justice (noun): môi trường làm việc công bằng (tạm dịch)

Eg: organizational justice contributes a great deal to employees' performance.

8.task distribution (noun) Sự phân bố, bàn giao công việc.

Eg: She isn't pleased with task distribution in her company.

9.donkey work (idiom) các công việc nhàm chán, không cần suy nghĩ nhiều nhưng rất tốn thời gian.

Eg: Many newly-recruited employees complain that they are fed up with donkey work.

10.burgeoning (adj) booming, increasing

Eg: The new trend of miniskirts is burgeoning.

11.expertise (noun) chuyên môn.

Eg: Working in medical professions require gear expertise.

12.to lend a helping hand (idiom) giúp đỡ

Eg: I thanked my roommate for lending a helping hand when I was sick.

13. ajob fair (noun) Hội chợ việc làm

Eg: They attended several job fairs to decide on which kind of job they should apply for.

14. to land a job: có được việc làm

Eg: She landed a dream job at a prestigious law firm.

22. Describe a sports match you have watched

I am going to talk about an absurd boxing match that I watched recently. As a matter of fact, since I realized that I **was quite out of condition**, and I needed **to take up regular exercise**, I have taken up boxing to **get into shape**. This has led me to develop such fondness for the sport that I decided to go and watch a real **bout**.

As it was the final of the local tournament, the two **contestants** were both extremely competent. While we were waiting for the boxers to come into the ring, crowds of spectators started to cheer and chant enthusiastically to show their support for the two fighters, which created an atmosphere of excited **anticipation**. Eventually, after about 15 minutes, the boxers appeared. They looked incredibly muscular, and admittedly I got a bit jealous of their athletic **physique**.

Since boxing involves **a high possibility of injury, on safety grounds** both athletes were sufficiently equipped with **essential sports gear** for their protection, which may be one reason why

the sport **continues to thrive**, despite the dangers. After the introduction and rules reminder, the contest started. It was obvious that the two participants were equally talented, so they had to really **exert themselves** to win. However, just **at the height of** the contest, one boxer got a cramp and tripped unexpectedly. The fall was so sudden that he couldn't react and **ended up spraining** his wrist. Although it was not **a life-threatening injury**, it did prevent him from continuing the fight. The other fighter was then declared the winner. Everybody was **at a loss** for words, and I have to say that was the strangest match I've ever seen! It was a little disappointing, but also funny and fascinating in a way.

Despite that, I did not regret seeing that match. It was quite entertaining and valuable for me. As the boxers were remarkably skillful, I was able to learn a lot from them to improve my own skills. I will definitely watch another match in the near future.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Sports

1. to be out of condition

Meaning: to be physically unfit

Example: One of the causes of obesity is that many people **are out of condition** and fail to exercise regularly.

Dịch đại ý

To be out of condition: yếu ớt

Nghĩa: thể chất không khỏe mạnh

Ví dụ: Một trong những nguyên nhân của bệnh béo phì là do rất nhiều người yếu ớt và không chịu tập thể dục thường xuyên

2. to get into shape

Meaning: to become fit

Example: If people have a sedentary lifestyle, they must do regular exercise **to get into shape**.

Dịch đại ý

To get into shape: trở nên thon thả

Nghĩa: trở nên khỏe mạnh, thon thả

Ví dụ: Nếu con người có phong cách sống ngồi nhiều, họ phải thường xuyên tập thể dục để được thon thả

3. a high/low probability of injury

Meaning: you are very likely/not very likely to be injured

Example: If anyone plans to take up mountaineering or skydiving, they should be aware that there is **a high probability of injury**.

Dịch đại ý

A high/low probability of injury: khả năng chấn thương cao/thấp

Nghĩa: bạn có thể/không có thể bị chấn thương

Ví dụ: Nếu một ai đó có ý định thử leo núi hoặc nhảy tự do từ máy bay, họ nên ý thức rằng khả năng chấn thương sẽ cao.

4. essential sports gear

Meaning: the equipment and clothing needed to practice a particular sport

Example: In order to reduce the risks associated with dangerous sports, participants should undergo rigorous training and use all the **essential sports gear** required.

Dịch đại ý

Essential sports gear: thiết bị thể thao cần thiết

Nghĩa: thiết bị hoặc quần áo cần để có thể tập một môn thể thao cụ thể nào đó

Ví dụ: Để giảm thiểu rủi ro của các môn thể thao nguy hiểm, người chơi cần phải trải qua một khóa huấn luyện kỹ càng và sử dụng toàn bộ các thiết bị thể thao cần thiết được yêu cầu.

5. on safety grounds

Meaning: for reasons of safety

Example: Boxing is a very dangerous sport and must be outlawed **on safety grounds**.

Dịch đại ý

On safety grounds: vì lý do an toàn

Nghĩa: trên cơ sở an toàn

Ví dụ: Đấm bốc là một môn thể thao nguy hiểm và phải bị cấm vì lý do an toàn.

6. life-threatening injuries

Meaning: injuries which are so serious that the person may die

Example: Paragliding and cliff-jumping are two examples of extreme sports in which **life-threatening injuries** are sustained all too often by those who take part.

Dịch đại ý

Life-threatening injuries: chấn thương chết người

Nghĩa: chấn thương nghiêm trọng đến mức người bệnh có thể chết

Ví dụ: Dù lộn và nhảy xuống vách núi là hai ví dụ của các môn thể thao mạo hiểm mà những người chơi thường xuyên gặp phải những chấn thương chết người.

7. to exert oneself

Meaning: to make a big physical effort to do something

Example: I believe that sports professionals deserve high salaries, because constant hard training is necessary so that they can **exert themselves** to the limit when they compete.

Dịch đại ý

To exert oneself: cố gắng hết mình

Nghĩa: tập trung sức mạnh thể lực để làm điều gì đó

Ví dụ: Tôi tin rằng các vận động viên thể thao xứng đáng có được một mức lương cao bởi thường xuyên luyện tập nặng nhọc là cần thiết để họ có thể cố gắng hết giới hạn của mình trong khi thi đấu.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Traditional vs Modern

1. to continue to thrive

Meaning: to continue to grow, to develop, or to be successful

Example: His business **continues to thrive**, in spite of the economic crisis.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Health

1. to take up regular exercise

Meaning: to do some physical activity on a regular basis

Example: Authorities should encourage people of all ages **to take regular exercise** by providing facilities in each community.

Part 3

What is the most popular sport in Vietnam? Why?

Football is the most popular sport in Vietnam and it is played by many hundreds of thousands of Vietnamese. You can see mini football fields in the cities, provinces and villages. The main reasons why football is loved in Vietnam is that it's cheap to play and can be played almost anywhere. An empty space and a kickable round item easily **stirs** the local excitement and leads to a football

match. Another reason may be the fact that football has a pretty simple set of rules. Although some have difficulty in understanding **offside** rules, the game is still very simple to understand.

What is the least popular sport for Vietnamese people?

I can't say for sure, but I guess **extreme sports** like bungee jumping or para-surfing are the least popular choices of Vietnamese people due to the lack of **essential sports gear** and the fear of **life-threatening injuries**.

What kind of sport do you like? Why?

Actually, I have **had a go** at a lot of kinds of sports. Among them, running captured my heart. I love running because it lets me clear my mind and explore my surroundings. The more I run, the more I see my running improve and that is such an awesome feeling of accomplishment. Running has taught me how to push beyond my limits and has proven to me that if I **exert myself**, I can and will achieve my goals.

How can more people be encouraged to participate in sports activities?

There are a number of ways in which we should **strive** to promote healthy active living. First, 'word of mouth' is the best way to attract people to take up a sport. Second, advertising in the media is another very effective approach. Governments should **allocate resources** to advertise in the media and **broadcast propaganda** every day about the advantages of participation in sports activities.

Why do some teenagers like to watch sport but do not take part in any sports ?

For youth to participate in physical activities there are many factors that come into play. Some barriers that can be named are personal barriers and environmental barriers. Personal barriers include motivation, lack of time, energy levels, and being **addicted to a sedentary lifestyle**, while environmental barriers such as a lack of facilities, unsafe neighborhoods, weather and occupation also influence lack of participation in sport. Because of those barriers, it's much easier to watch sports than to participate in a sport.

What is the benefit for people of doing sport?

Apart from the health benefits of **getting into shape** that everyone knows, sports help participants develop discipline. They learn to set goals and then work to achieve those goals. They learn that by working hard they can accomplish the things that they want to in their lives. If it is a team sport, it can help players to have **endurance**, quickness and even teach them how **to be a team player** and

work in groups. These sports also teach participants how to communicate with their teammates, building bonds of friendship which may last a lifetime.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Sports and Exercise

1. extreme sports

Meaning: a sporting activity which is very dangerous

Example: Personally, I cannot understand why some people take up an **extreme sport**, and they should consider all the risks first.

2. essential sports gear

Meaning: the equipment and clothing needed to practice a particular sport

Example: In order to reduce the risks associated with dangerous sports, participants should undergo rigorous training and use all the **essential sports gear** required.

3. life-threatening injuries

Meaning: injuries which are so serious that the person may die

Example: Paragliding and cliff-jumping are two examples of extreme sports in which life-threatening injuries are sustained all too often by those who take part.

4. exert oneself

Meaning: to make a big physical effort to do something

Example: I believe that sports professionals deserve high salaries, because constant hard training is necessary so that they can **exert themselves** to the limit when they compete.

5. to get into shape

Meaning: to keep fit

Example: My brother has decided that he needs **to get into shape**, so he has started going to the gym twice a week.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Media

1. broadcast propaganda

Meaning: to send out a programme on television or radio that may be false or exaggerated in order to gain support for a political leader, a party etc

Example: The media in North Korea **broadcast propaganda** every day about the dangers of war with South Korea and the USA.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Government

1. **allocate resources to**

Meaning: to make money and materials available to do something

Example: Governments must **allocate resources to** improving public transport in order to deal with traffic problems.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Health

1. **to be addicted to**

Meaning: to be unable to stop doing something as a habit

Example: Children these days seem **to be addicted to** computer games, spending hours playing them.

2. **a sedentary lifestyle**

Meaning: a way of life with little exercise or physical activity

Example: **A sedentary lifestyle** is a major factor in health problems such as obesity and heart disease.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Communication and Personality

1. **to be a team player**

Meaning: to be a person who willingly cooperates with others

Example: Employees who **are good team players** are more likely to be chosen for promotion.

Các từ khác

1. **stir**

[verb] to make somebody feel excited or strongly emotional

Eg: The arrival of the teams on the pitch **stirred** the excitement of the crowd

2. **offside**

[adj] (in particular sports, especially football and hockey) in a position that is not allowed by the rules of the game, often in front of the ball

Eg: James scored a goal, but it was not allowed because he was obviously **offside** when he received the ball.

3. **have a go**

[idiom] to try to do something

Eg: Tyler is **having a go** at starting a career in music.

4. **strive**

[verb] to try very hard to do something or to make something happen, especially for a long time or against difficulties

Eg: The President has made promises that he must now **strive** to live up to.

5. **endurance**

[noun] the ability to keep doing something difficult, unpleasant, or painful for a long time

Eg: Running a marathon is a test of human **endurance**.

23. **Describe an important change in your life.**

You should say

what it was about

how it affected your life

and explain why this was an important change in your life.

Going to university has been a turning point in my life. Personally, university life is a fresh start for me. I parted from my family, I said goodbye to the mountain town where I was born and went on a journey that taught me a great deal.

Luckily, I did not suffer from homesickness like most of my friends did, yet I was thrilled to **hold myself accountable for** my own life. It was the perfect chance for me to grow up. Without my parents, I had to take care of my body and mind on my own. I quitted the **sedentary lifestyle** I had been leading since high-school years and **took regular exercise**, I even **adopted a fitness regime, working out at the gym** twice a week. I replaced **junk food** with **healthy eating habits**.

Whenever I had **mental health problems**, I sought help from my friends who **offered me emotional support** and guided me through my struggles. I was no longer **addicted to social networking sites** since the **heavy workload** and commitments I had from my studies and social life occupied most of my time.

The changes that university brought to me are indeed tremendous and significant. I have grown into a much more mature and responsible version of myself. I will forever be thankful for this precious time at university.

Vocabulary:

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Health:

1. sedentary lifestyle

Meaning: involving little exercise or physical activity

Example: A **sedentary lifestyle** is a major factor in health problems such as obesity and heart disease.

Dịch đại ý

Sedentary lifestyle: phong cách sống thiếu vận động

Nghĩa: ít hoặc gần như không tập thể thao và các hoạt động tay chân khác

Ví dụ: Sống thiếu vận động là yếu tố chính dẫn đến các vấn đề về sức khỏe như béo phì và các bệnh về tim.

2. to take regular exercise

Meaning: to do some physical activity on a regular basis

Example: Authorities should encourage people of all ages **to take regular exercise** by providing facilities in each community.

Dịch đại ý

To take regular exercise: tập thể dục thường xuyên

Nghĩa: thực hiện một số hoạt động tay chân hàng ngày

Ví dụ: Chính quyền nên khuyến khích người dân ở mọi lứa tuổi tập thể dục thường xuyên bằng cách cung cấp trang thiết bị cho mỗi khu dân cư.

3. to adopt a fitness regime

Meaning: a method or routine of taking regular exercise

Example: Even elderly people can **adopt a fitness regime** by taking light exercise such as walking or jogging.

Dịch đại ý

A fitness regime: chế độ tập luyện

Nghĩa: 1 phương pháp hay thói quen luyện tập thường xuyên

Ví dụ: Ngay cả người già cũng có thể có chế độ tập luyện bằng cách tập các bài tập nhẹ như đi bộ.

4. healthy eating habits

Meaning: eating healthy food at regular times of the day

Example: Health education involves teaching people about **healthy eating habits**, such as regular mealtimes and eating fruit and vegetables every day.

Dịch đại ý

Healthy eating habits: thói quen ăn uống lành mạnh

Nghĩa: ăn thức ăn tốt cho sức khỏe vào đúng giờ giấc

Ví dụ: Giáo dục sức khỏe cần dạy cho mọi người thói quen ăn uống lành mạnh, như là giờ ăn hợp lý và cần ăn rau và trái cây mỗi ngày.

5. mental health problems

Meaning: related to illnesses of one's mind

Example: Overwork may sometimes result in **mental health problems**, such as anxiety and depression.

6. to offer emotional support

Meaning: to give counselling and advice to someone who is suffering from a mental health problem.

Example: Some schools in Europe now **offer emotional support** to children who are the victims of bullying.

7. to be addicted to something

Meaning: to have a habit of being involved with something, so that you come to depend on it

Example: I don't know which is worse – **to be addicted to** alcohol, tobacco, drugs or the Internet !

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Work

1. a heavy workload

Meaning: having many tasks to perform

Example: Many employees of the company take time off work because of illness and stress due to the **heavy workload**.

Dịch đại ý

A heavy workload: khối lượng công việc lớn

Nghĩa: có nhiều nhiệm vụ cần làm

Ví dụ: Rất nhiều nhân viên của công ty đã xin nghỉ do ốm đau và áp lực tới từ khối lượng công việc quá lớn.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Environment

1. to hold sbdy accountable for + noun/gerund

Meaning: to consider someone responsible for something; to blame something on someone

Example: Companies which discharge chemical waste from their factories into the sea or into rivers must be **held accountable for** their actions and be fined heavily.

Dịch đại ý

To hold sb accountable for: đổ trách nhiệm cho ai

Nghĩa: coi ai đó có trách nhiệm cho cái gì/ đổ lỗi cho ai về chuyện gì đó

Ví dụ: Các công ty xả rác thải hóa chất từ nhà máy ra biển hoặc sông hồ cần phải chịu trách nhiệm cho hành động của mình và bị phạt nặng.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Food and Diet

1. junk food

Meaning: food that is quick and easy to prepare, but that is considered to be bad for your health

Example: The consumption of too much **junk food** is a major factor in the increase in childhood obesity.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Sport and Exercise

1. to work out at the gym

Meaning: to train the body by physical exercise at the gym

Example: In order to keep fit and healthy, everyone should **work out at the gym** regularly.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Communication and Personality

1. social networking sites

Meaning: websites on which you communicate with people who share your interests

Example: Young people today waste too much time on **social networking sites** such as Facebook or Twitter.

Part 3

1. Is your country changing rapidly?

Actually, **technological breakthroughs** have brought radical changes to Vietnam in the past few decades. At home, **labour-saving appliances** such as washing machines or dishwashers have facilitated household chores. Besides, portable electrical devices namely smart phones, laptops or tablet computers are ubiquitous all over the country. Most of them are even developed by Apple and Samsung, who are **ahead of the game** in the digital market. Obviously, Vietnam is adapting to global **advances in technology** at a breakneck pace.

2. What can a smart phone do these days?

It is beyond a shadow of a doubt that people can derive substantial benefits from smart phones. First and foremost, they offer a wide range of communication tools such as video calls, **text-messaging** and **video conferencing**, rather than the conventional voice calls. Furthermore, if people are desperate for a source of entertainment after brain numbing office hours, smart phones **come in handy**. They can play video games, go **online shopping** or even carry out **e-commerce** on the spot. In the modern world, besides youngsters, a section of the old generation have become real **silver surfers** as they are so **engrossed in** the cyber world, scrolling down the screen to update the latest news or chatter with friends.

3. Since most people do work on their computer, why do they still need to go to offices?

As a matter of fact, the number of those who are **computer-literate** is increasing, leading to the prevalence of working from home. However, personally speaking, it is essential for them to go to the office. The first reason is about human communication. Long hours spent in a computer-based **working environment** really **discourages real interaction** while in the workplace, colleagues can exchange words and enhance their interpersonal skills. Even, **becoming over-reliant on** computers could trigger a mental illness such as autism if workers **segregate themselves from** the human contact in the long run.

4. Do you think people's work in the future will be heavily affected by technology?

Yes, of course. The boom in technology may bring about both positive and negative impacts on people's work in the future. On the one hand, **robotics technology** will greatly boost **labour productivity** in manufacturing and workers may enjoy a superior **working environment** when the

workplace is **computerized** and equipped with **state-of-the-art** facilities. On the other end of the scale, the introduction of new-fangled technological tools could be at the expense of an accelerating rate of unemployment. As the workforce is **superseded** by modern machines, more blue-collar workers will be **dismissed** and, as a result, fall prey to social evils.

5. Compare the pace of technological progress in the past and now.

Compared to technological advances in the past, those of the present are much more rapid. It takes even less than one year for an Iphone version to be introduced and people keep **following suit**, **forking out money** in order not to buy things which are **obsolete**. Whereas in the past, television, for example, took several decades to be invented. To me this is understandable because technology in the olden days was **in its infancy** so it took ages for new inventions to be brought to life, which became the backbone for modern applications to develop in **leaps and bounds**.

Vocabulary

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Technology:

a technological breakthrough [noun] (một đột phá về công nghệ): an important new discovery in technology

Eg: The development of the micro-chip was a technological breakthrough which transformed the way in which people communicate.

advances in technology [expression] (tiến bộ công nghệ): the improvement or development in technology

Eg: Recent advances in medical technology are making a great contribution to the search for a cure for Aids.

video conferencing [noun] (hội thoại thấy hình): to see and discuss with people in different locations using the Internet.

Eg: In the worlds of business and education, video conferencing has enabled people to exchange ideas without travelling across the world.

labour-saving appliances [noun] (thiết bị tiết kiệm sức lao động): machines that reduce the amount of work or effort needed to do something.

Eg: The technological revolution in the home started with the introduction of labour-saving appliances such as washing machines and dishwashers.

e-commerce [noun] (giao dịch thông qua mạng Internet): buying and selling products or services using the internet

Eg: Businesses which rely on e-commerce make huge savings on offices, retail outlets and rents paid to landlords who own high-street properties.

online shopping [noun] (mua sắm trực tuyến): shopping while connected to the internet

Eg: For people who are physically disabled, or even for people who are simply very busy, online shopping is convenient and may also be cheaper.

text-messaging [noun] (gửi tin nhắn văn bản): the act of sending written messages using a mobile/cell phone

Eg: The ability to write using accurate grammar is declining, partly as a result of text-messaging instead of writing letters.

robotics technology [noun] (công nghệ rô bốt): the design, construction and operation of robots

Eg: There are examples of robotics technology everywhere, from space programs to manufacturing.

to be in its infancy [expression] (đang trong thời kì thai nghén): to be in the early development of something

Eg: It is clear that robotics technology is still in its infancy, and it is impossible to imagine the possible future developments

to become over-reliant on [expression] (quá phụ thuộc vào): to need something so that your survival or success depends too much on it

Eg: Businesses have become over-reliant on complicated computer systems, so that if these systems fail the results will be disastrous.

to become obsolete [expression] (trở nên lỗi thời): to be no longer used because something new has been invented

Eg: Technological innovation is now so rapid, that even the latest electronic devices soon become obsolete.

to be computer-literate [expression] (sử dụng thành thạo máy tính): able to use computers well

Eg: In today's competitive job market, it is essential to be computer-literate.

to computerize something [verb] (máy tính hoá): to provide a computer or computers to do the work

Eg: The factory has been fully computerized, enabling it to produce more efficiently.

silver surfer [noun] (người già dùng mạng): an old person who spends a lot of time using the Internet

Eg: Although young people are often more computer-literate than the older generation, nevertheless there are many silver surfers who use the internet all the time.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Reading:

to be engrossed in [expression] (mê mải vào cái gì): to be completely focused on something

Eg: A good work-life balance is important, because if people are too **engrossed in their work** their family life may suffer.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Work:

Labor productivity [noun] (năng suất lao động): the rate at which a worker, a company or a country produces goods, and the amount produced, compared with how much time, work and money is needed to produce them

Eg: Wage rates depend on levels of labor productivity.

Working environment [noun] (môi trường làm việc): the conditions that you work in

Eg: If work is to be enjoyable, then a friendly working environment is essential.

To dismiss somebody (from something) [verb] (sa thải ai): to officially remove somebody from their job

Eg: Employment legislation prevents employers from dismissing an employee without a good reason.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Society:

segregate somebody (from somebody) [verb] (cô lập một ai đó): to separate people of different races, religions or sexes and treat them in a different way.

Eg: Although society no longer tolerates the policy of segregating whites from blacks, many people of different origins live in their own separate communities.

Từ vựng khác:

ahead of the game [expression] (chiếm vị trí dẫn đầu): ahead of one's competitors or peers in the same sphere of activity.

Eg: Coca cola has been ahead of the game in the beverage market for years.

follow suit [expression] (làm theo, a dua): to do the same thing

Eg: When one airline reduces its ticket prices, the rest usually follow suit.
come in handy (trở nên hữu dụng): to be useful.

Eg: I think that this gadget will come in handy in the kitchen.

state-of-the-art [adj] (hiện đại): using the most modern or advanced techniques or methods; as good as it can be at the present time

Eg: The Physics Department has state of the art facilities what with the computer and projector.

new-fangled [adjective] (mới lạ và độc đáo): different from what one is used to; objectionably new.

Eg: I really don't understand these newfangled computergames that my grandchildrenplay.

leaps and bounds [expression] (nhanh chóng): rapidly; by large movements forward

Eg: The profits of my company are increasing by leaps and bounds.

24. Describe a person who gave a clever solution to a problem.

You should say:

who this person is

what the problem was

how he/she solved the problem

why you think their solution was clever.

I will tell you about the occasion when my roommate once saved my day. Though she was not **keen on** cooking, she helped me out of a tough problem in the kitchen. So here's the story.

That afternoon, I was making a cake as a gift for my boyfriend, because he loves **home-made food**. Since I had been baking for several months, I was rather confident and I didn't even need **to follow the recipe**. When my roommate asked if she could watch and learn from me, I proudly agreed. All was going well. After almost two hours of hard work, my cake came out of the oven, smelling and looking incredible. I just couldn't wait to decorate and finish it. Unfortunately, when I was **glazing** it with chocolate, I didn't **take into consideration the fact that** the cake was still hot. Normally I would let it cool down, yet my eagerness made me totally forget the simplest rule of glazing. The chocolate turned my hot cake into a liquidy and sopping mash of flour. It was **catastrophic**! With a heart **swollen with** desperation, I was about to throw it all away when my roommate suggested: "How about cutting it into smaller pieces and baking it again? Maybe it would turn out crispy, just like cookies!"

I **gasped** and did as she said immediately. We both **stooped** down and looked at the oven with anticipation. And she was right! My cake was not soft and light as intended, yet the flavor was preserved and the added crunch was so unexpected. I was half delighted, half embarrassed since I had **had a superiority complex** whenever I showed her how to cook. That she had been **hiding her light under a bushel** pleasantly surprised me. Her solution was simple yet it **worked like a charm**. From then on, she has been my cooking buddy and her cleverness continues to **leave me in awe**.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Food and Diet

1. home-made food

Meaning: food which is made at home using individual ingredients

Example: I much prefer **home-made food** to eating out in restaurants.

2. to follow a recipe

Meaning: to cook something using instructions

Example: Whether you **follow a recipe** or invent your own meal, cooking is very satisfying.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Communication and Personality

1. to hide one's light under a bushel

Meaning: to conceal one's talents and skills

Example: Please don't hide your light under a bushel—the Society needs your valuable expertise.

Dịch đại ý

To hide one's light under a bushel: giấu tài

Nghĩa: che giấu tài năng của ai đó

Ví dụ: Xin đừng che giấu tài năng của anh – xã hội cần những kiến thức vô giá của anh.

2. to have a superiority complex

Meaning: to have a feeling that one is superior to others

Example: She **has a superiority complex**, imagining that she is somehow better at everything than her classmates.

Dịch đại ý

To have a superiority complex: phức cảm tự tôn (ngược với phức cảm tự ti – inferiority complex)

Nghĩa: có suy nghĩ, cảm xúc rằng mình vượt trội hơn người khác

Ví dụ: Cô ấy có phức cảm tự tôn, ảo tưởng rằng cô ấy tốt hơn về mọi mặt so với các bạn cùng lớp.

Các từ thuộc chủ đề **Business and Money**

1. to take something into consideration/ account

Meaning: to consider or remember something when judging a situation

Example: No business will succeed if it fails **to take** the needs of customers **into account**/into consideration.

Dịch đại ý

To take something into consideration/account: xem xét cái gì

Nghĩa: xem xét hay nhớ tới cái gì khi đánh giá 1 vấn đề, 1 tình huống

Ví dụ: Việc kinh doanh không thể thành công nếu như không xem xét đến nhu cầu của khách hàng.

Các từ khác

1.to be keen on sth: to be very interested in sth

Eg: My classmates are very **keen on** pop music, but I prefer jazz.

2.catastrophic (adj): causing a lot of damage and suffering

Eg: Did you hear about the **catastrophic** earthquake in Japan?

3.to swell with(phrasal verb): to be filled with a strong emotion

Eg: Her heart **swelled with** rage when she discovered that someone had been using her credit card.

4.gasp (v): to take a quick deep breath with your mouth open, especially because you are surprised or in pain

Eg: I **gasped** in amazement at the brilliance of her idea.

5. to stoop (v) to bend your body forwards and downwards

Eg: When I dropped my wallet, I **stooped** down to pick it up.

6.to work like a charm: to work very effectively

Eg: This herbal tea should help you to sleep – it **works like a charm!**

7.to leave sb in awe: admire somebody/something and be slightly frightened of them/it

Eg: After listening to her playing the piano, I **was left in awe** of her musical talent.

Part 3

1.Do you think children's wisdom is influenced by their parents? What about those who aren't?

It is obvious that parents play the key role in **shaping their personalities**. During their **formative years**, offspring, driven by their imitative instinct, mimic **patterns of behaviours** from their parents. For instance, frequent exposure to **domestic violence** can turn a child into an aggressive adult. As regards exceptional cases, children's wisdom could stem from their living condition or **peer pressure**. For example, if a friend of theirs play truant, there is great likelihood that they may **follow suit**.

2.Do you think children have good habits nowadays? Why?

To be honest, I do not think that our young minds are leading a healthy lifestyle nowadays. With the advance of technology, most of them are equipped with **leading-edge technology** such as a smart phone, tablet computer or personal computer. Because youngsters can become **out of their depth** with the potential risks of electrical devices, they become increasingly **engrossed in** the **cyber world**, which **discourages real interaction** and results in a **sedentary lifestyle**. In contrast, children in the past **took regular exercise** during outdoor activities and were really **full of beans**.

3.Why are children cleverer than before? Nature or nurture? Why?

In my opinion, superior intellectual ability among children should now mostly be attributed to nurture. Except for those from **poverty-stricken** areas, most children are now receiving a **diet rich in** protein, vitamins and omega 3, along with a proper education from infancy, enabling their intelligence to progress.

4.What kind of skills are helpful for children? Why?

Concerning helpful skills for children, I think survival skills are **quintessential**. Some children might be academically excellent but they lack certain abilities when it comes to escaping **life-threatening injuries** in an earthquake, fire and drowning. Such skills should be given priority in a formal education at school so that children, the **shapers of a nation's tomorrow**, could secure their lives first before contributing to the country's prosperity.

5.Do you think parents should send their children to better schools? Why?

Personally speaking, a **well-rounded** education is what every parent is targeting but enrollment into a so-called better school is not always the case. Indeed, what counts most in a child's cognitive development is **parental involvement**. Whatever the type of formal education, parents could also

implement homeschooling for children to **study under their supervision**. Additionally, moulding the young's morality and individuality should mostly be shouldered by parents. Moreover, the choice of school really depends on financial status and the particular needs of each couple, which greatly varies in society.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Family and Children:

to shape a child's personality/ value [expression](hình thành tính cách): to decide or influence the form of a child's personality.

Eg: Parents are very influential in shaping their children's personality through the example that they set.

formative years [noun] (giai đoạn hình thành): A period of a person's life, usually childhood, that has a big influence on the person they become later in life

Eg: UNICEF states that the early childhood years from birth through to age 8 are formative years in terms of intelligence, personality and social behavior.

patterns of behavior [noun] (đặc trưng hành vi): ways of acting and doing things (either positive or negative)

Eg: Patterns of behaviour copied from parents often influence the way that children grow up.

shapers of a nation's tomorrow [expression] (chủ nhân tương lai của đất nước): refers to young generations who decide a nation's future

Eg: Celebrating children's month reminds us about the importance of children being the creators and shapers of a nation's tomorrow.

parental involvement [noun] (sự tham gia của bố mẹ): the act or process of parents when taking part in their children's activities.

Eg: Parental involvement allows parents to monitor school and classroom activities, and to coordinate their efforts with teachers to encourage acceptable classroom behavior and ensure that the child completes schoolwork.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Society:

domestic violence [noun] (bạo lực gia đình): violence among family members in the home

Eg: Children who witness domestic violence between parents often develop problems.

to be poverty-stricken [adjective] (kinh tế khó khăn): to be extremely poor, having almost no money

Eg: Many non-government organisations work with people who are poverty-stricken in developing countries.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Sport and Exercise:

Life-threatening injuries [noun] (chấn thương chết người): injuries which are so serious that the person may die.

Eg: Paragliding and cliff-jumping are two examples of extreme sports in which life-threatening injuries are sustained all too often by those who take part.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Health:

to take regular exercise [expression] (tập thể dục thường xuyên): to do some physical activity on a regular basis

Eg: Authorities should encourage people of all ages to take regular exercise by providing facilities in each community.

sedentary lifestyle [noun] (lối sống thiếu vận động): involving little exercise or physical activity

Eg: A sedentary lifestyle is a major factor in health problems such as obesity and heart disease.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Reading:

to be engrossed in [expression] (mê mải vào cái gì): to be completely focused on something

Eg: A good work-life balance is important, because if people are too **engrossed in their work** their family life may suffer.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Education:

to work/study under supervision [expression] (làm việc dưới sự hướng dẫn của ai): work/ study under the direction of a responsible person

Eg: At college, I discovered I did not have **to work under supervision** all the time, and I was free to do independent research.

to be out of one's depth [expression] (vượt quá khả năng nhận thức): to be unable to understand something because it is too difficult

Eg: Streaming in schools enables pupils to study at the level which is appropriate for them, and therefore students rarely find themselves out of their depth.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Technology:

discourage real interaction [expression] (cản trở sự tương tác trực tiếp): to result in less face-to-face communication with other people

Eg: the availability of new communication technologies may also have the result of isolating people and discouraging real interaction

leading-edge technology [expression] (công nghệ hàng đầu tiên tiến nhất): the most advanced position in technology

Eg: Manufacturers of electronic devices always advertise their products as having the latest leading-edge/cutting-edge technology.

Các từ vựng khác:

Peer pressure [noun] (áp lực từ bạn bè): social pressure by members of one's peer group to take a certain action, adopt certain values, or otherwise conform in order to be accepted

Eg: Peer pressure is a double-edged blade to students.

follow suit [expression] (làm theo, a dua): to do the same thing

Eg: When one airline reduces its ticket prices, the rest usually follow suit.

cyber world [noun] (thế giới ảo trên mạng): a virtual world created by the Internet

Eg: Nowadays more people are enslaving themselves to the cyber world while isolating themselves from reality.

To be full of beans [idiom] (hào hứng, năng động): lively; in high spirits

Eg: My dog becomes full of beans whenever I come back home.

Quintessential [adjective] (quan trọng nhất): the most important, representing the perfect example of something

Eg: a diet rich in fiber is quintessential for any vegetarians.

well-rounded [adjective] (toàn diện): providing or showing a variety of experience, ability, etc.

Eg: a well-rounded education should enrich both intellectual ability and spiritual life.

25. Describe an English class you enjoy

I am going to talk about a lesson in English that I enjoyed when I was still in high school. I had missed several lessons before that due to my absence, which **stemmed from** sickness, so I **was falling behind with** my studies. Therefore, my uncle, who is an online English tutor, offered me a lesson to help me catch up.

Although I was a bit **set in my ways**, and I had doubts about this comparatively new teaching method, the lesson went amazingly well. We communicated by means of an online video call and he gave me instructions and studying materials via email. As I was **missing out on** quite a few in-class lessons, my online class had to **cover a lot of ground**. I had to learn many new words for the topic “Politics”, which was quite exhausting for me because I did not have any interest in such matters. Then we went on to revise ‘inversion’, which is also a tricky grammatical point. However, as it was a private tutor lesson, my uncle had **tailored his teaching style** to suit my ability to take in information. Knowing that I would get bored easily, he integrated a lot of **visual aids** and discussion into the lesson to keep my attention. At the end of the lesson, he gave me a short quiz to ensure that I **had a good grasp of** what I had just learnt.

The thing that fascinated me most was the level of **interactive learning** that I experienced in my online lesson. It is commonly believed that online learning hinders the interaction between teacher and students, but I think that such an attitude is **behind the times**. When studying online, I feel more relaxed, which enables me to participate more actively in discussions and activities with my teacher. Moreover, with the advantage of time and cost saving, I think online lessons actually surpass **face-to-face learning** in efficiency.

Vocabulary

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Education:

1. to fall behind with your studies

Meaning: to improve more slowly in studying than other people, so that you fail to learn the course material at the necessary speed

Example: Irregular attendance at classes is one of reasons why some students **fall behind with their studies**.

Dịch đại ý

To fall behind with your studies: học đuối

Nghĩa: chậm tiến bộ trong việc học hơn người khác nên bạn không theo kịp việc học ở tiến độ cần thiết

Ví dụ: Thường xuyên vắng mặt ở lớp là một trong những lí do khiến học sinh học đuối hơn các bạn.

2. to cover a lot of ground

Meaning: to deal with a lot of information and many facts.

Example: The history lecture **covered a lot of ground** today.

Dịch đại ý

To cover a lot of ground: sử dụng rất nhiều tài liệu

Nghĩa: sử dụng nhiều thông tin, sự thật và tài liệu khác nhau

Ví dụ: Bài giảng lịch sử hôm nay sử dụng rất nhiều tài liệu.

3. to tailor teaching styles/ strategies

Meaning: to make or adapt teaching styles for a particular person or purpose

Example: When faced with classes of students with different levels of ability, teachers should **tailor their teaching strategies** to deal with this challenge.

Dịch đại ý

To tailor teaching styles: biến đổi phương pháp dạy học

Nghĩa: xây dựng phương pháp dạy học theo nhu cầu cụ thể

Ví dụ: Khi phải dạy những lớp có học sinh có trình độ khác nhau, giáo viên cần biến đổi phương pháp dạy để đối mặt với khó khăn này.

4. to have a good grasp of something

Meaning: to understand something thoroughly

Example: Children who begin to learn a foreign language in primary school are usually able **to have a good grasp of** the new language quickly.

Dịch đại ý

To have a good grasp of sth: thấu hiểu/ nắm bắt cái gì

Nghĩa: hiểu việc gì đó 1 cách toàn diện và sâu sắc

Ví dụ: Trẻ em mới bắt đầu học ngoại ngữ tại trường tiểu học thường sẽ nắm bắt được ngôn ngữ mới rất nhanh chóng.

5. interactive learning

Meaning: Refers to a method of teaching and learning in which teachers ask questions in class, assign and check homework, or hold class or group discussions.

Example: With or without the aid of technology, **interactive learning** helps students strengthen problem solving and critical thinking skills.

Dịch đại ý

Interactive learning: hình thức học tương tác

Nghĩa: phương pháp dạy và học mà trong đó giáo viên đưa ra câu hỏi, giao và kiểm tra bài tập về nhà và tổ chức các buổi thảo luận tại lớp.

Ví dụ: Dù có hay không sự hỗ trợ của công nghệ, hình thức học tương tác giúp học sinh cải thiện khả năng giải quyết vấn đề và tăng tư duy phản biện.

6. face-to-face learning

Meaning: to study in the traditional way in a classroom with fellow students and a teacher

Example: **Face-to-face learning** motivates students and encourages interaction in the classroom.

Dịch đại ý

Face-to-face learning: học trực tiếp

Nghĩa: học theo cách truyền thống trong 1 lớp học có bạn bè và giáo viên dạy học

Ví dụ: Học trực tiếp tạo động lực học cho học sinh và kích thích sự tương tác trong lớp học.

Từ vựng chủ đề Environment:

1. to stem from

Meaning: to be caused by

Example: Scientists say that global warming partly **stems from** the increase in car exhaust emissions.

Dịch đại ý

To stem from: bắt nguồn từ

Nghĩa: được tạo ra bởi cái gì

Ví dụ: Các nhà khoa học cho rằng sự nóng lên toàn cầu 1 phần bắt nguồn từ lượng khí thải của xe ô tô tăng lên.

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Communication:

1. to be set in one's ways

Meaning: to be stubborn and unwilling to change the way in which you do things

Example: As people get older, they often become **set in their ways** and reluctant to try anything new.

2. behind the times

Meaning: old-fashioned and not adapted to modern customs, behaviour or beliefs

Example: All the machinery was old and the production methods of the company were obviously inefficient and **behind the times**.

Từ vựng khác:

1. miss out on [phr.v]: to fail to benefit from something useful or enjoyable by not taking part in it

Ex: Of course I'm coming—I don't want to miss out on all the fun!

Nghĩa: bỏ lỡ

VD: Đương nhiên tôi sẽ tới – Tôi không muốn bỏ lỡ cuộc vui!

2. Visual aid [n]: a picture, video, etc. used in teaching to help people to learn or understand something

Ex: The use of visual aids will enliven your lesson.

Nghĩa: các phương tiện minh họa

VD: Việc sử dụng các phương tiện minh họa sẽ làm bài giảng của bạn sinh động.

Part 3

1. Are you learning a foreign language? Why?

Yes, I am learning English. In practical terms, learning a foreign language helps to broaden your opportunity to become a global citizen. Without knowing at least one foreign language, you cannot communicate with other people around the world.

2. Do you want to become a foreign language teacher in the future? Why?

Yes, if I could. Being a foreign language teacher, I could help others **assimilate knowledge** of a foreign language in an **effective** way.

3. Why do some people learn quickly while others are slow?

I think it depends on our nature. Some people are **innately** good at languages while others find it much harder **to master a new language**.

4. Do you think grammar is important when you learn a foreign language? Why?

Well, it is quite important because grammar is the **foundation** of all languages. However, the way you apply grammar into daily conversation is just as **crucial**.

5. Why are there strong demands for language skills?

You have **to see the big picture**. I think there are strong demands for language skills nowadays mainly because of business. English, for example, has become **the universal language** of commerce and the tourism industry.

6. Do you think foreigners should learn Vietnamese when they arrive at Vietnam?

I think they should learn some basic sentences to prevent **misunderstanding** when travelling in Vietnam. It will be more enjoyable if you know how to ask the locals about things in their country and it will break down some of **the language barriers** if you learn a few phrases simply **to get by**.

7. What kind of qualities should a language teacher have?

In addition to **linguistic ability** and the ability **to speak fluently** in the language they are teaching, teachers must be patient and **dedicated** to the needs of their students.

8. Why do people want to learn a foreign language?

As a matter of fact, **acquiring a foreign language** will be really **beneficial** for their education or future career. Moreover, we all need to communicate and travel to other places.

VOCABULARY:

CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ COMMUNICATION AND PERSONALITY (sách collocations)

1. **to assimilate knowledge**

Meaning: to absorb and understand knowledge

Example: Some people claim that children **assimilate knowledge** more easily than adults, citing studies into the way that young children learn.

Dịch đại ý

To assimilate knowledge: tiếp nhận kiến thức

Nghĩa: tiếp thu và hiểu được kiến thức

Ví dụ: Một số người khẳng định rằng trẻ em tiếp thu kiến thức dễ dàng hơn người lớn, căn cứ vào những nghiên cứu về cách trẻ nhỏ học tập.

2. to see the big picture

Meaning: to understand all the important aspects of a situation

Example: To understand the present refugee crisis in the world, you have **to see the big picture**.

CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ LANGUAGE

1. to master a language

Meaning: to learn and understand a language completely

Example: It is impossible **to master a language** without years of studying.

2. a universal language

Meaning: a language that is used and understood everywhere

Example: English has become the **universal language** used by researchers and academics.

3. linguistic ability

Meaning: the ability to master other languages

Example: People with **linguistic ability** seem to have a natural talent, whereas most students struggle for many years to achieve fluency in a language.

4. to speak fluently

Meaning: to speak easily and well

Example: Interaction with other English speakers on Skype is a very effective way to learn **to speak more fluently**.

5. to acquire a foreign language

Meaning: to be able to communicate in a new language as a result of your own efforts

Example: It takes many years of study **to acquire a foreign language**, therefore students have to be very motivated to learn.

CÁC TỪ KHÁC:

1. broaden [v]: to increase knowledge, experience: mở rộng

Eg: Many people agree that travel **broadens** the mind.

2. effective [adj]: producing a successful result : hiệu quả

Eg: Aspirin is a highly **effective** treatment for headaches.

3. innately [adv]: in a natural way, from the time that you were born: một cách tự nhiên, bẩm sinh

Eg: he believes that his children are **innately** smart.

4. **foundation** [n]: a principle that sth is based on and that it grows from : nền móng

Eg: Respect provides a solid **foundation** for marriage.

5. **crucial** [adj]: extremely important: thứ yếu, quan trọng

Eg: This is a crucial decision for all of us.

6. **misunderstanding** [n]: a situation in which a comment is not understood correctly : sự hiểu nhầm

Eg: There was an argument as a result of a **misunderstanding** between my two brothers.

7. **to get by** [phrasal verb] to manage to do something using the knowledge that you have

Eg: I can **get by** with difficulty when I try to speak French.

8. **dedicated** [adj] working hard at something because it is very important to you

Eg: He is very **dedicated** to his work, always arriving early and leaving late.

9. **beneficial** [adj]: having a helpful or useful effect : có ích

Eg: A good diet is **beneficial** to your health.

26. Describe a time when you moved to a new house or a new school.

You should say:

- When it happened
- What kind of home did you move into
- Why you moved

And explain how you felt about the moving

I want to talk about the time my family moved to a new house. It was back in 2003, I think. I was six years old at that time, just about to get into primary school.

We were an **extended family** - six people in total. With relatives keeping on coming over, either staying for a few weeks or just hanging around for several days, the old house was just too small and inconvenient for us to keep living in. Dad decided that maybe he would buy a bigger house, but

eventually he just bought the land and he had some people build a completely new house. During the construction time, Dad and Mom sometimes needed to spend time at the site, **supervising** the building work, meaning that my grandparents had to do the **child-minding** work whenever Dad and Mom were not at home.

After the house was built, only my parents, my brother and I moved to the new house. My grandparents still stayed in the old one for several more years, until they were not well enough to take care of themselves. I remember looking at what Dad called “our new home” - it was a two-**storey** house with a large front yard, perfectly suitable for plants and pets, and some space at the back so we could put our chicken there. There was a **master bedroom** in the first floor, next to the living room, for me and my parents. My brother got his own room in the second floor. There was also enormous space for the kitchen and dining room and I really loved it as we could have enough room everyone to enjoy lunch or dinner in case of **family gatherings** or, you know, “relative” gatherings.

I was excited, yet a bit sad and nervous at the same time when we moved to the new house. I was not someone who got used to new things immediately. I didn’t want to **bid** my so-called **sanctuaryfarewell**; I just had so many memories there. It took me some time to make friends with the neighbor kids, and to finally have a nice sleep in a brand-new bed in such a large room. But I managed to get used to the way the house was **furnished**, the neighbors, the streets, everything - and only then did I feel I could actually fall in love with my new “home” and enjoy living in it.

Từ vựng chủ đề Family and Children:

- **an extended family**

Meaning: a family group with many members, including parents, children, grandparents, aunts and uncles, cousins etc

Example: In the past, the **extended family** was a form of support when any members were ill or suffered some misfortune.

Dịch đại ý

An extended family: gia đình được mở rộng

Nghĩa: một gia đình với nhiều thành viên, gồm cha mẹ con cái, ông bà, các chú các bác, anh em họ,...

Ví dụ: Trước đây, gia đình mở rộng là một cách hỗ trợ lẫn nhau khi thành viên nào bị bệnh hay không may gặp vấn đề.

- **child-minding**

Meaning: caring informally (not in schools) for children when parents are busy or working

Example: Working mothers with very young children face the problem of organising **child-minding** while they are away from home.

Dịch đại ý

Child-minding: trông trẻ

Nghĩa: chăm sóc ngoài giờ học cho trẻ em khi cha mẹ đi làm hoặc bận việc

Ví dụ: Các bà mẹ đi làm mà có con nhỏ cần phải sắp xếp việc trông trẻ khi họ không có nhà.

- **a family gathering**

Meaning: a meeting of family members for a particular purpose

Example: In traditional societies, **family gatherings** are common to celebrate special occasions.

Dịch đại ý

A family gathering: tập trung gia đình

Nghĩa: 1 buổi gặp mặt của các thành viên trong gia đình vì 1 lý do cụ thể

Ví dụ: Trong xã hội trước đây, những buổi tập trung gia đình thường là để chào mừng các dịp đặc biệt.

Từ vựng khác:

- **Supervise** [verb] (to be in charge of sb/sth and make sure that everything is done correctly, safely, etc.): theo dõi, trông coi

E.g. She **supervised** the children playing by the pool.

- **Storey** [noun] (a level of a building; a floor): tầng

E.g. She lived in a two-**storey** building with two dogs and a bunch of cats.

- **Master bedroom** [noun] (the largest and/or most important bedroom): phòng ngủ lớn / quan trọng nhất

E.g. She has tons of teddy bears placed everywhere in her **master bedroom**.

- **Bid** [verb] (to say 'good morning', etc. to sb): nói (lời gì đó)

E.g. I **bade** farewell to all the friends I had made in Paris.

- **Farewell** [noun] (the act of saying goodbye to sb/sth): tạm biệt, từ biệt

E.g. She said her **farewells** and left.

- **Sanctuary** [noun] (a safe place, especially one where people who are chased or attacked can be safe and protected): nơi trú ẩn

E.g. The church became a **sanctuary** for the refugees.

- **Furnish** [verb] (to put furniture in a house, room, etc.): bày biện đồ đạc

E.g. The room was **furnished** with antiques.

27. Describe a person in history that impressed you.

You should say:

Who this person is

How you know him

what this person said or did

And explain why he/she impressed you

Among a host of **historical figures**, the one that strikes me as the most impressive must be Nelson Mandela. I first read about him in a history textbook and was deeply touched by his untiring **perseverance**.

Born in 1918, Nelson Mandela is a politician and **philanthropist** who devoted his lifetime to **campaign** for the eradication of apartheid. In South Africa, apartheid was a system that **segregated** and **discriminated against** people of different races. The policy of separate development benefited only the whites in terms of educational opportunities and decent **social services**, which led to countless **public outcries** for a revolution. Initially, the movements were brutally suppressed by the army. Nelson Mandela, who started as an **activist**, played a critical role in the **abolition** of apartheid, leading campaigns and inspiring people to fight for justice. Even though he was imprisoned for 27 years, Nelson Mandela continued his mission right after he was released. His efforts were rewarded: after fierce struggles and continuous negotiations, apartheid laws were permanently **repealed**. People were no longer treated on the grounds of a **colour bar**. Numerous positive **socio-economic changes** also came along. Nelson Mandela was awarded a Nobel Peace Prize in 1993 in recognition of his **endeavors** to unify South Africa.

The life of Nelson Mandela has taught me a **profound** lesson: “It always seems impossible until it’s done”. Overcoming all the **ostensibly** insurmountable obstacles, Nelson Mandela proved that as long as you persist in pursuing your goal, you will definitely achieve it.

Vocabulary

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Society:

1.segregate somebody (from somebody)

Meaning: to separate people of different races, religions or sexes and treat them in a different way

Example: Although society no longer tolerates the policy of **segregating** whites from blacks, many people of different origins live in their own separate communities.

Dịch đại ý

Segregate somebody (from somebody): cô lập một ai đó

Nghĩa: tách biệt người thuộc chủng tộc khác, có tôn giáo khác hoặc giới tính khác và cư xử với họ một cách khác biệt

Ví dụ: Mặc dù xã hội không còn chấp nhận các chính sách tách biệt người da đen với người da trắng, rất nhiều người có nguồn gốc khác sống trong cộng đồng riêng của họ.

2. to discriminate (on the grounds of something)

Meaning: to treat one person or group worse/better than another in an unfair way

Example: It is illegal **to discriminate** on the grounds of race, sex or religion.

Dịch đại ý

To discriminate (on the grounds of something): phân biệt (do sự khác biệt nào đó)

Nghĩa: đối xử không công bằng với một người hoặc một nhóm người tồi tệ hơn/ tốt hơn người/nhóm người khác

Ví dụ: Phân biệt chủng tộc, giới tính, hoặc tôn giáo là phạm pháp

3.social services

Meaning: a system that is organized by the government to help people who have financial or family problems; the department or the people who provide this help

Example: Governments should assist poor families through the provision of adequate **social services**.

Dịch đại ý

Social services: cơ quan dịch vụ xã hội

Nghĩa: Một hệ thống được lập ra bởi chính phủ để giúp đỡ những người gặp khó khăn về tài chính và gia đình; cơ quan xã hội hoặc những người làm việc ở đó.

Ví dụ: Chính phủ nên hỗ trợ các hộ gia đình nghèo thông qua việc thiết lập đầy đủ các cơ quan dịch vụ xã hội.

4. an outcry (at/over/against something)

Meaning: a reaction of anger or strong protest shown by people in public

Example: The new tax provoked a public **outcry**.

Dịch đại ý

An outcry(at/over/against something): sự phản đối kịch liệt, sự la ó

Nghĩa: phản ứng tức giận hoặc phản đối mạnh mẽ bởi đám đông trong xã hội

Ví dụ: Thuế mới đã tạo lên làn sóng phản đối trong cộng đồng

5. colour bar

Meaning: a social system which does not allow black people the same rights as white people

Example: South Africa's **colour bar** made marriages between different races illegal.

Dịch đại ý

Colour bar: Rào cản màu da

Nghĩa: một luật lệ xã hội không cho phép người da màu có quyền ngang bằng với người da trắng

Ví dụ: Luật rào cản màu da của Nam Phi khiến cho việc kết hôn giữa các chủng tộc là bất hợp pháp

6. socio-economic changes

Meaning: changes relating to the society and economy of a country

Example: Mass migration to cities is a result of **socio-economic changes** that include the industrialisation of agriculture.

Dịch đại ý

Socio-economic changes: các thay đổi về xã hội kinh tế

Nghĩa: Các thay đổi liên quan về xã hội và kinh tế của một quốc gia

Ví dụ: Luồng di dân lớn về các thành phố là hệ quả của các thay đổi kinh tế xã hội bao gồm cả việc hiện đại hóa nông nghiệp

Các từ thuộc chủ đề Government

1. to campaign for

Meaning: to take part in a series of activities in order to achieve a specific aim

Example: People who are concerned about the environment should **campaign for** stricter controls on pollution.

Các từ khác:

1. **historical figure** (noun) nhân vật lịch sử

Meaning: a person connected with the past

Eg: Ho Chi Minh is probably the most well-known **historical figure** in Vietnam

2. **perseverance** (noun) sự nghị lực, quyết tâm

Meaning: the quality of trying to achieve a particular aim, despite difficulties

Eg: This challenging task can only be finished with extreme **perseverance**.

3. **philanthropist** (noun): nhà bác ái

Meaning: a rich person who helps the poor and those in need, especially by giving money

Eg: Donations and help from **philanthropists** have greatly improved living standard in third-world countries.

4. **to segregate** (verb):

Meaning: to separate people of different races, religions or genders and treat them in a different way

Eg: Whites and blacks **were segregated** into different parts of the town.

5. **activist** (noun):

Meaning: a person who works to achieve political or social aims, usually as part of an organization

Eg: Animal rights **activists** invaded the laboratory and released all the animals.

6. **abolition** (noun):

Meaning: the ending of a law, a system or an institution

Eg: The protesters are demanding the **abolition** of the death penalty in the country.

7. **to repeal** (verb):

Meaning: to end a law, so that it no longer exists officially

Eg: The government **has repealed** the laws which prohibit divorce.

8. **endeavour** (noun) sự cố gắng, nỗ lực

Meaning: an attempt to do something, especially something new or difficult

Eg: His **endeavours** in studying resulted in much better grades.

9. **profound** (adj):

Meaning: very great, felt or experienced very strongly

Eg: He had a **profound** shock when he read of his father's death in the newspaper.

10. ostensibly (adv) tưởng như, dường như

Meaning: according to what seems to be true or real, when this may not actually be true or real

Eg: The **ostensibly** complex question is actually very simple.

Part 3

(tham khảo đề A historic event in your country)

28. Describe a person who was helpful to your work or study

You should say:

who this person is

how you know this person

how this person has influenced you

and explain why you admire this person.

ANSWER: (Trích đề Describe a person (you know), much older than you, who you admire.)

I would like to describe one of my teachers who taught me at high school. She had a great influence on me and was a **role model** whom I look up to.

Her name is Yen and she taught me Math for 3 years of high school. She was **in her 50s**, and so she had a lot of teaching experience. Actually, we met each other almost everyday as she was **also** my form teacher. She **cared about** us as if we had been her sons and daughters. For example, she always brought some kinds of medicines so that whenever her students got a cold, coughed or something like that, she would give them the medicines immediately.

Above all, I was most influenced by the way she **taught us** in class. Her **thoroughness** in teaching inspired me to study Math, even though I had not been interested in the subject before. Thanks to her effective teaching method, I was able to pass the university entrance exam with a high Math grade. Besides, I was also influenced by her **lifestyle**, which was so simple and worthy of respect that I really wanted to copy her. As she is a **warm-hearted** person, she always gave us advice

about any problems we faced. At times, I felt that she was like my friend who I could share everything with.

Although we have now all graduated from high school, my friends and I often visit her at the weekends to tell her about our daily life at university.

VOCABULARY

✓ **role model:** [noun phrase] a person that you admire and try to copy.

Example: Parents are usually the most important **role models** for a child.\

✓ **in her 50s:** [expression] between the ages of 50 and 59.

Example: My mother retired from her job as a teacher when she was **in her 50s**.

✓ **cared about:** [phrasal verb] felt that we were important and worth worrying about.

Example: Everybody had a good opinion of the hospital – the doctors and nurses really **cared about** the health of the patients.

✓ **thoroughness:** [noun] the quality of doing things very carefully and with great attention to detail.

Example: The report was perfectly organised and included every important detail, and I had to admire his **thoroughness**.

✓ **lifestyle:** [noun] the way in which a person or group of people live and work.

Example: When I moved to the countryside from Hanoi, I had to change my **lifestyle** completely.

✓ **warm-hearted:** [adjective] kind and generous

Example: He often gave money and chatted in the street to poor people that he knew – he was a very warm-hearted person.

Part 3

1. Do you like helping others?

Yes, I do. In my opinion, everybody has a **moral responsibility** to do others a favor, which is an indication of **give and take**. Only by **lending others a hand** when they need us can we expect something in return. The experience of assisting others makes me feel at peace and more useful in life.

2. In your view, should children be taught to help others?

Of course they should be. The willingness to help others, especially those less fortunate than ourselves, should be **instilled** in children from an early age, in order for them to become better adults in the future. Helping others with all their heart will gain them **genuine**, lasting relationships and respect from many people.

3. How can we encourage children to help others?

There are many ways to encourage your children to help others. Most important of all, parents should show good manners to be **a role model** for their kids. Besides, children should be educated from an early age to help others with simple yet helpful acts, like taking an elderly person across a street, or helping a neighbour water the plants. Through such acts in their **formative years**, children will develop **a social conscience** and become caring adults.

4. How can (or, do) charitable organizations help people?

The aim of a charitable organization is to help **alleviate** the sufferings of those unfortunate or underprivileged people in society. Whether supplying food for **poverty-stricken** people, or providing vocational training for the unemployed, charities play a key role in bridging the gap between the rich and the poor, helping others to overcome hardships and survive disasters.

5. What do you think are the benefits of having unpaid volunteer workers? How do you think the volunteers themselves benefit?

Nowadays, assistance is carefully calculated to extract certain benefits, and people tend to **alienate** themselves from others, rather than help them. Volunteer workers, who give without taking, will help by sharing love and care within their local or a wider community. Volunteering can help you to feel good about yourself, **combat** depression, keep you mentally stimulated, and provide a sense of purpose.

6. Do you think international aid (eg, from one national government to another), is important?

Yes, it is. Without the assistance of international aid, people in underdeveloped and disaster-stricken areas cannot get access to the basic necessities of life, like food, water and shelter. Such aid from official sources serves to promote goodwill among nations, as has been shown by the response from many governments to provide emergency help following the earthquakes in Mexico.

7. What are the qualities of being helpful?

I think that the essential quality of being helpful is your empathy. How can a person be helpful if he does not know how to **empathise with** what another person is going through? In addition, your

warmth can also express your desire to help others. There are a lot of helpful people who cannot help but display their inner feelings, especially when they are moved by other people's stories.

8. Do you know someone who really likes helping people?

My high school teacher is a **benevolent** person, who tries her best to help other people, especially underprivileged students. She runs an English class for disabled students at the weekends without taking money, saying that helping others and seeing their smile is her greatest delight.

9. What can parents do to cultivate children's quality of helping others?

Family background is very important. Firstly, parents should be an exemplary model for their children to follow, by helping others in front of their children. Parents should also educate children to help others out of **goodwill**, not for any personal hope of reward. Showing children how fortunate they are as compared to their poor peers will **shape their personality** and influence their behaviour in a very positive way.

Vocabulary:

• CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: FAMILY AND CHILDREN

(sách collocations)

1. **formative years** [noun]: a period in a person's life when they are growing up, which has a big influence on the person that they become later in life

Eg: In your **formative years**, the influence of honest and generous friends and family members is very important.

2. **family background** [noun]: the details about a person's family

Eg: Criminals sometimes have a bad **family background**, neglected or abused by parents.

3. **(to) shape a child's personality** [expression]: to influence the personality of a child when they are growing up

Eg: Parents are very influential in **shaping their children's personality** by setting a good example.

• CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: SOCIETY (sách collocations)

1. **a social conscience** [noun]: the state of being aware of the problems that affect a lot of people in society, such as being poor or having no home, and wanting to do something to help these people

Eg: Charities depend on the **social conscience** of the public in order to obtain donations and to recruit volunteer helpers.

2. **poverty-stricken** [adjective]: extremely poor, almost without any money

Eg: Many charities work with people who are **poverty-stricken** in developing countries.

Vocabulary:

1. **moral responsibility** [expression]: responsibility concerned with principles of right and wrong behaviour: trách nhiệm đạo đức

Eg: It is one's **moral responsibility** to help others when they are in dire difficulty.

2. **give and take** [expression]: the act of giving and receiving : sự cho đi và nhận lại

Eg: There must always be **give and take** in our life.

3. **(to)lend somebody a hand** [expression]: to help somebody with something

Eg: My father had a lot of painting to do, so I offered **to lend him a hand**.

4. **(to) instill** [verb]: to gradually make somebody feel, think or behave in a particular way over a period of time

Eg: The positive attitude of the coach **instilled** confidence in the team.

5. **genuine** [adjective]: sincere and honest; that can be trusted: chân thành, thật tình

Eg: Steve is a good person, who always expresses **genuine** concern for others.

6. **a role model** [noun]: a person that you admire and try to copy: hình mẫu lý tưởng

Eg: David is **a role model** for all of the students in my class.

7. **(to) alleviate** [verb]: to make sth less severe: giảm nhẹ

Eg: A number of measures were taken **to alleviate** the problems of traffic congestion in the city.

8. **(to) alienate** [verb]: to make sb less friendly or sympathetic towards you: thờ ơ, không thân thiện

Eg: Bob **alienated** himself from others in the team because of his selfish attitude.

9. **(to) combat** [verb]: to stop sth unpleasant or harmful from happening or from getting worse: chiến đấu, chống cự

Eg: Measures **to combat** crime seem to be ineffective, and people are living in fear.

10. **(to) empathise with**[verb]: to understand another person's feeling and experiences: thông cảm với

Eg: You have to learn how **to empathise** with others to be a better person.

11. **benevolent** [adjective]: kind, helpful and generous : bác ái, nhân ái

Eg: I love my mother's **benevolent** smile the most when she helps others.

12. **goodwill** [noun]: friendly or helpful feelings towards other people or countries : thiện chí

Eg: A spirit of **goodwill** was spread in the whole community by the visit of the President.

29. Describe a long car trip

You should say:

where you would like to go;

how you would like to go there;

who you would like to go with;

and explain why you would like to go there by car, motorbike or bike.

Sample 1

Like **many other** young people, I don't have **the habit** of waking up early every day, only for special occasions. **Last weekend**, I and a group of my friends decided to go on a trip to the mountainous area of Vietnam called **Mu Cang Chai**. We had to leave **very early** in the morning so that we did not get stuck in the traffic. In addition, we would have **more time** to spend there.

It wasn't **easy** to get up early in the morning, because I had been **so excited** about the trip that I had barely slept that night. I had **never been** to Mu Cang Chai before. It is located in the **northern** part of Vietnam, so I knew that we faced **a long drive** ahead. We had decided to go by car since, that way, all 5 of us could **travel together**. Moreover, everyone reckoned that it would be **safer** than going by motorbike.

After 5 hours driving, we arrived at our destination. We were **amazed** to see a **vast** land filled with the yellow color of terraced **rice fields**, ready to be harvested. Under the sunlight, these rice fields **sparkled like gold**.

We stayed for **one night** with a local host and helped the family with their regular tasks before **setting out for home** the next day. It was such an **amazing** trip, and it helped us to learn more about the countryside and **the way of life** of those who live there. I'd love to make **more trips like that** in the future.

VOCABULARY

✓ **get stuck:** [verb phrase] to be in an unpleasant situation that you can't escape from. Example: I left work early, because I didn't want to get stuck in traffic on my way home.

✓ **barely:** [adverb] something that can be achieved, but only with difficulty. Example: We barely had time to catch the train, so we ran all the way to the station.

✓ **faced a long drive ahead:** [verb phrase] a long car journey. Example: My advice is to sleep well if you face a long drive ahead the next day.

✓ **reckon:** [verb] to think or have an opinion about something. Example: If I want to lose weight, I reckon that I will have to eat less bread.

✓ **freshen:** [verb] to make something cooler and more pleasant.

Example: The rain freshened the air.

✓ **vast:** [adjective] very big.

Example: The Amazon is a vast rainforest.

✓ **harvest:** [verb] to cut and collect a crop, such as rice. Example: Every year, bananas are harvested from the trees on my uncle's farm.

✓ **sparkle:** [verb] to shine brightly. Example: The sky sparkled with thousands of stars.

✓ **setting out:** [phrasal verb] leaving a place and beginning a journey. Example: I finished my breakfast and set out for the train station

Sample 2

I'd like to talk about the time I went to Do Son, Hai Phong with my family, using dad's car.

It was 2012, and I was 15 at the time. I just passed the high school entrance exam **with flying colors** so daddy decided to give me a present, which in this case was a small summer **getaway**. I didn't want to go anywhere that was too far from home as mom often got serious car sickness when she went on a long ride - she's better now though. Plus I'd always **craved** some sunshine, beaches and water, so I chose Do Son, Hai Phong. It's a famous beach in Northern Vietnam and most people choose to go there on holiday. Most importantly, it's just an hour or an hour and a half's ride from my hometown which is Hai Duong City.

There was something different about that car journey. Normally I would just sleep through the whole journey, but because this one was short, I decided to get everyone to play some games - except the driver, of course. I was a **diehard** K-POP fan - I often watched all sorts of Korean game

shows, talk shows, movies or dramas at the time. I didn't know any traditional games that we could play while on a car ride, so I just suggested playing some Korean games instead. We then played "3, 6, 9", where people in turn count from 1, anyone who gets any numbers that have the number "3" must clap and the final loser must buy me a gift (as I was sort of the birthday girl). It was so hard explaining to everyone as they weren't watching any Korean shows at that time! But finally, they all got it, and we had a really good time playing "3, 6, 9", cards, and finally some word games while dad drove us to our dream destination.

It was a really nice car journey and I had such a great time in Do Son, Hai Phong that I would never forget.

Từ vựng mới:

1. With flying colors [idiom] (pass an exam, etc.) very successfully: (vượt qua kì thi) một cách rất thành công

E.g. He passed the SAT exam with flying colors.

2. Getaway [noun] a vacation: một kì nghỉ

E.g. We had a perfect family getaway back in 2008.

3. Crave [verb] to have a very strong feeling of wanting something: khao khát cái gì

E.g. Many young children **crave** adults' attention.

4. Diehard [noun] a person who strongly opposes change or who continues to support something in spite of opposition.

E.g. My parents are some **diehard** traditionalists.

QUESTIONS FOR PART 3

29.1. Do Vietnamese people prefer to travel by car or by train?

Generally, although the train is one of the fastest **means of transportation**, most Vietnamese people prefer travelling by car because of its convenience. Unlike the train, which has a specific **terminal** where people must stop, passengers can **hop into** and out of the car anywhere they want. Moreover, in order to take a train, they must follow the schedule. In contrast, by using their car, people can travel at any time which **suits** them.

29.2. What are the advantages of travelling with a group of people?

Travelling with friends or family members will bring a lot of benefits. Firstly, it will be their greatest time when they can share best moments of life with their **loved ones** and closest friends. Being **accompanied** by other people, they can enjoy doing things together and build a closer **bond** through sharing experiences. Secondly, travellers can also avoid risks of injuries or dangers with the **assistance** of other group members. Consequently, they will have a safe, **carefree** trip with lots of happy memories.

29.3. Should young people travel abroad?

I definitely agree with the idea that youngsters should travel to other countries. Going abroad can provide young and curious people with opportunities to explore new things about other cultures and places. It is really true that travel broadens the mind and teaches cultural **sensitivity**.

Moreover, travelling will help them build confidence and social skills, as they will **encounter** people from different nations. They will learn to adapt to **globalization** and **integration** with strangers, which will be very beneficial in their future careers.

29.4. Where do Vietnamese people like to travel?

Regarding ideal places for travelling, it depends largely on people's hobbies. For example, active and **adventurous** people prefer challenging places such as mountainous areas or forests. Other people love to go to resorts or famous places for entertainment, **nightlife** or relaxation.

29.5. Is international travel popular with people in your country?

To be honest, Vietnam is a **middle-income** country, so most people in my country are unable to afford international trips. However, recently, it has become more common for Vietnamese people to travel to different places for their holidays or in their free time, especially because of the availability and **affordability** of high-speed means of transportation.

VOCABULARY

✓ **Means of transportation (expression):** any vehicle that you can travel in

Example: I can't afford a car, so my only **means of transportation** is my bike.

✓ **Terminal (noun): (nhà ga)** a place, building or set of buildings where journeys by train, bus or boat begin or end

Example: Unlike the train which has a specific **terminal** where people must stop, passengers can get into and out of the car anywhere they want.

✓ **Hop into/hop out of (phrasal verb):** to go or move somewhere quickly and easily

Example: I turned off the TV and **hopped into** bed.

✓ **Suit (verb):** to be convenient for somebody

Example: We should meet for lunch. What time would **suit** you?

✓ **Loved ones (noun):** people that you love, usually members of your family

Example: After I heard about the accident, I rang the police to check if my loved ones were safe.

✓ **Accompany (verb): (đồng hành, đi cùng)** to travel or go somewhere with somebody

Example: His wife **accompanied** him on the trip.

✓ **Bond (noun):** something that forms a connection between people, such as friendship or shared experiences

Example: There is a special **bond** between a mother and her children.

✓ **Assistance (noun): (trợ giúp, giúp đỡ)** help or support

Example: He can walk only **with the assistance of** crutches.

✓ **Carefree (adjective):** having no worries or responsibilities

Example: We spent a **carefree** week just relaxing on the beach.

✓ **Sensitivity (noun): (sự nhạy cảm)** the ability to understand other people's feelings

Example: She pointed out with tact and **sensitivity** exactly where he had gone wrong.

✓ **Encounter (verb): (bắt gặp, gặp gỡ)** to meet somebody, or discover or experience something, especially somebody/something new, unusual or unexpected

Ex: She was the most remarkable woman he had ever **encountered**.

✓ **Globalization (noun): (toàn cầu hóa)** the fact that different cultures and economic systems around the world are becoming connected and similar to each other because of the influence of large multinational companies and of improved communication

Example: We must take advantage of the increased **globalization** of the commodity trading business.

✓ **Integration (noun): (hội nhập)** the act or process of mixing people who have previously been separated, usually because of color, race, religion, etc.

Example: The purpose of the induction program is to encourage the **integration** of new staff into the team.

✓ **Adventurous (adjective):** willing to take risks or try new ideas

Example: She is very **adventurous** – her favourite hobby is mountain biking.

✓ **Nightlife (noun):** entertainment that is available at night

Example: Las Vegas in the USA is famous for its **nightlife** – especially the casinos which are open all night.

✓ **Middle-income country (noun phrase):** (quốc gia có thu nhập trung bình) one of the countries of the world that is neither very rich nor very poor:

Example: The World Bank will stop lending to **middle-income countries** that have access to global financial markets.

✓ **Affordability (noun):** being cheap enough for people to buy

Example: The good thing about my city is the **affordability** of housing.

30. Describe an age/stage you enjoyed most in your life.

You should say:

What the age/stage was

What did you like to do back then

Who you enjoyed being with mostly back then

Undoubtedly, life is an eventful journey and, in different stages of our life, we have different **priorities**, activities, ambitions, responsibilities and interests. To me, the most enjoyable stage of my life was the time I was in high school.

At that time, it seemed that our sole mission was to study hard in preparation for university entrance. Sometimes, it was really **nerve-racking** to confront a series of different examinations and to be **up to our eyes in** assignments and revision. However, I feel that all of us still derived a lot of pleasure from our high-school journey, thanks to the **company** of numerous good friends.

We tried to share happy moments with each other as much as possible, in parallel with finishing all of our tasks at school. Because we didn't have much spare time, we managed to capture our best moments during break time and **extra-curricular activities**. This helped to relieve our stress, **lift our spirits** and **recharge our energy**. The friends in high school were the ones in whom I could confide and trust, as they always treated me with **sincerity** and honesty.

Now that I have grown up, I sometimes feel overwhelmed by the **harshness** of life, which **weighs on** my mind. I find it is really hard to have true friendships. Despite being in different places, my old friends and I still try to meet each other whenever possible. Sometimes, we **have a whale of time** in our reunions just simply talking about those good old days, when we were so young,

energetic and **carefree**, when the only thing to do was study. Those bygone days were simple, full of pleasure and **high hopes**. Recalling them is somehow an escape from the **hustle and bustle** of daily life, in which everybody **vies** with each other rather than cooperates, in order to **make a living**.

Vocabulary:

- **CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: E. EDUCATION (sách collocations)**

- 1. extra-curricular activities**

Meaning: not part of the usual course work or studies in school or college

Example: Most UK universities offer a wide range of **extra-curricular activities** such as sport, music and drama to help students enjoy university life to the full.

Dịch đại ý

Extra-curricular activities: hoạt động ngoại khóa

Nghĩa: không phải là phần chính thức thuộc chương trình học ở trường

Ví dụ: Đa số các trường đại học Anh đều có nhiều hoạt động ngoại khóa đa dạng như thể thao, âm nhạc và kịch để giúp sinh viên tận hưởng cuộc sống đại học.

- **CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: I. TOURISM (sách collocations)**

- 1. To have a whale of a time**

Meaning: to have an exciting or fun time

Example: We had a whale of a time at Ninh Van Bay Resort.

Dịch đại ý

to have a whale of time: có một khoảng thời gian vui vẻ

Nghĩa: có 1 khoảng thời gian hào hứng, vui vẻ

Ví dụ: Chúng tôi đã có một khoảng thời gian vui vẻ tại Khu nghỉ dưỡng Vịnh Ninh Vân.

- **CÁC TỪ KHÁC:**

1. **priority** [n]: sth that you think is more important than other things and should be dealt with first : sự ưu tiên
Eg: Financial security was high on his list of **priorities**.
2. **nerve-racking** [adj]: making you feel very nervous and worried : căng thẳng
Eg: Ryan was devastated by the **nerve-racking** examination for top students in his school.
3. **(be) up to one's eyes in sth** [expression]: to have a lot of sth to deal with: nuôi dưỡng
Eg: My mother is always up to her eyes trying to combine her career and child care.
4. **(to) lift one's spirits** [expression]: to become or make sb more cheerful
Eg: The news that the war had ended **lifted our spirits**.
5. **(to) recharge one's energy** [expression]: to recover your strength by resting for a time.
Eg: My holiday in Bali helped me to **recharge my energy** ready for the new semester.
6. **company** [n]: the fact of being with sb else and not alone : sự đồng hành
Eg: During my high school years, I was always indebted to Chau's **company** as a close friend.
7. **sincerity** [n]: the fact of showing what you really think or feel : sự chân thành
Eg: Somehow, his sincerity and determination changed her decision .
8. **harshness** [n]: the fact of being cruel, severe and unkind : sự khắc nghiệt
Eg: He used to complain about the **harshness** of his parents, but I am sure that he was exaggerating.
9. **(to) weigh on** [phrasal verb]: to make sb anxious or worried
Eg. The fear of losing his job **weighed on** his mind all week.
10. **carefree** [adj]: having no worries or responsibilities: vô tư, vô lo
Eg: Tiffany's **carefree** attitude to life endears her to others.
11. **(to) have high hopes** [expression]: to believe that something will be successful.
Eg. He **has high hopes** of winning a medal in the next Olympic Games.
12. **expectation** [n]: a feeling or hope that something good will happen
Eg: There is great **expectation** each New Year that the coming year will be happy for us.
13. **hustle and bustle** [expression]: busy noisy activity of a lot of people in one place : sự xô bồ
Eg: What we really want is to escape from the **hustle and bustle** of the city for the weekend.

14. **(to) vie** [v]: to compete strongly with sb in order to obtain or achieve sth: tranh giành, cạnh tranh gay gắt

Eg: Screaming fans **vied** to get closer to their idols.

15. **(to) make a living** [expression]: to make money to buy the things that you need in life.

Eg. She **makes a living** by selling flowers in the street.

31. Describe an indoor game that you liked to play when you were a child.

You should say:

What the game was

When, where and with whom you usually played it

How you played it

and explain why you still remember this game or why you liked this game.

Having little interest in outdoor games and sports since my childhood, I rarely participate in games taking place outside. Indeed, the fascinating indoor games **appeal to** me more than any other pastime. Especially, I was fond of the game called 'hide and seek' at my home when I was a child. It is a simple game, **passed on** from generation to generation.

Hide and seek still **preserves** its popularity as an indoor game with the kids of today, and it **continues to thrive** despite the **dominant** position of technological games these days. In this game, everybody manages to hide, except one of the players who has to seek out all those who are hiding. The game only **terminates** when the last of the players has been discovered by the seeker, which is considered to be its most thrilling aspect.

I used to play the game in my house, which had about 5 floors and 6 bedrooms. My brother was the one who initiated the idea, and we invited all our neighbors' kids to join in. In fact, we had a moderately large group to play the game, with about 13 to 15 youngsters. There were **ample** hiding places for the children. I remember whenever the game began, each of us rushed without hesitation to our planned "shelters", such as the bathroom, the wardrobes, or the space under the bed. The seeker literally **ransacked** everywhere in the large **spacious** house during the search. The game became more exciting when the seeker asked us about the hideout of the remaining players, but we

refused to **disclose** the places. When he had failed and surrendered, the hiding children would come out. No matter what the result, we always **had a whale of time** with 'hide and seek'.

I enjoyed the game for many reasons. It was the main **source of recreation** for me and other players back then. Thankfully, there was no such thing as the Internet and technological devices, instead there was just a bunch of kids gathering to really play together. Moreover, for safety reasons, our parents did not allow us to play outside the home, so thanks to the game 'hide and seek', we have a lot of memories to **recall** when thinking about our childhood.

Vocabulary:

- **CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: TRADITIONAL VS MODERN (sách collocations)**

1. **to pass on**

Meaning: to give something to someone, after someone has given it to you.

Example: Traditional skills that **are passed on** to children by parents and elders need to be preserved as the most valuable treasures in each community.

2. **to continue to thrive**

Meaning: to continue to be popular

Example: Traditional handicrafts **continue to thrive**, partly because of tourism.

- **CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: I. TOURISM (sách collocations)**

1. **to have a whale of a time**

Meaning: to have an exciting or fun time

Example: We **had a whale of a time** at Ninh Van Bay Resort.

Dịch đại ý

to have a whale of time: có một khoảng thời gian vui vẻ

Nghĩa: có 1 khoảng thời gian hào hứng, vui vẻ

Ví dụ: Chúng tôi đã có một khoảng thời gian vui vẻ tại Khu nghỉ dưỡng Vịnh Ninh Vân.

- **CÁC TỪ KHÁC:**

1. **(to)appeal to sb/sth [v]:** to attract or interest sb/sth : hấp dẫn, lôi cuốn ai, cái gì

Eg: The design has **to appeal to** all ages and social groups.

2. **(to) preserve** [v]: to keep a particular quality, feature, etc to make sure that sth is kept : gìn giữ, duy trì

Eg: Justin was always anxious about how **to preserve** his reputation.

3. **dominant** [adj]: more important, powerful or noticeable than other things : lấn át, nổi trội hơn

Eg: The company has achieved a **dominant** position in the world market.

4. **(to) terminate** [v]: to end: kết thúc

Eg: The singer's contract will **terminate** in December this year.

5. **ample** [adj]: enough or more than enough : nhiều, phong phú, dư

Eg: Don't worry, there is still ample time to get to the airport.

6. **to ransack** [v]: to make a place untidy, because you are looking for sth.

Eg: Although we **ransacked** the house, we still could not find my watch.

7. **spacious** [adj]: large and with plenty of space for people to move around : rộng rãi, thoáng đãng

Eg: If you ask me, painting the bedroom white will make it look more **spacious**.

8. **(to) disclose** [v]: to give sb information about sth, especially sth that was previously secret : tiết lộ

Eg: The spokesman refused **to disclose** details of the takeover to the press.

9. **(be) a source of recreation** [expression]: sth from which people can derive a lot of enjoyment : là nguồn giải trí

Eg: Nowadays, the Internet is considered to **be the main source of recreation** for people of all ages.

10. **(to) recall** [v]: to remember : nhớ lại, nhắc lại

Eg: Lying in bed, Minh **recalled** the good old days when he was in high school.

32. Describe a situation when someone made noise.

You should say:

when it happened

who made the noise

where it was

and explain how you felt about it.

Noise pollution has become an **inevitable** part of our life. Whether we like it or not, we have to **tolerate** it and literally cannot get away from it. A week ago, I had to handle a situation when there was too much noise. A karaoke party of about 20 young boys and girls was held in my next-door neighbor's house. The party started at 7 pm and seemed to continue endlessly until 4 am the next day. Although there is a law against using loudspeakers after 10pm, they did not **abide by** the law, making the excuse that they were just having a good time. They were too irresponsible to realize that a lot of people **in the vicinity** might be suffering from the **excessive** noise. For me, I was virtually unable to sleep the whole night. I did try to reduce the noise as much as possible by closing all the windows of my house, but it made no difference. Putting in my earplugs did not work either as the noise was so overwhelming.

Well, I am not **prejudiced against** any forms of entertainment, but I am definitely against using loudspeakers after 10pm, because it is the time for everybody to relax after a long working day. As a practical measure, the government should **impose a stricter ban on** noise violation, **in the interest of** residents. As we all know, noise pollution is seriously **detrimental to** our mental as well as physical health. Reportedly, it can lead to hearing **impairment**, fatigue, heart diseases, insomnia, anxiety, depression, etc. Consequently, these problems **impair** one's work **efficiency** and overall performance in daily life. Therefore, I think that the duty to keep noise down is not only to respect the needs of others, but it is also an indication of one's **social conscience**.

Vocabulary:

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: K. GOVERNMENT (sách collocations)

1. to abide by

Meaning; (formal) to accept and act according to a law, an agreement, etc.

Example: Motorists who do not **abide by** the rules of the road should be severely punished.

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: M. SOCIETY (sách collocations)

1. to be prejudiced (against/in favour of somebody/something)

Meaning: having an unreasonable dislike of or preference for somebody/something, especially based on their race, religion, sex, age etc.

Example: Some companies **are prejudiced against** older applicants during the interview process.

2. **social conscience**

Meaning: the state of being aware of the problems that affect a lot of people in society, such as being poor or having no home, and wanting to do something to help these people

Example: Charities depend on the **social conscience** of the public in order to obtain donations and recruit volunteer helpers.

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: D. CRIME AND PUNISHMENT (sách collocations)

1. **to impose a ban on sth**

Meaning: to enforce an official rule which says that something is not allowed

Example: Most governments **have imposed a ban on** the sale of tobacco to those aged under 16.

Dịch đại ý

To impose a ban on sth: ban hành lệnh cấm với cái gì

Nghĩa: bắt buộc thực hiện luật chính thức rằng cái gì đó là không được phép

Ví dụ: Hầu hết các chính phủ đều ban hành lệnh cấm bán thuốc lá cho người dưới 16.

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: H. HEALTH (sách collocations)

1. **to be detrimental to health**

Meaning: to be harmful to health

Example: Lying in the sun for too long can **be detrimental to health** and result in skin cancers.

Dịch đại ý

To be detrimental to health: có hại cho sức khỏe

Nghĩa: có hại cho sức khỏe

Ví dụ: Nằm dưới ánh mặt trời quá lâu có thể có hại cho sức khỏe và dẫn tới ung thư da.

- CÁC TỪ KHÁC:

1. **inevitable** [adjective]: that you cannot avoid or prevent : không thể tránh khỏi

Eg: In his analysis of the economy, a sharp rise in the interest rates seems **inevitable**.

2. **(to) tolerate** [verb]: to accept sb/sth that is annoying, unpleasant, etc. without complaining : tha thứ, chịu đựng

Eg: You should bear in mind that there is always a limit to what one person can **tolerate**.

3. **in the vicinity** (of sth) [expression]: in areas nearby :

Eg: The police have searched for the girl everywhere near the crime scene, including places **in the vicinity** of the cafe where she was last seen.

4. **excessive** [adjective]: greater than what seems reasonable or appropriate: quá mức, quá đáng

Eg: Doctors have said that **excessive** drinking can lead to stomach disorders.

5. **in the interest of** sb/sth[expression]: to be made for sb's / sth's advantage or right : vì quyền lợi của ai đó

Eg: It is **in the interest of** the public that the facts about the corrupt candidate came to light.

6. **impairment** [noun]: the state of having a physical or mental condition which means that part of your body cannot work correctly : sự suy yếu, sự hư hại

Eg: Jane has suffered from visual **impairment** since she was five .

7. **(to) impair** [verb]: to damage sth or make sth worse

Eg. His age **impaired** his chances of getting a job.

8. **efficiency** [noun]: the quality of doing sth well with no waste of time or money : sự hiệu quả

Eg: The manager deeply satisfied with the striking improvements in **efficiency** at the factory.

33. Describe a traditional product of your country

You should say

What it is

Where it is produced

Explain why you think it is important

Trích đề:

Describe an important plant in your country (such as fruits, flowers or vegetables)

You should say:

what plant it is

how you first learned about this plant

where it grows and explain

why you think it is important.

Today I am going to **elaborate on** one of the most crucial plants in Vietnam: the rice plant. While I have been familiar with rice grains ever since I was a **preschooler**, only when I reached fourth grade did I learn about the rice plant in general science. It is unforgettable how fascinated I was to discover how such a slender plant could produce so many rice grains that **provide** our population **with a healthy diet**. Rice is considered the most popular and important national food, therefore, it can be spotted over almost all the deltas of the country.

The rice plant is crucial to Vietnamese communities in various ways. Rice has become **indispensable** in Vietnamese meals since as far back as anyone can remember. It can be said that once you are Vietnamese, you will eat rice for most of your life, and it seems that we are so used to eating rice that our **digestive systems** would not cope without it. The cultivation of the rice plant also has an enormous influence on our culture. As rice has long been grown since ancient times, there are various traditions and worshipping ceremonies connected to people's wish for a plentiful rice harvest, and these still exist till the present day. The country farming life is also responsible for shaping our simplicity and calmness in our personalities and lifestyle. **Taking economic contribution into consideration**, rice is even more important as millions of Vietnamese citizens **earn their living** by means of rice cultivation. As a matter of fact, rice is Vietnam's leading export, which brings about huge annual **revenues** for the government. This **stems from** the fact that by **making the most of the** abundant cheap labour force as well as the favourable climate, our rice always **gains a competitive edge** over other nations. It cannot be denied that the rice plant plays an integral part in our country's development.

Vocabulary

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Business and Money

1. Revenue

Meaning: the money that a government receives from taxes or which a company receives from its business

Example: The tax **revenues** of the government have fallen as a result of the economic crisis.

Dịch đại ý

Revenue: Lợi nhuận

Nghĩa: Tiền mà chính phủ nhận được từ việc đóng thuế hoặc tiền mà công ty có được từ việc kinh doanh.

Ví dụ: Khoản thu từ thuế của chính phủ giảm xuống do khủng hoảng kinh tế.

2. To earn a living

Meaning: to earn money

Example: I used to **earn a living** as a teacher, but now I sell used cars.

Dịch đại ý

To earn a living: kiếm sống

Nghĩa: kiếm tiền trang trải cuộc sống

Ví dụ: Tôi từng kiếm sống bằng nghề giáo viên, nhưng giờ thì tôi đi bán ô tô cũ, đã qua sử dụng.

3. To gain a competitive edge

Meaning: to achieve an advantage over another company or organization, often by providing the same goods or services at a lower price

Example: The high quality of VW cars, combined with their affordable price, has enabled the company **to gain a competitive edge** over all its rivals in world markets.

Dịch đại ý

To gain a competitive edge: có được lợi thế cạnh tranh

Nghĩa: đạt được lợi thế hơn công ty hay tổ chức khác, thường do cung cấp dịch vụ hay sản phẩm tương tự với giá thành thấp hơn.

Ví dụ: Chất lượng cao của những chiếc ô tô Volks Swagen, cùng với giá cả hợp lý đã khiến công ty có lợi thế cạnh tranh hơn tất cả đối thủ trên thị trường thế giới.

4. To take something into consideration/ account

Meaning: to consider or remember something when judging a situation

Example: No business will succeed if it fails **to take** the needs of customers **into account/into consideration**.

Dịch đại ý

To take something into consideration/account: xem xét cái gì

Nghĩa: xem xét hay nhớ tới cái gì khi đánh giá 1 vấn đề, 1 tình huống

Ví dụ: Việc kinh doanh không thể thành công nếu như không xem xét đến nhu cầu của khách hàng.

5. To make the most of something

Meaning: to make something appear as good as possible; to exploit something; to get as much out of something as is possible.

Example: They designed the advertisements **to make the most of** the product's features.

Dịch đại ý

To make the most of something: tận dụng cái gì

Nghĩa: tạo ra cái gì một cách tốt nhất cái gì hoặc khai thác cái gì một cách triệt để.

Ví dụ: Họ thiết kế những quảng cáo có thể khai thác tối đa các đặc trưng của sản phẩm.

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Environment

1.To stem from

Meaning: to be caused by

Example: Scientists say that global warming partly **stems from** the increase in car exhaust emissions.

Dịch đại ý

To stem from: bắt nguồn từ

Nghĩa: được tạo ra bởi cái gì

Ví dụ: Các nhà khoa học cho rằng sự nóng lên toàn cầu 1 phần bắt nguồn từ lượng khí thải của xe ô tô tăng lên.

Từ vựng trong chủ đề Food and Diet

1. To provide someone with a healthy diet

Meaning: to give someone a diet which is healthy

Example: Rice is a vital ingredient in **providing** the population of Vietnam **with a healthy diet**.

Các từ vựng khác:

1. Preschooler [n] : A child in nursery school. (trẻ em mẫu giáo)

Ex: By the time I was a **preschooler**, I had learned to count to 100.

Nghĩa : trẻ mẫu giáo

VD : Từ khi tôi còn là trẻ mẫu giáo, tôi đã học đếm đến 100 rồi.

2. Elaborate on [v] = explain about (giải thích kĩ hơn về cái gì)

Ex : Can you **elaborate more on** the company's policy ?

Nghĩa : Giải thích về điều gì

VD : Anh có thể giải thích thêm về chính sách của công ti được không ?

3. Indispensable [adj] : too important to be without (không thể thiếu)

Eg : A good dictionary is **indispensable** for learning a foreign language.

Nghĩa : không thể thiếu

VD : Một cuốn từ điển tốt là không thể thiếu đối với việc học ngoại ngữ.

4. Digestive system [n] : all the organs that are involved in the process of digesting food. (hệ tiêu hóa)

Eg : Eating food rich in fibre is good for your **digestive system**.

Nghĩa : hệ tiêu hóa

VD : Ăn thức ăn giàu chất xơ thì tốt cho hệ tiêu hóa của bạn.

34. Describe an item of furniture, either modern or traditional.

I'm going to describe my **night lamp**, which I was given to me by one of my best friends on my 15th birthday.

It is a medium-sized plastic lamp, maybe twice or three times the size of a teddy bear. It is **shaped** like a panda, with the **socket** hidden at the bottom of the lamp and the switch seated neatly on its head. And there's a **battery holder** beside the socket, so you can always use the battery if you cannot find an outside electrical socket to plug it in.

It was the very first time I'd been given a **night light**. I'd never used this type of lamp before, so I felt really excited on receiving it. And grateful too, really. My friend who gave me this told me that I had really serious **dark circles** under my eyes and she was so worried that she decided to get me this lamp so, you know, I could sleep better. And you know what, it actually worked! The lamp gives out a nice cozy yellow light, and I am able to really **sleep soundly** with it on.

I've been sleeping with this lamp beside my bed every night since the day I received it, and this cute little thing is one of my treasures. I plan to have it with me for a long time, so I'm trying to keep it in the best possible condition, as it seems like they are not making them any more; I seriously cannot find another similar model anywhere!

Vocabulary:

✓ **night lamp = night light [noun] (đèn ngủ)** a lamp kept burning during the night, especially in a bedroom

e.g. I think buying this **night lamp/light** will complete our bedroom; it looks so perfect!

✓ **shape [verb]** to make something into a particular shape

Eg. The new football stadium **is shaped** like a dome.

✓ **socket [noun]** (ổ cắm điện) the part of a piece of equipment, especially electrical equipment, into which another part fits

e.g. He has forgotten to plug the television into the mains **socket**.

✓ **battery holder [noun]** (ô pin) one or more compartments or chambers for holding a battery

e.g. You can find many types of **battery holders** for your machine in this shop.

✓ **dark circle [noun]** (quầng thâm dưới mắt) blemishes around or under the eyes, caused by lack of sleep, hereditary or allergy-related.

e.g. She has really serious **dark circles**. I even thought I had seen a panda!

✓ **sleep soundly [expression]** (ngủ ngon) sleep very well

e.g. You will **sleep soundly** if you get plenty of exercise during the day.

35. Describe a way to stay healthy.

You should say:

What this way is?

How you knew about this way?

When you started to do it?

And explain why it can help you stay healthy.

Sample 1

My favorite outdoor activity is jogging. It's a kind of running **at a slow orleisurely pace** that helps to **build up** your **physical fitness**.

I much prefer to go jogging in open spaces like parks or lakesides. There, you can enjoy fresh air and watch people doing **various** types of physical activity such as running, aerobic exercises, playing badminton, and so on.

I normally go jogging in the morning with my close friend either at weekends, or in the afternoon, after a tiring schoolday. We often chat together while we're jogging, sharing with each other stories about school or sometimes discussing **stuff** that is **going viral** on the Internet.

I love jogging because it's **beneficial** to our health, that **goes without saying**, and it does not **require** as much **stamina** as fast running. Moreover, unlike other forms of exercise, jogging is quite easy to do and it allows me to watch people and things as I pass by. I think it's really relaxing and inspiring to see the world around us, watching everyone keeping active **doing their own thing** and feeling part of it all when I'm out jogging.

VOCABULARY

✓ at a slow /leisurely pace (với nhịp độ chậm rãi) [expression] at a slow speed/ unhurriedly

Example: You can even read **at a leisurely pace**, as these books have no due dates and can be returned at any time.

✓ build up [phrasal verb] make somebody stronger and fitter

Example: I am training to **build up** my fitness for the race.

✓ physical fitness (thể chất) [n] general state of health and well-being

Example: Researchers have suggested that **physical fitness** may play a key role in improving the brain health and academic performance of youngsters.

✓ various (nhiều)[a] many/ several different

Example: She spoke to **various** members of the club.

✓ stuff [n] items or products in general – informal – without specifying what they are

Example: The shop sells i-pads, laptops and **stuff** like that.

✓ go viral (lan truyền) [idiom] spread quickly and widely among Internet users

Example: "Gangnam Style" is a video that **went viral** several years ago, even though most of us don't understand a word of it.

✓ beneficial(có lợi)[a] helpful, useful

Example: The improvement in sales figure had a **beneficial** influence on the company as a whole.

✓ goes without saying(không cần phải nói) [idiom] be generally accepted or understood

Example: It **goes without saying** that you will improve your skills with practice.

✓ require (yêu cầu)[v] need (something)

Example: Skiing at 80 miles per hour **requires** total concentration.

✓ stamina [n] physical or mental strength that enables you to do something difficult for a long period of time

Example: You need a lot of **stamina** to run a marathon.

✓ doing their own thing [expression] following their own interests, without worrying about what other people think

Example: When young people leave home to live abroad, they enjoy **doing their own thing**, because they have more freedom to follow their interests.

Sample 2

Staying in good shape is everyone's concern and I am no exception. To be honest, I have been **so caught up** in my study since I entered **university** that I have a problem in **organizing my daily routine**. However, I have been participating in **a yoga class** for **about 2 years**, which takes me only 1 hour a day, to try to lead a **healthy lifestyle**.

Unlike dancing or running, yoga definitely involves **stretching actions**. You might look at **yoga** and think that it is light and easy but it is more **demanding** than it appears. Yoga allows me to work on **all the parts of my body**. It can burn a lot of calories in **just one hour** of training. Also, it enhances my **flexibility** and **suppleness** in every single movement.

What I **enjoy the most** about yoga is meditation. It is all about **regulating your breathing** and helping you take things off your mind easily. Another thing is that **doing yoga** is supposed to be good for curing headaches and digestion-related problems, so it benefits not only **physical well-being** but also **mental health**.

By maintaining a schedule of taking part in the yoga class on a daily basis, I feel **extremely relaxed** and **full of energy** after the class. It helps me to **keep fit** and **refresh my mind** after a long stressful day. And **of course**, I don't see myself stopping practicing this activity any time soon.

VOCABULARY

✓ in good shape: [expression] the good physical condition of someone.

Example: For a man of his age, he is **in good shape**.

✓ caught up: [phrasal verb] completely involved in something.

Example: He was so **caught up** in the TV program, that he forgot to do his homework.

✓ stretching actions: [noun] actions which make your muscles stronger by exercises in which you extend your arms and legs.

Example: When I get up in the morning, I do some **stretching actions** to exercise the muscles in my arms.

✓ demanding: [adjective] needing a lot of effort.

Example: The work of a farmer is physically very **demanding**.

✓ work on: [phrasal verb] try hard to improve something, or how something functions.

Example: She **works on** her yoga skills by practising the exercises every day.

✓ burn a lot of calories: [expression] use up a lot of energy [that comes from the food we eat].

Example: One reason why people do exercise is to **burn a lot of calories** and lose weight.

✓ flexibility: [noun] the ability to move and bend your body easily.

Example: Regular exercise helps older people to maintain their **flexibility**, especially by stretching their muscles.

✓ suppleness: [noun] the ability to move and bend your body into different positions – it is a synonym for flexibility.

Example: Different yoga movements develop **suppleness** in different muscles.

✓ meditation: [noun] thinking deeply in silence, to make you feel calm.

Example: To help you to relax, try **meditation** after a stressful day at work.

✓ regulating your breathing: [expression] controlling the way in which you breathe in and out.

Example: An important part of learning how to swim is **regulating your breathing**.

✓ take things off your mind: [expression] forget things which are causing you anxiety or stress.

Example: After an exam, I usually have a short holiday, to **take things off my mind** and enjoy myself.

✓ cure: [verb] make an illness go away.

Example: The website advertises a new drug for **curing** AIDS.

✓ digestion: [noun] the process of changing the food you eat into substances that the body can use.

Example: Unlike cows or horses, the **digestion** of grass is impossible for humans.

✓ well-being: [noun] general health and happiness.

Example: The company tries to ensure the **well-being** of its employees by providing good working conditions.

✓ schedule: [noun] a plan that lists all the things that you have to do and when you must do them.

Example: For the next few days, I have a busy **schedule**, which includes my yoga class each morning.

✓ I don't see myself stopping: [expression] I don't think that I will stop.

Example: **I don't see myself stopping** working in the next 10 years because I have to support my family.

✓ any time soon: [expression] in the near future, soon.

Example: I should receive the exam results **any time soon** – perhaps tomorrow.\

Part 3:

1. Describe what you think is a healthy diet.

I believe that a healthy diet needs to provide people with a sufficient amount of proteins, carbohydrates, unsaturated fats like Omega 3, fibers and vitamins. And also, those who follow a healthy diet should eat more in the morning and less at noon and in the evening, as I think breakfasts - which provide people with energy for the whole day – are the most important meal of the day.

2. Are there many vegetarians in Vietnam?

I don't know the exact number so it's pretty hard to answer this question... but I must say that there're more and more Vietnamese people who choose to become vegetarians. I myself also just realized the significance of eating veggies a couple of months ago and I'm thinking of having a healthier diet – I'm considering becoming a vegan, you see. A vegan, not a vegetarian.

3. Why do you think some people choose to be vegetarians?

Well, there're some common reasons. One of them may be that vegetarians realize the importance of vegetables – I've just read in some papers that eating vegetables, fruits, nuts and seeds can

provide people with all the nutrients they need. Also, becoming a vegetarian is one way to oppose the brutal treatment of animals and promote a more humane way of eating and living.

4. Is the food that people eat today in Vietnam different to the food that people used to eat in the past? (if yes, in what ways has it changed?)

Vietnamese people have maintained their traditional foods, you know, chung cake, pho, bun cha and so on. But there're also a lot of new dishes that have been introduced to the Vietnamese cuisine, and also the food we eat today can be more hygienically cooked and the taste may have changed a little. All of this, I think, results from the change in the style of cooking – maybe because of new technology – and the supply of new ingredients coming from other countries.

5. How do you think the way we eat will change in the future?

I think more and more people will become vegetarians because of the reasons I've just mentioned. Another thing is that people may rely on modern technology more – there will be machines to help make cooking easier for people, and eating out may also become a more popular option, especially for those who are really busy.

6. Is American-style 'fast food' popular in Vietnam? (Why? Popular with whom?) What do you think of this popularity - is it as good thing?

American-style fast food has been familiar to Vietnamese people for several years, and I think it's most popular with young adults. The elderly tend to prefer traditional foods, and most middle-aged people also like homemade meals better than fast food. Well, I myself don't think this popularity is a good thing, as fast food is seriously bad for health, and another reason is that this trend discourages youngsters from learning to cook and take care of themselves.

7. More and more people are becoming overweight nowadays. What do you think might be the causes of this?

Obviously, the increasing popularity of fast foods and the lack of exercise are both to blame. The fast pace of life has caused more people to rely on fast food and also led them to work out less, and so it is clear why more and more people are becoming obese. I think there's a lot of research which has shown that fast foods cause obesity too.

8. What do people like to have for dinner/lunch in Vietnam?

I think most Vietnamese people like a 5-course meal for lunch: cooked white rice, a vegetable dish, a meat dish, a fish dish and some fruits for desserts. The meal should include some soup, maybe made from vegetables with meat or fish, or from vegetables only. This type of meal is considered to have enough nutrients and is very popular with Vietnamese people.

9. Do men and women all like to cook in your country?

I don't think gender affects whether one likes to cook or not. I mean, well, some people still hold the opinion that women should do all the housework, including cooking, in Vietnam and so yes there're a lot of families where the women are the only ones who do the cooking. However, this doesn't mean that more women like to cook than men.

10. What are the benefits of eating out?

It saves time and effort, obviously. You just need to go to a restaurant or a food stall, order some dishes and then wait. No need to buy and check the ingredients, or carefully cook the meal and wash the dishes afterwards. Also, eating out is more suitable for a ceremony or celebration that involves a lot of people – it's just impossible to cook meals for, say, every graduate on graduation day, for example.

11. Why do more and more people like to eat out?

Because it is time-saving and involves no effort. People are getting busier and busier with their life and work, so preparing a proper meal can sometimes be very difficult for them, and eating out really comes in handy. Just imagine that you have to work hard from 9 to 5 every day, and you still need to cook yourself something when you get home, and even need to wash the dishes after that? You'd also prefer eating out sometimes too.

12. Are there many foreign restaurants in your country?

Yes, we have a lot of Korean or Japanese or Thai restaurants in Vietnam, but I think they're popular only in big cities like Hanoi or Ho Chi Minh City. There're hardly any foreign restaurants in rural areas, maybe because people can't afford to eat those types of dishes, as foreign dishes are much more expensive than traditional ones most of the time.

13. Which food do you think is healthier, restaurant food or home-cooked food?

I think home-cooked food is healthier, as you can actually prepare the food so you can cook it in the most careful and cleanest way possible. As to restaurant food, it may taste better but you don't really know the origin or the preparation process of the dishes, so I don't think it's as healthy as home-cooked food.

14. How would you introduce a foreigner to the food and the food culture in (from) your country?

I would take him/her for a tour in Hanoi – you can taste almost every kind of traditional Vietnamese food in Hanoi, especially in Pho Co (the Old Quarter). We have pho, bun cha, banh mi (Vietnamese speciality bread), banh cuon, and so many other types of traditional foods here in Hanoi. Most foreigners show their interest in pho, so I think I would probably take our visitor to a Pho Restaurant first and then we can try other types of street foods later.

Vocabulary:

✓ Unsaturated [adjective] (không bão hòa) Denoting fats containing a high proportion of fatty acid molecules with at least one double bond, considered to be healthier in the diet than saturated fats.

e.g. The fat is mainly unsaturated, so potentially healthier, although all fats are equally high in calories (nine calories per gram).

✓ Fiber [noun] (chất xơ) Dietary material containing substances such as cellulose, lignin, and pectin, that are resistant to the action of digestive enzymes.

e.g. High consumption of dietary fiber regulates blood sugar levels, reduces cholesterol and can prevent heart disease and cancer.

✓ Significance [noun] (sự quan trọng) Importance

e.g. Adolescent education was felt to be a social issue of some significance.

✓ Veggie [noun] (rau) vegetable [informal]

e.g. We grow our own veggies at home - and I know that I am lucky, but why not invest in a veggie box delivered to your door?

✓ Vegan [noun] (người ăn chay trường) A person who does not eat or use animal products

e.g. Many recipes use animal products, but almost all include vegetarian and vegan versions.

✓ Humane [adjective] (nhân đạo) Having or showing compassion or benevolence

e.g. For me the ban, when implemented, will represent a step towards a more humane treatment of wild animals.

✓ Cuisine [noun] (ẩm thực) Food cooked in a certain way

e.g. The menu covers various international cuisines with an emphasis on South American recipes.

✓ Hygienically [adverb] (một cách vệ sinh) Conducive to maintaining health and preventing disease, especially by being clean; sanitary

e.g. The campaign aims to provide children with hygienically prepared meals through their schools, to encourage them to keep studying.

✓ Discourage [verb] (làm nhụt chí, mất hứng) To make somebody less confident or enthusiastic about something.

e.g. The difficulty of the exam discourages some students from taking it.

✓ Obese [adjective] (béo phì) Grossly fat or overweight

e.g. Children who are overweight but not obese should be evaluated for other factors as well.

✓ Come in handy [expression] (hữu dụng) To be useful

e.g. Don't throw your old trousers away – they may come in handy sometime.

✓ Speciality [noun] (món đặc biệt) A type of food that a place is famous for, because it is so good.

e.g. You can only buy goat's cheese in a speciality cheese shop.

36. Describe a letter /email you received and that you liked.

Today I'm going to talk about an **unforgettable** letter that was sent to me a month ago. It was from my dear sister, who was attending a prestigious university in Porto, Portugal. She sent me this handwritten while she was enjoying a trip around Europe during her mid-term break.

In her letter, she said that each country she had visited **gave her a lasting impression**. While Portugal never failed to deliver a sense of **tranquility**, Holland amazed her with **breath-taking** scenes and its varieties of tulip flowers and wind turbines. Additionally, she was charmed by Paris's **glory** and romanticism, and she was so excited because her dream to see the Eiffel Tower was finally **accomplished**. The weather there was also very nice, and the exquisite **cuisines** of Western countries completely satisfied her **appetite**. With the assistance of numerous images her description was more **vivid**, which gave me further insight into foreign nations.

I derived a lot of pleasure from this letter because this is the first time I got the chance to know more about her life in another country since she left our home. For one thing, it is a real relief to know that she could **integrate well into** an exotic environment and still achieve a high level of academic performance. This would benefit her personal development and **career advancement** in the future. For another, by going to many popular countries, she has partly fulfilled her burning ambition to travel around the world. This letter will act as an incentive to make me study with more **diligence** to be as successful as her.

VOCABULARY:

1. unforgettable [adj]: you cannot forget it: không thể quên được

Eg: The championship will be an unforgettable event in his career.

2. give a lasting impression [expression]: give sb an unforgettable feeling of sth/sb : gây ấn tượng mạnh mẽ, sâu sắc

Eg: Her perfect performance gave the judges a lasting impression.

3. tranquillity [n]: the state of peacefulness : sự yên bình

Eg: The countryside is always full of tranquillity.

4. breath-taking [adj]: very exciting or impressive : vô cùng đẹp mắt

Eg: From here you can see the breath-taking view of the mountains.

5. glory [n]: great beauty : sự hoa lệ

Eg: The city was spread out beneath us in all its glory.

6. (to) accomplish [v]: to succeed in doing or completing sth : hoàn thành

Eg: The first part of the plan has been safely accomplished.

7. cuisine [n]: a style of cooking in a certain place : nền ẩm thực

Eg: This country is noted for its excellent and diverse cuisine

8. appetite [n]: physical desire for food : khẩu vị

Eg: He suffered from a headache and a loss of appetite.

9. vivid [adj]: producing very clear memories in your mind : sống động, chân thực

Eg: He gave a vivid account of his life as a fire fighter.

10. (to) integrate [v]: into/with sth: to become or make sb accepted as a member of a social group : hòa nhập

Eg: They have not made any effort to integrate into the local community.

11. career advancement [expression]: development in jobs : thăng tiến trong sự nghiệp

Eg: Lifelong learning is essential to career advancement.

12. diligence [n]: careful and thorough work or effort: sự cần mẫn

Eg: This shows great diligence in her schoolwork.

37. Describe something you bought that you are happy with/ something you bought according to an advertisement

Version 1

It was **last summer** that I bought a new **yogurt maker** and I am very satisfied with it.

This machine is quite **small** and fits conveniently into my kitchen. **Interestingly**, it looks like a **cooker** with six glasses inside. And the most **important** thing is that it is very **easy to use**. You just have to **pour** the mixture of ingredients to make yogurt into these glasses, turn the yogurt maker **on** and **leave it** for a few hours. Then, you will have delicious **home-made yogurt**.

Thanks to the simple instructions, I can make yogurt for **my whole family** any time I want. As yogurt is good for our **health**, eating it daily can make people healthier, it can help to prevent some potentially **fatal** diseases and **boost** the human immune system. Therefore, the members of my family have all **adopted the habit** of eating yogurt every day. Owning a yogurt maker helped me to cut down **considerably** the amount of time that it took to make yogurt, not to mention **the higher quality** as opposed to the **traditional** method.

At present, I still make yogurt **every day** for my family with this machine and I think that this is an **indispensable** product for preparing an **essential** part of our regular diet.

VOCABULARY:

✓ **fits**: [verb] is the right shape and size for something.

Example: This jacket **fits** me perfectly, but those shoes don't fit at all.

✓ **pour**: [verb] to make a liquid flow from a container.

Example: **Pour** some milk into my glass, please.

✓ **potentially**: [adverb] used to say that something may develop into something.

Example: Smoking will not kill you immediately, but it is **potentially** harmful for your health.

✓ **fatal**: [adjective] causing or ending in death.

Example: Police were called to a **fatal** accident, in which 3 people were killed.

✓ **immune system:** [expression] the system in your body that helps it fight against infection and disease.

Example: A strong **immune system** is necessary to remain fit and healthy.

✓ **adopted the habit:** [expression] started to use a particular method of doing something.

Example: Last month, my friend **adopted the habit** of running for one hour every day in order to keep fit.

✓ **cut down:** [phrasal verb] reduce the amount, size or number of something.

Example: I should **cut down** my working hours and spend more time just relaxing.

✓ **indispensable:** [adjective] too important to be without it

Example: A good dictionary is **indispensable** for learning a foreign language.

VERSION 2

I would like to talk about a **household appliance** which plays an important role in my daily life and that is a washing machine. I and my family members use it every day to wash **laundry** such as clothing or **sheets**.

Personally, I think a **laundry machine** is very **advantageous** to me due to its convenience. Instead of spending nearly an hour on cleaning clothing by hand, it takes me only 5 minutes to put all the clothing in a washing machine. Moreover, my **clothes washer** has a large **capacity** up to 10kg so I can run a **load of** clothing through it at one time in order to save both water and time. As a result, I can save a huge amount of time in order to do other **household chores** or even learn new things that I'm interested in; namely foreign languages or cooking.

In addition, a washing machine can dry clothing dramatically; therefore, I needn't to worry about wet clothing in the rainy season or winter.

I think the washing machine is one of the greatest inventions of the industrial revolution that brings various benefits for me and other people using it.

VOCABULARY

✓ **Household appliance (noun): (đồ gia dụng)** a machine that is designed to do a particular thing in the home, such as preparing food, heating or cleaning

Ex: They sell a wide range of **domestic household appliances**—washing machines, dishwashers and so on.

✓ **Laundry (noun): (quần áo cần giặt)** clothes, sheets, etc. that need washing, that are being washed, or that have been washed recently

Ex: I and my family members use washing machine every day to wash laundry such as clothing or sheets.

✓ **Sheet (noun): (khăn, ga trải giường)** a large piece of thin cloth used on a bed to lie on or lie under

Ex: He slid between the sheets and closed his eyes.

✓ **Laundry machine = washing machine = clothes washer (noun): (máy giặt)** an electric machine for washing clothes

Ex: I ran a load of laundry through the washing machine.

✓ **Capacity (noun): (công suất, sức chứa)** the number of things or people that a container or space can hold

Ex: The theatre has a seating capacity of 2 000.

✓ **Load of sth: (lượng lớn)** a large number or amount of somebody/something; plenty

Ex: Uncle Jim brought a whole load of presents for the kids.

✓ **Household chores (noun): (việc nhà)** tasks that you do regularly

Ex: I'll go shopping when I've done my chores (= done the jobs in or around the house).

Part 3

1. Who does most of the shopping in your household?

Well, it's my mother. She is in charge of buying nearly everything in my house, especially the food. Actually, because her job is quite **demanding**, she is only free at the weekends to purchase new things for our family in the market or supermarket. At home, my mother is a talented manager at balancing the budget for the whole family.

2. What kinds of shopping do you like doing?

Well, I enjoy shopping for clothes with my sister and mother the most. Whenever we have a chance, particularly at the weekends, we usually spend hours at the markets and malls to see the latest fashions. Despite the fact that we do not buy them most of the time, we regard **window shopping** as precious time together having fun. It is also really good fun to try and **buy** something **at an auction**, but there is rarely an opportunity.

3. Is shopping a popular activity in your country?

Yes, it's very popular and has become an indispensable part of our life. Everybody shops for their own purposes, from **basic necessities** to luxury goods. Saturday and Sunday seem to be the busiest shopping days, and in reality, lots of people consider shopping as a kind of leisure activity or a way **to wind down**, rather than something practical.

4. What types of shops do teenagers like best in your country?

I assume buying clothes, cosmetics is extremely popular among girl teenagers in my country. Some of my friends are willing **to splash out** a lot of money on **cosmetics** of well-known brands, which I find quite unnecessary. On the other hand, teenage boys are more interested in purchasing gadgets and technological devices.

5. Do you think online shopping will replace shopping in reality? / Why is shopping online so popular these days?

Although I do not believe in the disappearance of high street shops and markets in the face of competition from online shopping, I have to admit the **overwhelming** popularity of online shopping these days. In my opinion, people shop through the Internet on account of the convenience, availability, and diversity in terms of choice that it offers.

6. What would you do if you bought something disappointing from the Internet? What are the disadvantages of shopping online?

Well, I would express my complaint to the seller and demand my **consumer rights** if I felt that I had been deceived when shopping online. Practically, the biggest threat online shoppers may face up with is fraud. In many cases, the actual size, color, or material of goods is very different from information on the website; consequently, buyers will be disappointed and even lose money if no refund is given.

7. Why do women like to go shopping?

Well, I think women's interest in shopping is innate. More often than not, girls pay more attention to their appearance than boys. Therefore, the demands for trendy clothes, eye-catching cosmetics and **accessories** seem endless. Sometimes, women shop as an escape from the pressure of both work and family care.

8. Do you think it's good for people to buy expensive clothes?

Yes, as long as they can afford it. Personally, I think people buy extravagant clothes not only for the quality, but also to show off their social status and **affluence**. However, I still think that there is no need to spend more money on clothing than other necessities.

9. Why do some people like to go shopping with friends?

Well, there are many advantages in shopping with friends. Firstly, you will not feel lonely with the company of friends in such large malls. Secondly a friend can sometimes be a **consultant** for you in choosing clothes, or giving more **objective** advice. Shopping with friends is just one way in which to spend time together and forget your worries for a while.

Vocabulary:

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: BUSINESS AND MONEY (sách collocations)
- 1. **(to) buy at auction** [expression]: to buy something at a public sale of goods or property, where people make higher and higher bids (= offers of money) for each thing, until the thing is sold to the person who will pay most

Example: **Buying** a property **at an auction** can be a nerve-wracking or exhilarating experience.

Vocabulary:

1. **demanding**[adjective]: needing a lot of skill, patience, effort: đòi hỏi cao
Eg: The work in this company is physically **demanding**.
2. **window shopping** [expression]: the activity of looking at the goods in shops/stores windows, usually without intending to buy anything: ngắm nghía hàng hóa nhưng không mua
Eg: The mall was full of people, but most were just **window shopping** rather than buying things.
3. **basic necessities** [expression]: things that you must have and cannot manage without: đồ dùng cần thiết, cơ bản
Eg: My people cannot even afford **basic necessities** such as food and clothing.
4. **(to) wind down** [phrasal verb]: to rest or relax after a period of activity
Eg: When I get home from work, I like **to wind down** by listening to music.
5. **(to) splash out** [phrasal verb]: to spend a lot of money on something
Eg: This year, I'm going **to splash out** all my savings on an overseas holiday.
6. **cosmetics** [noun]: substances that you put on your face or body to make it more attractive : mỹ phẩm

Eg: A **cosmetics** company was recently sued for selling substandard products.

7. **overwhelming** [adjective]: very great or very strong; so powerful that you cannot resist it or decide how to react : quá mạnh, lấn át

Eg: The **overwhelming** majority of those present were in favor of the plan.

8. **consumer rights** [expression]: the moral or legal claim to have or get sth of the consumer : quyền lợi người tiêu dùng

Eg: Respect for **consumer rights** is guaranteed by the law of this country.

9. **accessory** [noun]: a thing that you can wear or carry that matches your clothes: trang sức

Eg: Her clothes will be more attractive if she wears more **accessories**, such as a bracelet or necklace.

10. **affluence** [noun]: the fact of having a lot of money and a good standard of living : sự giàu có, thịnh vượng

Eg: His recent **affluence** surprised all of his old friends, who had known him in the days when he was out of work.

11. **consultant** [noun]: a person who give advice about sth to other people : cố vấn

Eg: Josh was employed in our company as a marketing **consultant**.

12. **objective** [adjective]: not influenced by personal feelings or opinions; considering only facts : khách quan

Eg: Experts argue that the exam is an **objective** test of the ability of students.

38. Describe an achievement you are proud of

Sample answer bài Describe success you would like to achieve (in the near future).

➔ Chuyển sang thì quá khứ ☺

Well, my **foremost** goal at the moment is to be granted a full scholarship at a Western university. Studying abroad has always been one of my biggest **ambitions** and if I can achieve this, I will be able to **get access to** a more advanced education, which is a **golden opportunity** for personal development. Of course, acquiring a foreign scholarship presents both challenges and difficulties. Applying to a foreign university is a lengthy procedure, which not only requires an excellent level of academic performance, but also active participation in extracurricular activities. Besides, a high **level of competition** is unavoidable, as there are numerous potential and **competent** applicants.

Firstly, I will have to try my best in terms of **scholastic achievement**. I also need to enhance my English skills by reading more in English. My time will also be partly dedicated to community work, because this **plays an essential part** in satisfying the application form. If I could succeed in achieving this goal, I would be extremely happy and proud of myself. This would not only prove my own abilities but also my **determination** and **perseverance**. To my thinking, the experience of pursuing higher education is usually demanding, but in the end, very **rewarding**.

VOCABULARY:

13. foremost [adj]: the most important or famous : quan trọng nhất

Eg: The question has been foremost in his mind recently

14. ambition [n]: sth you want to do or achieve very much : tham vọng

Eg: His burning ambition was to study medicine.

15. (to) get access to [expression]: to get the opportunity or right to use or see sb : tiếp cận với

Eg: You need a password to get access to the computer system.

16. a golden opportunity [expression]: a special, wonderful opportunity : cơ hội vàng, cơ hội tuyệt vời

Eg: Businesses have a golden opportunity to expand into new markets.

17. level of competition [n]: the extent, degree of a competition between people : sức cạnh tranh

Eg: The level of competition in this class is getting more intense.

18. competent [adj]: having enough skill or knowledge to do sth well : có năng lực, trình độ

Eg: Nam is regarded as the most competent employee.

19. scholastic achievement [n]: successes connected with schools and education : thành tích học tập

Eg: Her scholastic achievement is always impressive

20. play an essential part IN sth [expression]: have an important role in sth : đóng vai trò thiết yếu

Eg: Minh plays an essential part in this project

21. determination [n]: the quality that makes you continue trying to do sth : quyết tâm

Eg: He fought the illness with courage and determination.

22. perseverance[n]: the effort to overcome difficulties and obstacles : sự kiên trì, bền bỉ

Eg: They showed great perseverance in the face of difficulties

23. rewarding [adj]: worth doing; that makes you happy because you think it is useful or important : xứng đáng

Eg: Teaching is not very rewarding in terms of the finance received.

39. Describe an interesting person from another country

You should say:

Who this person is?

How you know this person?

What he/she likes to do?

And explain why you think he/she is interesting.

Sample 1

I am going to talk about a (foreign) woman whom I have met before who has **hada great influence** on me. She is Ms. Phoebe Tran, host of 8IELTS programs which are **well - known** on Youtube currently.

I met her in a seminar about IELTS strategies in HCM City a couple of months ago. On that day, she was a speaker sharing her experiences and tips in order to be successful in the IELTS exam. At this seminar, besides asking for **pieces of advice** in learning IELTS, I asked her about her real life experiences, since I was extremely keen to know how she had become a successful **career woman** and how much effort she has had to make to achieve her success. She was very friendly and **approachable**, far more than I expected, in fact. She was willing to share her ideas and answer all my questions. I felt that she really wanted to inspire me by her example.

She must be one of the most energetic, inspirational speakers I have ever met so far. Now I have **sufficient** confidence to **overcome** all obstacles and reach my goal.

She is a truly a **role model** for me and the young generation to **look up to**, and that's why I want to know more about her. And so I think I will continue to follow her on the internet and when she gives lectures.

VOCABULARY

✓ **have a great influence on sth/sb:** the power that somebody/something has to make somebody/something behave in a particular way

Example: Her parents no longer have any real influence over her.

✓ **well – known:** known about by a lot of people, famous

Example: His books are well known. You can find them in any bookshop in the city.

✓ **piece of advice:** an opinion or a suggestion about what somebody should do in a particular situation

Example: My doctor gave me a useful **piece of advice** about drinking lots of water in order to avoid problems with my kidneys.

✓ **career woman:** a woman whose career is very important in her life

Example: She is a successful **career woman** and she is now the director of the company.

✓ **approachable:** friendly and easy to talk to; easy to understand

Example: Despite being a big star, she's very approachable.

✓ **sufficient:** enough for a particular purpose; as much as you need

Example: Our budget is hardly sufficient to pay people, let alone buy any new equipment.

✓ **overcome:** to succeed in dealing with or controlling a problem that has been preventing you from achieving something

Example: She overcame injury to win the Olympic gold medal.

✓ **role model:** a person that you admire and try to copy

Example: We need positive role models for young women to aspire to.

✓ **look up to:** admire and respect

Example: We should **look up to** those people who help others in the community.

Sample 2

You may want to hear about one of my idols – he could be the one I admire most compared to the others. Not only is he a proficient artist, but he is also proving himself to be a born star who **excels** in being an idol.

Well, his name might not be so familiar worldwide now, though it's quite well-known to the K-pop fans like me. He is one of the vocalists of a Korean boy band, and a really good one at that. An incredible thing is that he can also dance smoothly and sometimes earns centre stage for the

group's performance. And this is often really hard, as the center is considered the most important position, which draws the most attention from the audiences. To be honest, this made a strong impression on me since it's contrary to the common belief that those in charge of lead vocals can hardly perform a nice dance move. This ability **to express himself** through dance and song is a rare talent, and **it's no wonder that** he's **moving up so fast in his career ladder**.

There are lots of reasons why he's done so well as an idol. The two most significant factors among them, I think, are his **application** and always having a pleasant attitude. Personally, I think that **persistence** is one of the key factors leading to the success of most people and of course he is no exception. There are tons of videos from when he was in primary school proving that he's a born singer, yet without putting enormous effort into training, he might not have **acquired so many skills** and become such a great vocalist now. Part of his attitude is that he is always smiling. This image, I think, is why he **appeals to audiences**, and he always has a positive attitude in his work. His regular presence on many entertainment shows, always with a smile on his face, earns him a huge number of supporters.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Art:

1. to express oneself:

Meaning: to communicate some idea or emotion through speech, writing, painting, music or some other form of art

Example: Schools should encourage pupils **to express themselves** through art, music or creative writing in order to stimulate their imagination.

2. to appeal to audiences:

Meaning: to attract those who go to watch a film, play or concert

Example: Concerts with well-known artists are likely **to appeal to audiences**.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Work:

1. to acquire experience/knowledge/skill:

Meaning: to gain experience/knowledge/skill by your own efforts or behavior

Example: Some school leavers prefer **to acquire experience** working in a chosen profession rather than entering university.

Dịch đại ý

To acquire experience/ skill: có được kinh nghiệm, kỹ năng

Nghĩa: có được kinh nghiệm, kiến thức, kỹ năng bằng chính nỗ lực hay thái độ của bạn

Ví dụ: Một số người tốt nghiệp cấp 3 thích có được kinh nghiệm làm việc ở một nghề nghiệp nhất định hơn là học đại học.

2. to move up the career ladder

Meaning: a series of stages by which you can make progress in your career

Example: Ambitious employees look for a job in which there is a chance **to move up the career ladder**.

Dịch đại ý

To move up the career ladder: bước cao hơn trong nấc thang sự nghiệp

Nghĩa: Tiến lên trong một loạt các giai đoạn trong sự nghiệp

Ví dụ: Những nhân viên tham vọng thường tìm một công việc có thể bước cao hơn trong nấc thang sự nghiệp.

Từ vựng khác:

1. **excel** [verb] to be extremely good at something: rất giỏi trong lĩnh vực gì

E.g. Rebecca always **excels** in languages at school.

2. **it's no wonder** [expression] it is not surprising: chẳng bất ngờ khi

E.g. **It's no wonder** the children are excited - it is the first time they've been abroad!

3. **application** [noun] determination to work hard at something

E.g. You need great **application** to become a successful musician.

4. **persistence** [noun] do something despite difficulties: kiên trì.

E.g. It was her sheer **persistence** that wore them down in the end.

40. Describe a piece of good news that you received.

You should say

what the news was

where you were when you received this news [Or: What you were doing when you received this news]

who gave you this news

and explain why you felt this was good news.

ANSWER

I'm going to talk about the time when I received the official notification of my scholarship to study in Japan over a year ago.

It's been a long time but I can still remember that day so well. At the time I got the news, I was **taking a quick nap**, then the alert sound from my phone woke me up. A new email had arrived.

It was an email from the International Affairs Office of a university in Japan informing me that I had been chosen to receive a scholarship during my exchange semester there. Several months before that day, I had applied for an academic exchange program in this university, they had accepted my application and nominated me to the **Scholarship Committee**.

So, when I received this email, it took my brain a few seconds for this news to **sink in**, and then **my heart suddenly jumped**. I **leapt out of my bed** and **screamed out loud**, because I was extremely excited. I had been waiting for this email for two months since I gained the **admission**. If I hadn't won the scholarship, my living expenses would have become a heavy **financial burden** for my parents, but thanks to the monthly **grants** that I received from the university, I could really enjoy my time in Japan without worrying about financial problems. Even now, I still keep this lucky email in my mailbox to remind me of that day.

VOCABULARY

✓ **Take a nap**: take a short sleep, especially during the day.

Example: I usually take a nap after lunch.

✓ **Nominate**: to formally suggest that somebody should be chosen for an important role, prize, position, etc.

Example: He was nominated as the best actor.

✓ **Scholarship Committee**: the committee in charge of reviewing and selecting recipients for university's scholarship.

Example: The Scholarship Committee has announced the list of scholarship recipients this semester.

✓ **Sink in**: be fully understood or realized.

Example: I was so surprised by the news of the disaster that it took a few moments to sink in.

✓ **Jump:** to make a sudden movement because of surprise, fear or excitement.

Example: Her heart jumped when she heard the news.

✓ **Leap:** to move or do something suddenly and quickly.

Example: She leapt out of bed.

✓ **Scream out loud:** to give a loud, high cry, because you are hurt, frightened, excited, etc. (in this situation: excited).

Example: I screamed out loud when I saw my old friend.

✓ **Admission:** the act of accepting somebody into an institution, organization, etc.; the right to enter a place or to join an institution or organization.

Example: She failed to gain admission to the university of her choice.

✓ **Burden:** a duty, responsibility, etc. that causes worry, difficulty or hard work.

Example: His illness placed a heavy financial burden on his family.

✓ **Grant:** a sum of money to be used for a particular purpose – in this case, given by the university to pay for my education during that semester.

Example: The University awarded me a grant, which enabled me to undertake a new piece of research.

QUESTIONS FOR PART 3

40.1. How do people share good news?

Well, there are plenty of options: email, letters, Facebook, twitter, to name a few. Or maybe we can ditch the technology and invite someone out to dinner for the **big announcement**. Actually, most people prefer in-person communication for the extremely good news and I'm not exceptional. In that way I can see their expression and I believe their happy face will definitely **make my day**.

40.2. How does modern technology affect the delivery of information?

I would say that high tech developments impact heavily on the delivery of information. Now you can share everything that happens around you with someone halfway around the world **in a matter of seconds** with the availability of the Internet. But with the good always comes bad. Along with the development of things like cellphones, and computers is the disappearance of handwriting letters, which was the most popular way of communicating a few decades ago.

40.3. What kinds of good news have you receive before?

I guess I'm quite lucky because I've received countless pieces of good news and I would like to divide them into different categories. A promotion or an increase in salary like the one I received yesterday is extremely good news from work, while an invitation from my crush will be considered good news coming from an **intimate** kind of relationship. Other than that, I've received good news from other people. For example, my friend gave birth to a baby boy 2 weeks ago and it was quite a pleasant piece of news to hear.

VOCABULARY

- ✓ **Big announcement** (*tin quan trọng, thường là tin vui*) [noun] good and important news
Example: Kelly Ripa excited Live! viewers on Wednesday, when she made a "big announcement" as to who could be co-hosting with her next.
- ✓ **Make one's day** (*làm ai đó hạnh phúc*) [idiom] to make someone very happy
Example: By telling me that I'm accepted to this job, she really makes my day.
- ✓ **A matter of something** (*chỉ là*) [idiom] only; just, used to emphasize that an amount is small
Example: In a matter of seconds, the building was in flames
- ✓ **Every cloud has a silver lining** (*việc gì cũng có 2 mặt*) [idiom] everything has two sides; the good side and the bad side
- ✓ **Intimate** (*thân mật*) [adj] having, or being likely to cause, a very close friendship or personal or sexual relationship
Example: Her poetry deals with intimate personal experience.

41. Describe a garden you visited and like.

You should say:

Where the garden is.

How you felt about it.

Explain why you like it

ANSWER

I would like to share with you my **impressions** of a garden that I visited last summer, which was full of colour and interest: Claude Monet's house and garden in Giverny, France.

As a big **fan** of Monet's paintings, especially the famous „Water Lilies“, I had always dreamed of seeing the scene in real life. So, when some friends suggested a visit last year, I **jumped at the chance**. After a journey of about an hour by train from our hotel, we arrived at Giverny. The garden was exactly as he had painted it – it was **a riot of colour**, from the peaceful white of the water lilies to the **striking** reds and oranges which filled some of the **flowerbeds**.

The two parts of the garden **complemented each other** perfectly. We first admired **the array of bright flowers** and fruit trees in the Clos Normand, but my favourite part was the water garden, and we enjoyed **a leisurely stroll, taking in all the colours**, perfumes and bird songs. Monet **avidly** collected

prints of Japanese gardens, and these inspired the Japanese bridges covered with **wisterias**, the water lilies in the **pond**, and the **bamboo** and **weeping willows** which he planted.

For me, it was like a **wonderland** of colours and a dream come true after so many years.

VOCABULARY

✓ **impression**: feeling or feelings (in the plural) about the garden (impressions) “His impression of the meeting was that it didn't go very well.”

✓ **fan**: although the word is often used in the context of football nowadays, here it means a person who admires [Monet's paintings].

“She is a huge fan of Maroon 5.”

✓ **jumped at the chance**: I enthusiastically accepted the opportunity to visit the garden.

“He jumped at the chance to go to Las Vegas with his boss.”

✓ **a riot of colour**: a collection of many different colours.

“Sandra's rose garden is a riot of colour.”

✓ **striking**: very attractive and unusual.

“The woman he was with was wearing a striking outfit last night.”

✓ **flowerbeds**: a piece of a garden or park in which flowers are grown.

“He loves digging in his flowerbeds.”

✓ **complemented each other**: each part of the garden added something different to the other part, so that the garden as a whole became more attractive.

“The wine and the fish complemented each other to form a perfect meal.”

✓ **the array of bright flowers**: the large and impressive collection of flowers. “The array of bright

flowers in her garden surprised everybody. They didn't realize she had planted so many varieties."

✓ **a leisurely stroll:** a slow, relaxing walk.

"We went for a leisurely stroll along the beach this morning."

✓ **taking in all the colours:** our eyes noticed all the colours and features of the garden.

"We were taking in all the colours of his garden, when all of a sudden we heard a large crash outside the garden gate. Two cars had just bumped into each other."

✓ **avidly:** Monet collected prints of Japanese gardens *enthusiastically*.

"He studied English avidly, from morning until late in the evening."

✓ **prints:** copies of original drawings or paintings.

"The artist offered her prints for \$100 each."

✓ **wisterias:** white or purple flowers which cover walls, bridges or trees.

"The wisterias in the garden were in full bloom."

✓ **pond:** a small area of still water, usually in a garden.

"There are many beautiful fish in the pond."

✓ **bamboo:** tall tropical plants which have hollow stems" [the long, thin part of the plant] used for building or furniture.

"Pandas love to eat bamboo."

✓ **weeping willows:** trees which grow near water and have „branches" which hang downwards.

"There are two weeping willows on the property, but we should cut one down."

✓ **wonderland:** an imaginary place in children's stories.

"The amusement park was a wonderland for both children and adults."

Part 3

1. Do you often visit public parks?

Yes, I do. Although I am quite busy with work, I still spend a great deal of time visiting parks, especially at the weekends. Because the public park is just a kilometer from my house, I usually **have a stroll** there with my sister. So, whenever I have some time off, my local park is where you will probably find me.

2. Do you like parks?/ What do you like most about (going to) a park?

Well, I love being in a park. The main reason is that the park gives me a sense of **tranquility**, and it's a great place to **unwind** without being disturbed. Besides, it is a good chance to take exercise

like jogging, or just sitting by the lake talking with friends, watching the birds or appreciating the colours of the flowers.

3. What kinds of parks do you like?

I think an ideal park for me is a quiet, environmental oasis, with a variety of rocks, water features, flora and fauna and grass areas. As I grow older, I prefer this kind of park to crowded, hectic amusement parks, because I love the sights and smells of being **surrounded** by nature.

4. Did you go to parks when you were a child?

Yes, sometimes. I remembered being taken to amusement parks by my parents when I was young. There were plenty of **appealing** games to experience according to your age, and I **had a whale of a time** there. Now that I am an adult, I often go to parks alone or with my sister or friends, mainly to enjoy the peaceful scenery.

5. Do you think it's good to have parks and public gardens in cities (Why?)

Well, of course it is. Particularly in large cities, a park is an oasis of green in a **concrete jungle**, where people get away from **the hustle and bustle** of city life. They are places where people go to have lunch, to take some exercise, or to escape from their demanding tasks for a while. Without them, the city would be a rather grey and unwelcoming place.

6. Do you think there should be more of them?

Yes, I believe there should be more parks in big cities, because parks with a wide range of trees and grass can function like **the lungs of the city**. They offer a **refuge** from exhaust emissions, or provide sun shade to citizens and to some extent give relief from the city noise. The provision of more parks would be an **incentive** for people to take more exercise to stay healthy.

7. Do you think you will go to parks more often in the future?

Yes, I will. As I **acknowledge** the importance of exercise for one's health, I would like to visit parks more frequently. The more pressure I **endure**, the more I want to go to parks. If I have more opportunities, I will invite friends to meet up with me in the park rather than in cafes or cinemas.

Vocabulary:

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: CITIES (sách collocations)

1. **a concrete jungle** [noun]: a way to describe a city that is unpleasant because it has many large, modern buildings and few green spaces

Eg: Children growing up in a **concrete jungle** will never experience the sights and smells of the countryside.

2. **the lungs of the city** [expression]: places in the city where the air is less polluted

Eg: It is essential to have parks and green spaces – they are **the lungs of the city** where people can go to relax away from the traffic fumes.

Vocabulary khác:

1. **(to) have a stroll** [expression]: to have a walk to somewhere in a slow relaxed way: đi dạo chơi

Eg: On every Saturday, Linh and her husband will **have a stroll** in the gardens of the temple.

2. **tranquility** [noun]: the fact of being quiet and peaceful : sự yên bình

Eg: Visiting the countryside never fails to give Huy a sense of **tranquility**.

3. **(to) unwind** [verb]: to stop worrying or thinking about problems and start to relax: nghỉ ngơi, thư giãn

Eg: Music always helps me **unwind** after a busy day.

4. **(to) surround** [verb]: to be all around sth/sb : bao quanh cái gì

Eg: The lake near my house **is surrounded** by trees.

5. **appealing** [adjective]: attractive or interesting : lôi cuốn, thu hút

Eg: Spending the holidays in Britain isn't a prospect that I found particularly **appealing**.

6. **(to) have a whale of a time** [expression]: to enjoy a good time : thực sự vui vẻ

Eg: All the team **had a whale of a time** when they celebrated the astounding victory.

7. **the hustle and bustle of sth** [expression]: busy noisy activity of a lot of people in one place : sự nhộn nhịp, xô bồ

Eg: The manager went on holiday to escape **the hustle and bustle** of his hectic office routine.

8. **refuge** [noun]: a safe, protected area

Eg: During the war, she was given **refuge** in a neighbouring country.

9. **incentive** [noun]: sth that encourage you to do sth: động lực

Eg: There is no **incentive** for people to save fuel, because the price is so cheap.

10. **(to) acknowledge** [verb]: to accept that sth is true : thừa nhận, công nhận

Eg: The politician refuses **to acknowledge** the need to reform the divorce laws.

11. **(to) endure** [verb]: to experience and deal with sth that is painful or unpleasant : chịu đựng

Eg: They had **to endure** a long wait before the case came to trial.

42. Describe a change that will improve your local area.

You should say:

What the change is

How the change works

What kinds of problems the change will solve

and how you feel about the change.

I am going to talk about an alteration in the local education system that I believe will have enormous positive effects.

Although I am pretty satisfied with the quality of life in my neighbourhood, I would say that there is still room left for improvement. I believe that the innovation that would most benefit the local citizens would be the integration of **continuous assessment** into the school curriculum. My proposal is that instead of having their performance measured by just two major **formal examinations**, students should be given the chance to be graded according to their level of progress throughout several smaller tests and assignments.

As a matter of fact, the current system only focuses on the result of mid-term and final tests, which leads to the fact that students usually **cram** before **sitting an exam** rather than paying close attention during the whole semester. On the contrary, by being able to prove their ability in frequent smaller tests, not only can students escape the stress of **being bombarded with too much ground to cover**, but they will be encouraged to concentrate at all stages of the semester. Moreover, taking more frequent exams means more opportunity for teachers to **give feedback** on and **keep track of** their students' improvement. All the benefits of this change would greatly assist students in achieving the grades they need.

Personally, I feel very hopeful about this change. I am actually extremely confident that continuous monitoring of students' achievement will have numerous benefits for the local education system. I hope to realize my ambition someday to help youngsters **to make the grade** in their chosen field.

Vocabulary

Từ vựng trong chủ đề *Education*

1. continuous assessment (expression): giving students marks for course work or projects, rather than formal exams

Nghĩa: cho học sinh điểm dựa trên điểm bài tập hay dự án nhóm, thay vì các kì thi chính thức

Example: Many students prefer **continuous assessment** because they consider that exams are unfair and too stressful.

2. a formal examination (expression): a test conducted under strict, regulated conditions

Nghĩa: một kì thi được xây dựng với các quy định khắt khe

Example: Entrance to university usually involves achieving required grades in **a formalexamination**, such as IELTS.

3. to sit an exam (expression): to take an exam

Nghĩa: tham gia 1 kì thi

Example: Some students claim that they feel more motivated to study when they have **to sit anexam** at the end of their course.

4. to bombard someone with something (expression): to continually send someone something, esp. to inform or influence them.

Nghĩa: liên tục, dồn dập gửi cái gì cho ai đó, thường để thông báo hoặc thuyết phục ai

Example: Every day it seems as if we **are bombarded with** e-mail messages warning of computer viruses.

5. to cover a lot of ground (expression): to deal with a lot of information and many facts.

Nghĩa: sử dụng nhiều thông tin, sự thật và tài liệu khác nhau

Example: The history lecture **covered a lot of ground** today.

6. to give feedback (expression): to give guidance on the work of a student through comments or corrections

Nghĩa: hướng dẫn học sinh học bằng cách nhận xét và chữa bài

Example: It is essential for teachers **to give some feedback** to students, so that students understand their mistakes and can improve.

7. to make the grade (exp): To successfully reach the necessary standard

Nghĩa: đạt được những tiêu chuẩn cần thiết

Example: Nobody can succeed in their studies if they rely on luck rather than hard work **to make the grade**.

Từ vựng khác:

1. to cram for an examination/ a test (expression):to study very hard for an exam.

Nghĩa: Học rất vất vả cho 1 kì thi

Example: I have to go **cram for a test** now.

2. to keep track (of somebody/something) (expression):to continue to be informed or know about someone or something

Nghĩa: theo dõi quá trình gì đó

I've never been very good at **keeping track of** how I spend my money.

Part 3

1.Is your country changing rapidly?

Actually, **technological breakthroughs** have brought radical changes to Vietnam in the past few decades. At home, **labour-saving appliances** such as washing machines or dishwashers have facilitated household chores. Besides, portable electrical devices namely smart phones, laptops or tablet computers are ubiquitous all over the country. Most of them are even developed by Apple and Samsung, who are **ahead of the game** in the digital market. Obviously, Vietnam is adapting to global **advances in technology** at a breakneck pace.

2.What can a smart phone do these day?

It is beyond a shadow of a doubt that people can derive substantial benefits from smart phones. First and foremost, they offer a wide range of communication tools such as video calls, **text-messaging** and **video conferencing**, rather than the conventional voice calls. Furthermore, if people are desperate for a source of entertainment after brain numbing office hours, smart phones **come in handy**. They can play video games, go **online shopping** or even carry out **e-commerce** on the spot. In the modern world, besides youngsters, a section of the old generation have become real **silver surfers** as they are so **engrossed in** the cyber world, scrolling down the screen to update the latest news or chatter with friends.

3.Since most people do work on their computer, why do they still need to go to offices?

As a matter of fact, the number of those who are **computer-literate** is increasing, leading to the prevalence of working from home. However, personally speaking, it is essential for them to go to the office. The first reason is about human communication. Long hours spent in a computer-based **working environment** really **discourages real interaction** while in the workplace, colleagues can exchange words and enhance their interpersonal skills. Even, **becoming over-reliant on** computers

could trigger a mental illness such as autism if workers **segregate themselves from** the human contact in the long run.

4. Do you think people's work in the future will be heavily affected by technology?

Yes, of course. The boom in technology may bring about both positive and negative impacts on people's work in the future. On the one hand, **robotics technology** will greatly boost **labour productivity** in manufacturing and workers may enjoy a superior **working environment** when the workplace is **computerized** and equipped with **state-of-the-art** facilities. On the other end of the scale, the introduction of new-fangled technological tools could be at the expense of an accelerating rate of unemployment. As the workforce is **superseded** by modern machines, more blue-collar workers will be **dismissed** and, as a result, fall prey to social evils.

5. Compare the pace of technological progress in the past and now.

Compared to technological advances in the past, those of the present are much more rapid. It takes even less than one year for an Iphone version to be introduced and people keep **following suit**, **forking out money** in order not to buy things which are **obsolete**. Whereas in the past, television, for example, took several decades to be invented. To me this is understandable because technology in the olden days was **in its infancy** so it took ages for new inventions to be brought to life, which became the backbone for modern applications to develop in **leaps and bounds**.

Vocabulary

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Technology:

a technological breakthrough [noun] (một đột phá về công nghệ): an important new discovery in technology

Eg: The development of the micro-chip was a technological breakthrough which transformed the way in which people communicate.

advances in technology [expression] (tiến bộ công nghệ): the improvement or development in technology

Eg: Recent advances in medical technology are making a great contribution to the search for a cure for Aids.

video conferencing [noun] (hội thoại thấy hình): to see and discuss with people in different locations using the Internet.

Eg: In the worlds of business and education, video conferencing has enabled people to exchange ideas without travelling across the world.

labour-saving appliances [noun] (thiết bị tiết kiệm sức lao động): machines that reduce the amount of work or effort needed to do something.

Eg: The technological revolution in the home started with the introduction of labour-saving appliances such as washing machines and dishwashers.

e-commerce [noun] (giao dịch thông qua mạng Internet): buying and selling products or services using the internet

Eg: Businesses which rely on e-commerce make huge savings on offices, retail outlets and rents paid to landlords who own high-street properties.

online shopping [noun] (mua sắm trực tuyến): shopping while connected to the internet

Eg: For people who are physically disabled, or even for people who are simply very busy, online shopping is convenient and may also be cheaper.

text-messaging [noun] (gửi tin nhắn văn bản): the act of sending written messages using a mobile/cell phone

Eg: The ability to write using accurate grammar is declining, partly as a result of text-messaging instead of writing letters.

robotics technology [noun] (công nghệ rô bốt): the design, construction and operation of robots

Eg: There are examples of robotics technology everywhere, from space programs to manufacturing.

to be in its infancy [expression] (đang trong thời kì thai nghén): to be in the early development of something

Eg: It is clear that robotics technology is still in its infancy, and it is impossible to imagine the possible future developments

to become over-reliant on [expression] (quá phụ thuộc vào): to need something so that your survival or success depends too much on it

Eg: Businesses have become over-reliant on complicated computer systems, so that if these systems fail the results will be disastrous.

to become obsolete [expression] (trở nên lỗi thời): to be no longer used because something new has been invented

Eg: Technological innovation is now so rapid, that even the latest electronic devices soon become obsolete.

to be computer-literate [expression] (sử dụng thành thạo máy tính): able to use computers well

Eg: In today's competitive job market, it is essential to be computer-literate.

to computerize something [verb] (máy tính hoá): to provide a computer or computers to do the work

Eg: The factory has been fully computerized, enabling it to produce more efficiently.

silver surfer [noun] (người già dùng mạng): an old person who spends a lot of time using the Internet

Eg: Although young people are often more computer-literate than the older generation, nevertheless there are many silver surfers who use the internet all the time.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Reading:

to be engrossed in [expression] (mê mải vào cái gì): to be completely focused on something

Eg: A good work-life balance is important, because if people are too **engrossed in their work** their family life may suffer.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Work:

Labor productivity [noun] (năng suất lao động): the rate at which a worker, a company or a country produces goods, and the amount produced, compared with how much time, work and money is needed to produce them

Eg: Wage rates depend on levels of labor productivity.

Working environment [noun] (môi trường làm việc): the conditions that you work in

Eg: If work is to be enjoyable, then a friendly working environment is essential.

To dismiss somebody (from something) [verb] (sa thải ai): to officially remove somebody from their job

Eg: Employment legislation prevents employers from dismissing an employee without a good reason.

Từ vựng thuộc chủ đề Society:

segregate somebody (from somebody) [verb] (cô lập một ai đó): to separate people of different races, religions or sexes and treat them in a different way.

Eg: Although society no longer tolerates the policy of segregating whites from blacks, many people of different origins live in their own separate communities.

Từ vựng khác:

ahead of the game [expression] (chiếm vị trí dẫn đầu): ahead of one's competitors or peers in the same sphere of activity.

Eg: Coca cola has been ahead of the game in the beverage market for years.

follow suit [expression] (làm theo, a dua): to do the same thing

Eg: When one airline reduces its ticket prices, the rest usually follow suit.

come in handy (trở nên hữu dụng): to be useful.

Eg: I think that this gadget will come in handy in the kitchen.

state-of-the-art [adj] (hiện đại): using the most modern or advanced techniques or methods; as good as it can be at the present time

Eg: The Physics Department has state of the art facilities what with the computer and projector.

new-fangled [adjective] (mới lạ và độc đáo): different from what one is used to; objectionably new.

Eg: I really don't understand these newfangled computergames that my grandchildren play.

leaps and bounds [expression] (nhANH chóng): rapidly; by large movements forward

Eg: The profits of my company are increasing by leaps and bounds.

43. Describe an interesting place that few people know.

You should say:

Where the place is

How you knew it

Why few people know it

And explain why it is interesting.

One of my special hobbies is discovering different streets in the new city I live. Whenever I **have a day off**, I find some new routes to discover unknown streets and enjoy the feeling on my own.

However, there is a street that sets itself apart from all the others, which always gives me a sense of **tranquility**. It is located near a **scenic** park and I usually go there in the morning, wandering along the street by myself.

Although I am quite a **social butterfly**, I do treasure being in my own space from time to time.

Practically, living in a **metropolitan** area with a **hectic pace of life** does not allow me to **allocate** much time for leisure activities. Therefore, having a fresh walk around my favorite street in the morning is the only time I can escape from my normal routine, completely free and just breathe,

without **taking** the burdens of life **into consideration**. I like to stand beside the road and watch the surroundings. The natural environment of the street is also wonderful and can be enjoyed from the park. The sky turns blue in the summer days while the clouds stretch in the warmth of the sun, seemingly **lingering** a while with me to watch the picturesque street. There are times when I want to have a change of view, and I visit the street at night. While the day view is quite peaceful and quite, the night view is extremely appealing. Yellowish lights in the parks are lit up and, together with the **fragrant** smell of flowers and trees, all of them have perfectly added to the charm of the street.

The street has become an irreplaceable part of me, because it can free me from the **stresses and strains** of the hectic city and bring me **recollections** of peaceful images in my hometown, so that I lose my **sense of alienation** in my new surroundings. It is so magical to be able to get in touch with things that give you familiar memories, especially when you are away from home.

Vocabulary:

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: C. COMMUNICATION AND PERSONALITY (sách collocations)

1. a social butterfly

Meaning: refers to an extroverted person who loves to socialize

Example: A **social butterfly** is a person who is socially dynamic, networking, charismatic, and personally gregarious.

Dịch đại ý

A social butterfly: người giao thiệp rộng

Nghĩa: chỉ người hướng ngoại, thích giao thiệp với người khác

Ví dụ: Một người giao thiệp rộng là một người năng động, lôi cuốn và thích giao du.

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: D. CRIME AND PUNISHMENT (sách collocations)

1. to take into consideration

Meaning: to think about a particular fact or detail and allow it to have some influence when you are making a decision

Example: The previous criminal records of those who are found guilty must **be taken into consideration** when a sentence is passed.

Dịch đại ý

To take into consideration: xem xét

Nghĩa: suy nghĩ kĩ về một sự thật hay 1 chi tiết nào đó ảnh hưởng tới quyết định cuối cùng

Ví dụ: Cần xem xét tiền án tiền sự của những kẻ phạm tội.

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: CITIES (sách collocations)

1. a hectic pace of life

Meaning: a life that is full of activity, very busy and fast

Example: City parks are places of peace, where residents can go for a few hours to relax.

2. a sense of alienation

Meaning: the feeling that you have when you have no connection with the people or places around you.

Example: Unfortunately, in huge cities there is no feeling of community and many people feel a **sense of alienation**.

- CÁC TỪ KHÁC:

1. **have a day off** [expression]: have day on which you do not have to work : có được ngày nghỉ

Eg: Whenever Sara **has a day off**, she always spends time with her little daughter.

2. **tranquility** [noun]: the state of being quiet and peaceful : sự thanh bình

Eg: Living in a busy city like Ho Chi Minh, what I desire is a day full of **tranquility** in the countryside.

3. **scenic** [adjective]: having beautiful natural scenery : có vẻ đẹp của tự nhiên

Eg: Tourists want to visit areas of **scenic** beauty, with lakes and mountains.

4. **metropolitan** [adjective]: connected with a large or capital city : thuộc đô thị

Eg: In developing countries, **metropolitan** areas are mushrooming under the pressure of overpopulation.

5. **(to) allocate** [verb]: to give sth formally to sb/ sth for a particular purpose : phân phối, phân phát

Eg: After discussion, they decided to **allocate** more jobs and internships to students this year.

6. **(to) linger** [verb]: to stay somewhere for longer because you do not want to leave: nán nà, nán lại

Eg: Tiffany **lingered** for a few minutes to talk to Stephen.

7. **fragrant** [adjective]: having a pleasant smell : thơm phức, thơm ngát

Eg: The air was **fragrant** with scents from the sea and the hills.

8. **stresses and strains** [expression]: pressures which give you worry and make you live faster
: sự căng thẳng và hồi hộp

Eg: In the end, she admitted that she failed to withstand **the stresses and strains** of city life .

9. **recollection** [noun]: a thing that you remember from the past

Eg: I have happy **recollections** of my childhood in Paris.

Part 3

1. Do you feel like listening to music over and over again?

Normally no. However, there are still times when I find a song **easy on the ear** or very inspiring, I will replay it the whole day long, until I **get fed up with it**.

2. What types of noises do you come across in your daily life? Does any noise bother you?

I'm surrounded with noises almost every day, and most of them drive me crazy whenever I hear them. For example, noises from vehicles are an inescapable **feature of urban living** but, well, unfortunately for me, I need to go to school and then I get stuck in a traffic jam almost every day. It's absolutely awful, especially when I stop next to a truck or a bus that keeps pressing its horn continuously.

3. What are some of the advantages of quiet places?

Well, **tranquil** areas usually offer people some benefits that others can't, such as mental comfort and opportunities for concentration. The first advantage that should be mentioned here is a calm mind. For most people, a quiet **setting** is the best environment for their brain to relax. Another point is that this type of environment **facilitates** the seamless flow of critical thinking, so people can concentrate totally on the assigned task, thus performing effectively at work.

4. What kind of places do people want to go to when they want to be alone?

I think they might want to go to a remote place or somewhere few people know them. A remote environment may be the least noisy place which **lends itself** to being alone. Meanwhile, although a strange place might not always be a peaceful one, yet because almost nobody knows who you are, it can give them the same feeling as being by yourself.

5. Do you think that cities will become noisier in the future?

Yes. It's a potential trend for various reasons. One is the **population shift** from rural areas to **metropolitan** regions as people seek better job opportunities. In turn, this puts pressure on **the**

housing stock, and the resulting overcrowding and **multiple occupancy** of buildings leads to increased noise. Another factor is that, with increasing **affluence**, more city-dwellers will have cars or motorbikes, so I am sure that noise pollution will increase along with air pollution.

6. What would you do if your neighbors were noisy all the time?

Oh, fortunately, I've never met such annoying people. But if I were in this position, I would politely ask them to be quiet. If they were stubborn and kept **irritating** me, I would have no choice but to call the authorities to warn them **to keep the noise down**.

7. Do you like to go to places where there are many people?

To be honest, I'm not really a **people-person**. I'd rather be on my own most of the time, or if I need to spend time with other people, I prefer to stay close to the ones I hold most dear. I'm someone who rarely speaks up or draws attention to myself in a crowd. Quiet places suit me more.

8. Why do some people not like quiet places?

Well, I think because they're **extroverts** who love going out and talking to people instead of staying by themselves in a lonely place. They might, unlike me, be **enlivened** by being with others, as many as possible. Therefore, they couldn't stand the feeling of being left alone without anyone else around.

9. Do you need a quiet place when you're working?

Yes. That's very important. To be frank, I have difficulty focusing on my work when there's any noise around. Thus, any interruption from outside would easily distract me from what I'm doing. Therefore, I really appreciate it when others leave me alone when I'm working.

Vocabulary:

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: CITIES (sách collocations)

1. **a feature of urban living** [expression]: a typical characteristic of city life

Eg: Having access to well-organised educational facilities is **a feature of urban living**.

2. **population shift** [noun]: a change in the number of people who live in a particular area

Eg: The last two centuries have seen a global **population shift** of people from rural areas to cities.

3. **housing stock** [noun]: all the houses and flats that are available for people to live in

Eg: The inadequate **housing stock** in most cities has resulted in high rents and overcrowded living conditions.

4. **multiple occupancy** [expression]: the occupation of a flat or house by more than one person or family, with shared facilities such as a kitchen or bathroom.

Từ vựng mới trong bài:

1. **easy on the eye/ear** [expression] (pleasant to listen to or look at): dễ nghe hay dễ nhìn.

E.g. The gentle music of the flute is **easy on the ear**.

2. **(to) get fed up with sth** [phrasal verb] to become bored or unhappy with a situation that has continued for too long

E.g. She has got fed up with her routine job, and she's looking for something more adventurous.

3. **tranquil** [adjective] (quiet and peaceful): yên tĩnh, thanh bình.

E.g. She led a **tranquil** life in the country.

4. **setting** [noun] (a set of surroundings; the place at which something happens): môi trường.

E.g. People tend to behave differently in different social **settings**.

5. **(to) facilitate** [verb] (to make an action or a process possible or easier): tạo điều kiện.

E.g. Structured teaching **facilitates** learning because students follow an organised plan of study.

6. **(to) lend itself to** [phrasal verb] to be suitable for something

E.g. This small car doesn't **lend itself to** travelling on mountain roads.

7. **metropolitan** [adjective] (connected with a large or capital city): thuộc về thành phố lớn.

E.g. The Las Vegas **metropolitan** area has at least 100 casinos.

8. **affluence** [noun] (the state of having a lot of money and a good standard of living): giàu có.

E.g. She compared the **affluence** of people in Paris with that of her home city in India.

8. **(to) irritate** [verb] (annoy somebody): làm ai đó bực mình.

E.g. The way she complains all the time really **irritates** me.

9. **(to) keep the noise down** [expression] to control the volume of noise so that it is not too loud

E.g. When my flatmate plays his music too loud, I ask him **to keep the noise down**.

10. **a people person** [noun] somebody who like to be with, or talk to, other people người biết đối nhân xử thế

E.g. She loves going to parties – she's a real **people person**.

11. **extrovert** [noun] (a lively and confident person who enjoys being with other people): hướng ngoại.

E.g. To be a celebrity, I think that you must be an **extrovert** in order to be successful.

12. (to) enliven [verb] to make something more interesting or more fun

E.g. The big rock concert has really **enlivened** the atmosphere in the city this weekend.

44. Describe a time when you received a free gift.

You should say:

What it was

Who gave it to you

When you had this gift

And explain how you felt about it.

The most **valuable** free gift I have ever received so far is an electronic dictionary, which I **obtained** by luckily winning a lottery in a bookstore. Last year, I was shopping in the center bookstore with my mom when it was announced that by **purchasing** things worth over 40 dollars, we would be given a chance to pick the lucky number. Actually, we did not expect much when participating in the game, and were completely **taken aback** when we won the most expensive, if not **extravagant** prize, which was the electronic dictionary.

In appearance, it was really **eye-catching**. It was a small brightly-coloured digital dictionary, not more than 4 by 6 inches in dimension, but it was one of the latest models, incorporating **leading-edge technology**. Moreover, this **versatile** dictionary also served as an Ipod, which allowed me to listen to music, **download podcasts** and play games. In terms of everyday use, it has really **come in handy** for me. I can easily carry it in my pocket and I use it quite often to learn new words and that has helped **enhance** my language skills a great deal. Thanks to this dictionary, learning English has **gradually** become my hobby, rather than a **compulsory** subject in school. Until now, I still count myself fortunate to have received this wonderful present for free. This electronic dictionary has changed the way I learn English and helped me to **excel at** this language.

Vocabulary:

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: TECHNOLOGY (sách collocations)

1. **leading-edge technology** [expression]: the most advanced position in technology
Eg: Manufacturers of electronic devices always advertise their products as having the latest **leading-edge technology**.

2. **(to) download podcasts** [expression]: to save a copy of a file from the Internet to your own device.

Eg: Computer technology is very useful for learning a new language. I often **download podcasts** to improve my listening skills.

Vocabulary:

1. **valuable** [adjective]: worth a lot of money: có giá trị

Eg: Luckily, nothing **valuable** was stolen from my flat, as I had taken my money and my laptop with me.

2. **(to) obtain** [verb]: to get something, especially by making an effort: đạt được

Eg: Further details can be **obtained** by writing to the above address.

3. **(to) purchase** [verb]: to buy sth : mua thứ gì đó

Eg: When you **purchase** an expensive product, always check the guarantee.

4. **(to be) taken aback by sth** [expression]: to be shocked or surprised by sth: bị làm cho ngạc nhiên

Eg: Lan was **takenaback** by his sudden and unexpected arrival.

5. **extravagant** [adjective]: costing a lot more money than you can afford or is necessary: xa xỉ

Eg: They do not have much money, so I was surprised by their **extravagant** wedding plans .

6. **eye-catching** [adjective]: (of a thing) immediately noticeable because it is particularly interesting, bright or attractive: bắt mắt

Eg: There were beautiful clothes in **eye-catching** colours in the shop.

7. **versatile** [adjective]: having many different uses: linh hoạt, nhiều công dụng

Eg: Eggs are easy to cook and are an extremely **versatile** food.

8. **(to) come in handy** [expression]: to be useful: tiện ích

Eg: The extra money **came in very handy** to pay for my holiday.

9. **(to) enhance** [verb]: to increase or further improve the good quality, value or status of somebody/something: cải thiện

Eg: This new environmentally-friendly product is an opportunity **to enhance** the reputation of the company.

10. **gradually** [adverb]: slowly, over a long period of time: dần dần

Eg: Women have **gradually** become more involved in the decision-making process.

11. **compulsory** [adjective]: that must be done because of a law or a rule: bắt buộc

Eg: It is **compulsory** for all motorcyclists to wear helmets.

12. **(to) excel at** [verb]: to be very good at doing something: xuất sắc, vượt trội

Eg: As a child he **excelled at** music and art, and he now teaches these subjects to others.

45. Describe an occasion when you helped someone

You should say

When and where it happened

Whom you helped

What you did

How you felt about it

There are many times I ask myself what I have to do to be able to provide support for others.

However, when I got a thankyou from a stranger, a little boy, I realized helping was such a simple thing to do. I helped him without knowing it.

I can't **recall** the exact time and date. I had a day off work, and I saw a boy selling balloons and other toys at a street fair. He looked at the crowd in **despair**, since no one showed any interest in his stuff. I went over to him and I could see his eyes **light up**. I bought a few toys and asked him some questions. From his answers, I knew that he was **having a hard time**, which can **drive anyone to tears**. His mother was in shock after his father had **walked out on** the family **out of the blue**. She could not work anymore due to her **state of mind**. Suddenly, the boy became the breadwinner of his family. He had to earn money for him, his mother and his younger sister to live.

When I got back from holiday, I took a picture of the toys and posted it on my Facebook page with a caption about the boy's story. I also named the street where he was selling and **called on** my friends to buy his stuff if possible. It's hard to imagine the huge effect of a **social networkingsite** like Facebook. Tons of people came to buy his stuff and offer him some help. After some months, I returned to visit him. He and his mother showed me great appreciation and said that my simple

action had changed their life. They had a house, the two children were able to go to school, and the mother was receiving medical treatment. They couldn't have asked for more, and I couldn't be happier.

Vocabulary

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: COMMUNICATION AND PERSONALITY (sách collocations)

1. **social networking site** [noun]: a website on which you communicate with people who share your interests

Eg: Young people today waste too much time on **social networking sites**, such as Facebook or Twitter.

Vocabulary

1. **(to) recall** [verb]

Meaning: to bring the memory of a past event into your mind, and often to give a description of what you remember (nhớ lại)

Example: The old man **recalled** the city as it had been before the war.

2. **despair** [noun]

Meaning: the feeling that there is no hope and that you can do nothing to improve a difficult or worrying situation (nỗi tuyệt vọng)

Example: A feeling of **despair** descended on us as we realized that we were completely lost.

3. **(to) light up** [phrasal verb]

Meaning: to show emotion or excitement

Example: His eyes **lit up** when his girlfriend walked into the room.

4. **(to) have a hard time** [expression]

Meaning: to have a lot of difficulties

Example: After he lost his job, Tom **had a hard time**, and he had to borrow money from friends.

5. **(to) drive one to tears** [expression]

Meaning: make someone cry (làm ai khóc)

Example: The story is so moving that it **drives me to tears**.

6. **(to) walk out on** [phrasal verb]

Meaning: to suddenly leave someone that you are having a relationship with and that you have a responsibility for

Example: Without any warning, one day she **walked out on** her husband and children.

7. **out of the blue** [idiom]

Meaning: suddenly (đột ngột)

Example: Your present arrived **out of the blue** and it took me completely by surprise.

8. **state of mind** [noun]

Meaning: Your mood or mental state at a particular time

Example: After watching the late-night vampire movie, I was in no **state of mind** to sleep.

9. **(to) call on** [phrasal verb]

Meaning: to invite someone to do something

Example: The teacher **called on** me to give a presentation in the next class.

Part 3

1. **Do you like helping others?**

Yes, I do. In my opinion, everybody has a **moral responsibility** to do others a favor, which is an indication of **give and take**. Only by **lending others a hand** when they need us can we expect something in return. The experience of assisting others makes me feel at peace and more useful in life.

2. **In your view, should children be taught to help others?**

Of course they should be. The willingness to help others, especially those less fortunate than ourselves, should be **instilled** in children from an early age, in order for them to become better adults in the future. Helping others with all their heart will gain them **genuine**, lasting relationships and respect from many people.

3. **How can we encourage children to help others?**

There are many ways to encourage your children to help others. Most important of all, parents should show good manners to be a **role model** for their kids. Besides, children should be educated from an early age to help others with simple yet helpful acts, like taking an elderly person across a street, or helping a neighbour water the plants. Through such acts in their **formative years**, children will develop a **social conscience** and become caring adults.

4. **How can (or, do) charitable organizations help people?**

The aim of a charitable organization is to help **alleviate** the sufferings of those unfortunate or underprivileged people in society. Whether supplying food for **poverty-stricken** people, or providing vocational training for the unemployed, charities play a key role in bridging the gap between the rich and the poor, helping others to overcome hardships and survive disasters.

5. What do you think are the benefits of having unpaid volunteer workers? How do you think the volunteers themselves benefit?

Nowadays, assistance is carefully calculated to extract certain benefits, and people tend to **alienate** themselves from others, rather than help them. Volunteer workers, who give without taking, will help by sharing love and care within their local or a wider community. Volunteering can help you to feel good about yourself, **combat** depression, keep you mentally stimulated, and provide a sense of purpose.

6. Do you think international aid (eg, from one national government to another), is important?

Yes, it is. Without the assistance of international aid, people in underdeveloped and disaster-stricken areas cannot get access to the basic necessities of life, like food, water and shelter. Such aid from official sources serves to promote goodwill among nations, as has been shown by the response from many governments to provide emergency help following the earthquakes in Mexico.

7. What are the qualities of being helpful?

I think that the essential quality of being helpful is your empathy. How can a person be helpful if he does not know how to **empathise with** what another person is going through? In addition, your warmth can also express your desire to help others. There are a lot of helpful people who cannot help but display their inner feelings, especially when they are moved by other people's stories.

8. Do you know someone who really likes helping people?

My high school teacher is a **benevolent** person, who tries her best to help other people, especially underprivileged students. She runs an English class for disabled students at the weekends without taking money, saying that helping others and seeing their smile is her greatest delight.

9. What can parents do to cultivate children's quality of helping others?

Family background is very important. Firstly, parents should be an exemplary model for their children to follow, by helping others in front of their children. Parents should also educate children to help others out of **goodwill**, not for any personal hope of reward. Showing children how

fortunate they are as compared to their poor peers will **shape their personality** and influence their behaviour in a very positive way.

Vocabulary:

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: FAMILY AND CHILDREN

(sách collocations)

1. **formative years** [noun]: a period in a person's life when they are growing up, which has a big influence on the person that they become later in life

Eg: In your **formative years**, the influence of honest and generous friends and family members is very important.

2. **family background** [noun]: the details about a person's family

Eg: Criminals sometimes have a bad **family background**, neglected or abused by parents.

3. **(to) shape a child's personality** [expression]: to influence the personality of a child when they are growing up

Eg: Parents are very influential in **shaping their children's personality** by setting a good example.

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: SOCIETY (sách collocations)

1. **a social conscience** [noun]: the state of being aware of the problems that affect a lot of people in society, such as being poor or having no home, and wanting to do something to help these people

Eg: Charities depend on the **social conscience** of the public in order to obtain donations and to recruit volunteer helpers.

2. **poverty-stricken** [adjective]: extremely poor, almost without any money

Eg: Many charities work with people who are **poverty-stricken** in developing countries.

Vocabulary khác:

1. **moral responsibility** [expression]: responsibility concerned with principles of right and wrong behaviour: trách nhiệm đạo đức

Eg: It is one's **moral responsibility** to help others when they are in dire difficulty.

2. **give and take** [expression]: the act of giving and receiving : sự cho đi và nhận lại

Eg: There must always be **give and take** in our life.

3. **(to)lend somebody a hand** [expression]: to help somebody with something

Eg: My father had a lot of painting to do, so I offered **to lend him a hand**.

4. **(to) instill** [verb]: to gradually make somebody feel, think or behave in a particular way over a period of time

Eg: The positive attitude of the coach **instilled** confidence in the team.

5. **genuine** [adjective]: sincere and honest; that can be trusted: chân thành, thật tình

Eg: Steve is a good person, who always expresses **genuine** concern for others.

6. **a role model** [noun]: a person that you admire and try to copy: hình mẫu lý tưởng

Eg: David is **a role model** for all of the students in my class.

7. **(to) alleviate** [verb]: to make sth less severe: giảm nhẹ

Eg: A number of measures were taken **to alleviate** the problems of traffic congestion in the city.

8. **(to) alienate** [verb]: to make sb less friendly or sympathetic towards you: thờ ơ, không thân thiện

Eg: Bob **alienated** himself from others in the team because of his selfish attitude.

9. **(to) combat** [verb]: to stop sth unpleasant or harmful from happening or from getting worse: chiến đấu, chống cự

Eg: Measures **to combat** crime seem to be ineffective, and people are living in fear.

10. **(to) empathise with**[verb]: to understand another person's feeling and experiences: thông cảm với

Eg: You have to learn how **to empathise** with others to be a better person.

11. **benevolent** [adjective]: kind, helpful and generous : bác ái, nhân ái

Eg: I love my mother's **benevolent** smile the most when she helps others.

12. **goodwill** [noun]: friendly or helpful feelings towards other people or countries : thiện chí

Eg: A spirit of **goodwill** was spread in the whole community by the visit of the President.

46. **Describe an experience when you taught someone to do something new**

You should say

When and where it happened

Whom you taught

What you taught him/her

How that person felt about it

I'm not very good at teaching. However, I was once successful at teaching my nephew a new skill: reading.

I started trying to teach my nephew to read about a year ago, having him sound out the titles of books before we read them, having him sound out words within the books here and there, and following along with my finger so he'd be able to see where we were. However, it didn't work. He was constantly **frustrated**, wanting to get to the fun part, and it seemed like we never made any forward progress. I mentioned this to my friend, who happens to be a primary teacher. She lent me some books that **came highly recommended**, with repeating patterns ("I see the cat." "I see the dog." "I see the bird.") paired with pictures that help little readers **grasp** the meaning of the story. The words and pictures **stuck in my nephew's mind** and his reading moved on **by leaps and bounds in a matter of weeks**. The books made him feel good about himself – they moved him forward incrementally, because they were designed to make kids feel confident in their abilities while gradually introducing new concepts. I'm glad that my nephew **approached** reading for enjoyment, not as a task he must do without fun or excitement.

Vocabulary

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: READING (sách collocations)

1. **(to) come highly recommended** [expression]: to be praised by a lot of people

Eg: Books by classic authors always **come highly recommended**, but books by new authors should not be forgotten.

2. **(to) stick in one's mind** [expression]: a memory or image which is remembered for a long time

Eg: Some of the stories that I read as a child still **stick in my mind** today.

1. **frustrated** [adjective]

Meaning: feeling annoyed or less confident because you cannot achieve what you want (khó chịu)

Example: Are you feeling **frustrated** in your present boring job?

2. **(to) grasp** [verb]

Meaning: to understand something completely

Example: The talk was interesting, but as the topic was new to me, I did not **grasp** everything that the speaker told us.

3. **by leaps and bounds** [expression]

Meaning: very quickly

Example: Since she has started doing exercise, her health has improved **by leaps and bounds**.

4. **in a matter of weeks** [expression]

Meaning: in a short time (several weeks) (chỉ trong vài tuần)

Example: The government will introduce the new environmental law **in a matter of weeks**.

5. **(to) approach** [verb]

Meaning: to start dealing with a task in a particular way

Example: We must **approach** the exam by making a study timetable of what to do each week.

Part 3

1. Why do you think some people like doing new things?

Obviously, humans are **curious** by nature. Besides, most people do new things because of their thirst for the unknown and the unseen. Practically, first-hand experience never fails to offer new **insights** and perspectives. Trying something new will enliven our seemingly **repetitive** routine. However, there are some other people as well who are reluctant to do new things and are introvert by nature.

2. What problems can people have when they try new activities for the first time?

Well, certain problems will **crop up** when people try new things for the very first time. It is usually expected that there would be some challenges for anything to be done for the first time, and it is important **to take sensible precautions**. One's **unfamiliarity** and inexperience can sometimes lead to failure, injuries or accidents when people decide **to take up sport**, for example. Yet, more often than not, **novices** will get better with time.

3. Do you think it's best to do new things on your own or with other people? Why?

I think this varies from person to person. Some people like to do things on their own in order to meet different people and **extend** their social network, or maybe to experience the activity by themselves. Other people only do things with their friends or family because they feel more comfortable in the **company** of others. In my case I don't mind, I'll try something new on my own or with friends if they are interested in doing it too.

4. What kinds of things do children learn to do when they are very young? How important are these things?

When children are young, they mostly learn through the actions and reactions of their parents and family members. **Appropriate** social practices from their family will enable children to establish long-lasting relationships and good behaviour. On the other hand, if children are neglected at any early age, they will be slow to **pick up** vital skills such as walking, speaking and literacy.

5. Do you think children and adults learn to do new things in the same way? How is their learning style different?

Personally, I think children and adults have different learning styles. Children have much less fear and they just try anything new without worrying about the result. As adults, we are much more **rational** and tend to consider things carefully before doing them. The benefits, risks or opportunities involved are always **taken into account**. Meanwhile, children have a much more adventurous spirit naturally and are eager to experience new things

6. Some people say that it is more important to be able to learn new things now than it was in the past. Do you agree or disagree with that? Why?

Well, I disagree. We should always learn new things in life. Maybe nowadays it's more important to learn new things quickly, faster than before, because the pace of life and rate at which new things are introduced is increasing, thanks to technology and science. Without the desire to adapt to changes, we will **lag behind** in the rat race and our personal development will suffer as well. Thereby, **capacities** should be increased to learn about new things and this is crucial for everyone, I believe.

Vocabulary:

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: SPORT AND EXERCISE (sách collocations)
- 1. **to take sensible precautions** [expression]: to do something in advance in order to prevent problems or to avoid danger
E.g. Anyone engaging in an extreme sport must **take sensible precautions** and seek expert advice
- 2. **to take up sport** [expression]: to start doing sport
E.g. Governments should provide more sports facilities to encourage people **to take up sport**.

Vocabulary:

1. **curious**[adjective]: having a strong desire to know about something: tò mò

Eg: They were very **curious** about the people who lived upstairs.

2. **insight**[noun]: the ability to see and understand the truth about people or situations: sự thấu hiểu

Eg: With a flash of **insight**, I realized what the dream meant.

3. **repetitive** [adjective] doing the same thing many times, so that it becomes boring

E.g: Housework is never finished, because there are always some **repetitive** chores to do.

4. **(to) crop up** [phrasal verb]: to appear or happen, especially when it is not expected : nổi lên, xảy ra bất chợt

Eg: I'll be late because something's **cropped up** at home.

5. **unfamiliarity** [noun]: the fact of having no knowledge or experience of something: sự không quen thuộc

Eg: Bob admits his relative **unfamiliarity** with fixing electrical appliances.

6. **(to) extend** [verb]: to make something longer or larger: mở rộng

Eg: There are plans **to extend** the no-smoking area.

7. **company** [noun]: the fact of being with somebody else and not alone: sự đồng hành

Eg: I enjoy Jo's **company** when travelling.

8. **appropriate** [adjective]: suitable, acceptable or correct for the particular circumstances: phù hợp

Eg: Now that the problem has been identified, **appropriate** action can be taken.

9. **to pick up** [phrasal verb]: to get information or a skill by chance rather than by making a deliberate effort

Eg: She **picked up** a little French when she was on holiday in Paris.

10. **rational** [adjective]: (of a person) able to think clearly and make decisions based on reason rather than emotions: lý trí

Eg: Linh is a **rational** girl, she knows how to handle problems properly.

11. **(to) take sth into account** [expression]: to consider particular facts, circumstances, etc. when making a decision about something : cân nhắc, xem xét

Eg: Coursework **is taken into account** as well as exam results at the end of the course.

12. **(to) lag behind** [verb]: to move or develop slowly or more slowly than other people, organizations, etc: bị bỏ lại phía sau

Eg: We still **lag far behind** many of our competitors in using modern technology.

13. **capacity** [noun]: the ability to understand or to do something: năng lực

Eg: Mary has an enormous **capacity** for hard work.

47. Describe a way of education

You should say:

- What it is.
- When you first knew about it.
- Whether you like it or not.
- What kind of education you would like to have.

Education is always considered as a **prerequisite for** personal growth and advancement. To **keep oneself abreast** of the frantic developments of the 21st century, large numbers of people are following different kinds of education apart from the formal one, the most **prevalent** of which is distance learning. Distance learning is a **state-of-the-art** educational model that has gained increasing popularity among learners the world over. Fortunately, I got access to distance learning programs at a very young age, when I took an online course about the environment, when I was thirteen. I really enjoyed the course, as it provided me with more information about the environment and moreover, the teaching time was **flexible**.

In my opinion, distance learning is a perfect **complement** to formal education, and I appreciate the chance to have it as the main way to pursue my education. Through e-learning, people can **tap into** a wide variety of courses without the need to physically attend classes in, perhaps, some distant educational centre. It is indeed like universities without borders. However, distance learning requires a high degree of maturity or **commitment** from students because it **proceeds** in the absence of teachers or tutors, although students continue **to study under supervision**. It suits **self-motivated** and self-directed students, instead of those who have difficulty in self-scheduling and independent learning. Well, though imperfect, distance learning has greatly benefited many people

by enabling them to study for **formal examinations**, or even **to work their way through university**. The possibilities opened up by distance learning seem **infinite**.

Vocabulary:

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: EDUCATION (sách collocations)

1. **to study under supervision** [expression]: to study under the direction of a responsible person, such as a tutor

Eg: At college, I discovered I did not have **to work under supervision** all the time, and I was free to do independent research.

2. **formal examinations** [expression]: tests conducted under strict, controlled conditions

Eg: Entrance to university usually involves achieving required grades in **a formal examination**, such as IELTS.

3. **to work your way through university** [expression]: to have a job when you are at college/university in order to help to pay for your studies

Eg: He had **to work his way through university** because his family was so poor that they could not afford to pay his tuition fees.

1. **prerequisite** [noun]: for sth : something that must exist or happen before sth else can happen or be done : điều kiện tiên quyết

Eg: Careful study of the market is a **prerequisite** for success.

2. **to keep oneself abreast of sth** [expression]: to make sure that you know all the most recent facts about a subject : luôn cập nhật

Eg: It is important **to keep abreast of** all the latest developments in computing.

3. **prevalent** [adjective]: that exists or is very common at a particular time or in a particular place : thịnh hành

Eg: These prejudices are particularly **prevalent** among people living in the North.

4. **state-of-the-art** [adjective]: using the most modern or advanced techniques or methods; as good as it can be at the present time : tân tiến

Eg: This company boasts a **state-of-the-art** system of security.

5. **flexible** [adjective]: able to change to suit new conditions or situations : linh hoạt

Eg: People should adapt a more **flexible** approach towards the problem.

6. **complement** [n]: a thing that adds new qualities to sth in a way that improves it : sự bổ sung

Eg: Tom is a perfect **complement** to the design team because he has great computer skills.

7. **to tap into** [phrasal verb]: to manage to use something in a way that brings good results

Eg: As a way of teaching English, he uses music **to tap into** the interests of his students.

8. **commitment**[noun]: the willingness to work hard and give your energy and time to a job or an activity : sự tận tâm

Eg: A career as an actor requires a great deal of **commitment**.

9. **(to) proceed**[verb]: to continue doing sth that has already been started : tiếp tục

Eg: We will now **proceed** with the experiment which we started yesterday.

10. **self-motivated** [adjective]: if a person is self-motivated, they are capable of hard work and effort without the need for encouragement : năng nổ

Eg: The activity calls for **self-motivated** and responsible participants.

12. **infinite** [adjective]: very great, impossible to measure : vô hạn

Eg: Studying abroad offers **infinite** chances for improvement.

48. Describe a businessman you admire.

You should say:

- Who he or she is
- What he or she did
- When you first knew him or her
- And explain why you are interested in him or her

I'd like to tell you about the CEO of the Vinamilk corporation, whom I admire so much.

Generally speaking, she's quite well-known to most Vietnamese people because Vinamilk is one of the biggest brand names in the Vietnamese milk market. As far as I know, she has run the business since the 1980s as the Deputy Chief of the company, and later became the CEO of Vinamilk. To be honest, though she **made a name for herself** as one of the most successful businesspeople in my country, I never heard about her until I saw an online advertisement for her company's charity event several months ago.

Perhaps this kind of social activity **accounts for** my great admiration for her. Well, there are so many articles talking about this on the Internet, but I don't take any notice of these, like, **fraudulent** comments. Only when my friend told me about what she saw at the event as a participant did I find out that Vinamilk CEO is a wonderful woman. I never imagined that she had gone to most of the poorest areas in Vietnam to give out free milk to **malnourished** adolescents and grant illiterate children precious scholarships. I particularly remember her smiley face when she said that she was **over the moon** watching children receiving her presents. This left a strong impression on me as I've always believed that business organizations need to show more social responsibility to communities through such practical altruistic activities. I strongly believe the Vinamilk CEO would **set a prime example** to other businesspeople who wish to gain admiration from society.

Các từ vựng mới trong bài:

make a name for oneself [collocation] (become well-known or respected for doing something): có tên tuổi trong lĩnh vực gì.

E.g. He has made a name for himself in sculpture.

account for [phrasal verb] (be the explanation or cause of something): giải thích cho điều gì.

E.g. The poor weather may have accounted for the small crowd.

malnourished [adjective] (in bad health because of a lack of food or a lack of the right type of food): suy dinh dưỡng.

E.g. Tired, malnourished people are prone to infection.

over the moon [idiom] (extremely happy and excited): rất hạnh phúc hay hào hứng.

E.g. They're over the moon about their trip to Japan.

set an example [collocation] (behave in a way that other people should copy): làm gương cho ai.

E.g. You should be setting a good example to your younger brother.

fraudulent [adjective] (obtained, done by or involving deception, especially criminal deception): dối trá, lừa dối.

E.g. His program was a **fraudulent** copy of American software.

49. Describe an age/stage you enjoyed most in your life.

You should say:

What the age/stage was

What did you like to do back then

Who you enjoyed being with mostly back then

Undoubtedly, life is an eventful journey and, in different stages of our life, we have different **priorities**, activities, ambitions, responsibilities and interests. To me, the most enjoyable stage of my life was the time I was in high school.

At that time, it seemed that our sole mission was to study hard in preparation for university entrance. Sometimes, it was really **nerve-racking** to confront a series of different examinations and to be **up to our eyes in** assignments and revision. However, I feel that all of us still derived a lot of pleasure from our high-school journey, thanks to the **company** of numerous good friends. We tried to share happy moments with each other as much as possible, in parallel with finishing all of our tasks at school. Because we didn't have much spare time, we managed to capture our best moments during break time and **extra-curricular activities**. This helped to relieve our stress, **lift our spirits** and **recharge our energy**. The friends in high school were the ones in whom I could confide and trust, as they always treated me with **sincerity** and honesty.

Now that I have grown up, I sometimes feel overwhelmed by the **harshness** of life, which **weighs on** my mind. I find it is really hard to have true friendships. Despite being in different places, my old friends and I still try to meet each other whenever possible. Sometimes, we **have a whale of time** in our reunions just simply talking about those good old days, when we were so young, energetic and **carefree**, when the only thing to do was study. Those bygone days were simple, full of pleasure and **high hopes**. Recalling them is somehow an escape from the **hustle and bustle** of daily life, in which everybody **vies** with each other rather than cooperates, in order to **make a living**.

Vocabulary:

- **CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: E. EDUCATION (sách collocations)**

1. **extra-curricular activities**

Meaning: not part of the usual course work or studies in school or college

Example: Most UK universities offer a wide range of **extra-curricular activities** such as sport, music and drama to help students enjoy university life to the full.

Dịch đại ý

Extra-curricular activities: hoạt động ngoại khóa

Nghĩa: không phải là phần chính thức thuộc chương trình học ở trường

Ví dụ: Đa số các trường đại học Anh đều có nhiều hoạt động ngoại khóa đa dạng như thể thao, âm nhạc và kịch để giúp sinh viên tận hưởng cuộc sống đại học.

- **CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: I. TOURISM (sách collocations)**

1. **To have a whale of a time**

Meaning: to have an exciting or fun time

Example: We had a whale of a time at Ninh Van Bay Resort.

Dịch đại ý

to have a whale of time: có một khoảng thời gian vui vẻ

Nghĩa: có 1 khoảng thời gian hào hứng, vui vẻ

Ví dụ: Chúng tôi đã có một khoảng thời gian vui vẻ tại Khu nghỉ dưỡng Vịnh Ninh Vân.

- **CÁC TỪ KHÁC:**

1. **priority** [n]: sth that you think is more important than other things and should be dealt with first : sự ưu tiên

Eg: Financial security was high on his list of **priorities**.

2. **nerve-racking** [adj]: making you feel very nervous and worried : căng thẳng

Eg: Ryan was devastated by the **nerve-racking** examination for top students in his school.

3. **(be) up to one's eyes in sth** [expression]: to have a lot of sth to deal with: nuôi dưỡng

Eg: My mother is always up to her eyes trying to combine her career and child care.

4. **(to) lift one's spirits** [expression]: to become or make sb more cheerful

Eg: The news that the war had ended **lifted our spirits**.

5. **(to) recharge one's energy** [expression]: to recover your strength by resting for a time.

Eg: My holiday in Bali helped me to **recharge my energy** ready for the new semester.

6. **company** [n]: the fact of being with sb else and not alone : sự đồng hành

Eg: During my high school years, I was always indebted to Chau's **company** as a close friend.

7. **sincerity** [n]: the fact of showing what you really think or feel : sự chân thành

Eg: Somehow, his sincerity and determination changed her decision .

8. **harshness** [n]: the fact of being cruel, severe and unkind : sự khắc nghiệt

Eg: He used to complain about the **harshness** of his parents, but I am sure that he was exaggerating.

9. **(to) weigh on** [phrasal verb]: to make sb anxious or worried

Eg. The fear of losing his job **weighed on** his mind all week.

10. **carefree** [adj]: having no worries or responsibilities: vô tư, vô lo

Eg: Tiffany's **carefree** attitude to life endears her to others.

11. **(to) have high hopes** [expression]: to believe that something will be successful.

Eg. He **has high hopes** of winning a medal in the next Olympic Games.

12. **expectation** [n]: a feeling or hope that something good will happen

Eg: There is great **expectation** each New Year that the coming year will be happy for us.

13. **hustle and bustle** [expression]: busy noisy activity of a lot of people in one place : sự xô bồ

Eg: What we really want is to escape from the **hustle and bustle** of the city for the weekend.

14. **(to) vie** [v]: to compete strongly with sb in order to obtain or achieve sth: tranh giành, cạnh tranh gay gắt

Eg: Screaming fans **vied** to get closer to their idols.

15. **(to) make a living** [expression]: to make money to buy the things that you need in life.

Eg. She **makes a living** by selling flowers in the street.

Part 3

1. What should adults remember?

Adults, aside from their obviously important stuff to remember every day, like their responsibilities at work, and the birthdays or anniversaries of their family members and other loved ones, I'd say they should also make time to think about past events in their lives as well. Isn't it nice just **chilling** and thinking about the good old days? For me, even though I'm not yet very old, finding time for myself to **reminisce** about my, well, "**salad days**" feels really relaxing and I think that time for **reflection** is time well spent.

2. How can we improve our memories?

I read in a science paper that we remember things based on their appearance; for instance, when you say the word “lemon”, an actual lemon will pop up in your head instead of the word itself. So one way to improve our memory is to include a lot of pictures and colors while thinking about stuff that we need to stick in our minds. Another way is to make a story out of the information given, and that story has to be as **bizarre** as possible, so that we wouldn’t be able to forget it.

3. What can help us to remember our childhood memories?

Besides memory improvement techniques, I’d say there are some easier remedies like photographs or videos. I don’t know if you’ve ever been in this situation before, but when I take a look at my childhood photos, memories of those days just start to flood into my head, like an old movie. Even the photos of my old house, **a family gathering** or my dad’s old car give me **a pang of nostalgia** as well.

4. Why do you think some people can remember things easily?

They either have a really good memory or **have** some technique **under their belt**. I actually read some online papers saying there are ways for you to improve your memory. If you watch Sherlock, the BBC series, you’ll probably know about a technique called “Mind Palace”. It’s pretty much putting every piece of information you acquire into a particular spot in the so-called “palace” that is your imagination, and whenever you need to pick out any info, just go to that spot and get the info out.

5. What should you remember to bring when you go out?

For me, it’s definitely house keys, my smartphone, sometimes a phone battery as well, and finally a jacket. House keys, well they’re pretty **self-explanatory**. As for my smartphone, let’s just say I cannot survive a day without it. There’s no need for me to bring my wallet – I’ve got my credit card inside my phone. The jacket is actually only necessary in the summer. You never know how the day will turn out, probably **scorching** hot in the morning and freezing at night, so a jacket on a summer day is always a must-have item for me.

6. Do you have a good memory?

Actually, I’ve been questioning that myself for a while, and the best answer that I’ve come up with is that I have a pretty good **selective** memory. Things that I do care about, or that I consider interesting, will stay in my head for a pretty long time. Things that I don’t care about at all, even though they may be important like school lessons, will gradually slip out of my mind. I can still

recall some childhood memories **vividly** inside my head, but if you ask me about last week's lesson on Business Management, you probably won't get any satisfactory answers.

Vocabulary

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: FAMILY AND CHILDREN (sách collocations)

1. **a family gathering** [noun]: a meeting of family members for a particular purpose – usually a celebration

Eg: In traditional societies, **family gatherings** are common to celebrate special occasions.

Vocabulary

Từ mới:

1. **(to) chill (verb)** calm down and relax: thư giãn

E.g. On a day with such nice weather as this, I just want to lean back and **chill**.

2. **(to) reminisce (verb)** indulge in enjoyable recollection of past events: hoài niệm

E.g. They **reminisced** about their summers abroad, back when they were young and free.

3. **one's salad days (expression)** the period when one is young and inexperienced: thời trẻ dại

E.g. The war seemed to be ending and these were my **salad days**, spent with my fellow students.

4. **reflection (noun)** careful thought about something, sometimes over a long period

E.g. During the weekend, I had some time for **reflection** on my future plans.

5. **bizarre (adjective)** very strange or unusual, especially so as to cause interest or amusement: kì lạ, kì cục

E.g. Her **bizarre** dresses and outrageous hairdos just made her stand out in that Halloween party.

6. **pang of nostalgia (expression)** a sudden feeling of sadness mixed with pleasure and affection when you think of happy times in the past: sự hoài niệm

E.g. I must admit that I felt **a pang of nostalgia** when I was reminiscing about my college days.

7. **(to) have something under one's belt (idiom)** to have already achieved or obtained something: có được cái gì

E.g. She already **has** some immigration qualifications **under her belt**.

8. **self-explanatory (adjective)** easily understood; not needing explanation: ý tại mặt chữ

E.g. You can pretty much get the gist of the movie after reading its title - it's fairly **self-explanatory**.

9. scorching (adjective) very hot: rất nóng

E.g. I felt as if I had died under the **scorching** July sun.

10. selective (adjective) being careful about what you choose

E.g. He was very **selective** about what information he included in his job application.

11. vividly (adverb) in a way that produces powerful feelings or strong, clear images in the mind:

rõ ràng, chân thực, sống động

E.g. Margaret remembers **vividly** the day she received the grim news.

50. Describe a kind of vegetable or plant

You should say:

What it is

What it looks like

Where have you seen this plant

And explain why you like it

Although I am not really suited to pastimes requiring patience and **meticulousness**, I still dedicate some of my free time to plant cactus. It seems quite an **environmentally-friendly** thing to do!

There are more than 2000 varieties of cacti that grow in various shapes and sizes. These plants **bloom** in warm, sunny climates. Several hours of sunlight each day and well-draining soil are vital for cactus to thrive. However, some varieties of cacti can even be planted indoors as they require little sunlight. There are certain varieties of cacti that produce **seasonal** flowers when conditions are **favorable**. In fact, just like cacti themselves, their flowers also come in various shapes and sizes, and an **assortment** of colours.

I put my little cactus plants on the terrace of my house and visit them every morning. I **derive** a lot of pleasure from watching these little **fellows** growing every day. My special interest in cactus lies in the fact that it is one of the few kinds of plant I can grow easily. Plant **enthusiasts** who feel they do not have the essential skills to **nurture** healthy houseplants might want to learn how to grow cactus indoors. Actually, most of us prefer to **stay away from** cacti because of their **prickly** nature, but they are one of the most remarkable plants with several health and beauty benefits. According to scientists, cactus flowers possess anti-**inflammatory** properties and they can help prevent aging signs, thanks to their strong antioxidant properties. It is amazing to imagine such advantages of these small plants.

Vocabulary:

- CÁC TỪ THUỘC CHỦ ĐỀ: ENVIRONMENT (sách collocations)

1. **environmentally-friendly** [adjective]: behaviour (or products) that does not harm the environment

Eg: There are many **environmentally-friendly** actions that individuals can take, such as planting a tree.

Vocabulary:

1. **meticulousness** [noun]: the fact of paying careful attention to every detail : sự tỉ mỉ, trau chuốt

Eg: The schedule was planned with great **meticulousness**, and no detail was forgotten.

2. **(to) bloom** [verb]: to produce flowers: nở hoa

Eg: Most roses will begin **to bloom** from late May.

3. **seasonal** [adjective]: happening or needed during a particular season, varying with the seasons: theo mùa

Eg: **Seasonal** workers were hired for the Christmas period.

4. **favorable** [adjective]: good for sth and making it likely to be successful or have an advantage: thuận lợi

Eg: The terms of agreement are **favorable** to both sides, so it is a win-win situation.

5. **assortment** [noun]: a collection of different things, or different types of the same thing

Eg: The shop has a wide **assortment** of clothes to choose from.

6. **(to) derive sth from sth** [verb]: to get sth from sth : có được, lấy được

Eg: Tom **derived** great pleasure from painting.

7. **fellow** [noun]: a way of referring to a man or boy, but it is also used to refer to things which you are fond of

Eg: Mary has 2 pet mice – they are very friendly and curious little **fellows**!

8. **enthusiast** [noun]: a person who is very interested in sth and spends a lot of time doing it : người yêu thích cuồng nhiệt

Eg: Football **enthusiasts** poured out of the stadium after the hectic game.

9. **(to) nurture** [verb]: to care for and protect sth/sb while it is growing and developing : nuôi dưỡng

Eg: These delicate plants need your careful **nurturing**.

10. **(to) stay away from** [expression]: to keep oneself distant from sth : tránh khỏi, thoát khỏi

Eg: All John wants to do is to stay away from **school** for a week to revise for the exam.

11. **prickly** [adjective]: covered with prickles : có gai, đầy gai

Eg: Her grandmother loves these **prickly** rose bushes the most.

12. **inflammatory** [adjective]: causing or involving inflammation : gây viêm

Eg: Anti-**inflammatory** properties inherent in certain plants like cactus are widely used in medicine.

Part 3

For those people who live in cities, where do you think they could have some space to plant?

Why?

Admittedly, **city dwellers struggle** when it comes to finding a place for their plants because of the **scarcity** of open spaces. However, I think that there are still feasible options available sometimes, especially an extended balcony. In addition, roof- top gardens have also become **trendy** in recent years.

Can you explain why some people like growing plants?

Many people choose to grow plants as a their favourite pastime for its **therapeutic** value. As a matter of fact, working with plants has a calming effect, which provides people who are stressed with a means to **soothe** their worries. Besides, watching plants grow and flourish also fascinates a great number of **nature-lovers**.

Have you ever kept plants?

Yes, I've always had a plant on my desk since I started school. I even name my plants and take very good care of them. To me, **a touch of** green is essential to keep my mind balanced and calm, especially when I have **a heavy workload**.

Is there anyone around you who has had plants? Why did they have them?

I once gave my grandmother a rose bush as a birthday gift. She was thrilled to receive it since she had always dreamt of having a rose **pergola** on her balcony. After two years of pruning and

fertilizing, she succeeded in transforming her balcony into a rose paradise. She said **tending** my rose plant had become the part that she longed for most every day, which really **warmed my heart**.

Do you think more people will grow their own crops in the future? Why?

Absolutely. People are concerned that food grown using artificial chemicals **carries health risks**.

As a result, more and more people opt to grow their own **organic food**. Many people also consider that growing your own food is **environmentally friendly** as well as more healthy.

What's the benefit for having plants indoors?

Indoor plants can freshen the air and **enliven** a dull room, which would lift our mood. Besides, many indoor plants have properties that help **repel** mosquitoes and bugs. Generally, it is beneficial to add plants in our rooms, particularly those with beautiful colours, **foliage** or **scents**.

What is the difference between having plants indoors and outdoors?

In my opinion, having plants, whether indoor or outdoor, can be our own small contribution to the **green movement**, bringing us closer to nature and improving air quality. However, I can say that while indoor plants mostly serve the purpose of decoration, their **air-detoxifying** benefits are insignificant compared to outdoor plants. Another special thing about outdoor plants is that they provide us with shades on boiling summer days, plus they tend to be less work than indoor plants, since they can get water and nutrition from nature by themselves.

What kind of environment will influence plants? Why?

I reckon all kinds of environment can have their own influence on plants. Specifically, different environments, with different weather patterns, water and nutrition supplies, would surely affect what kind of plants would thrive and how fast they grow. For example, a tropical climate allows plants to grow with a higher density compared to those in **continental climates**.

Vocabulary

Từ thuộc chủ đề Work:

a heavy workload

Meaning: a lot of work that an individual employee has to perform

Example: While some people enjoy the challenge of **a heavy workload**, others find too much work very stressful.

Dịch đại ý

A heavy workload: khối lượng công việc lớn

Nghĩa: rất nhiều việc mà một người phải hoàn thành

Ví dụ: Trong khi một số người rất thích bị thách thức với khối lượng công việc lớn, những người khác lại thấy như thế rất áp lực.

Từ thuộc chủ đề Environment:

environmentally friendly

Meaning: a way of behaving that does not harm the environment

Example: She prefers to cycle to work because it is more **environmentally friendly** than using her car.

the green movement

Meaning: all the organisations concerned with the protection of the environment

Example: Individuals should join one of the organisations which form part of the green movement, in order to campaign for changes in official policy on the environment.

Dịch đại ý

The green movement: phong trào xanh

Nghĩa: tất cả những tổ chức quan tâm tới việc bảo vệ môi trường

Ví dụ: Các cá nhân nên tham gia vào một trong những tổ chức thuộc phong trào xanh, để tham gia thay đổi những chính sách về môi trường.

Từ thuộc chủ đề Food and Diet:

organic food

Meaning: food produced without using artificial chemicals

Example: The production of **organic food** results in less damage to the environment.

Từ thuộc chủ đề Health:

to carry health risks

Meaning: to have effects which could be bad for your health

Example: Smoking is bad for you and research has shown that it **carries serious health risks**.

Các từ khác:

1.city dweller (noun) cư dân sống ở thành phố.

Meaning: a person who lives in a city

Eg: **City dwellers** are encountering countless problems due to overpopulation and pollution.

2.scarcity (noun) sự khan hiếm

Meaning: if there is a scarcity of something, there is not enough of it and it is difficult to obtain

Eg: Food **scarcity** remains an issue that plagues many African countries.

3. **trendy** (adj)

Meaning: fashionable

Eg: Designer shoes like Nike are very **trendy** these days.

4. **therapeutic** (adj) có tác dụng thư thái, giảm stress

Meaning: helping you to relax

Eg: She finds gardening **therapeutic** and relaxing.

5. **soothe** (verb) làm nhẹ, làm dịu đi

Meaning: to make someone who is anxious feel calmer

Eg: Classical music always **soothes me** when I'm feeling worried or nervous.

6. **nature-lovers** (noun) những người yêu thiên nhiên

Meaning: people who enjoy, and are concerned about protecting, nature

Eg: **Nature-lovers** are protesting against deforestation.

7. **a touch of sth**: 1 chút gì đó

Meaning: a very small amount of something

Eg: **A touch of** salt would make this dish much better.

8. **a pergola** (noun): giàn hoa

Meaning: an arch with a frame for plants to grow

Eg: The **pergola** on her balcony is stunning with colorful flowers.

9. **tend** (verb): chăm sóc

Meaning: to care for somebody or something

Eg: She **tends** her garden every day.

10. **to warm one's heart** (expression)

Meaning: to make somebody feel more loving and happy

Eg: Your unexpected visit on my birthday really **warmed my heart**.

11. **enliven** (verb): làm cho sống động

Meaning: to make something more interesting or more fun

Eg: Her bubbly personality **enlivens** those around her.

12. **repel** (verb) xua đuổi

Meaning: to push or keep somebody or something away

Eg: This spray **repels** bugs, so you won't have any problem with mosquitoes or flies.

13. foliage (noun)

Meaning: the leaves of plants and trees

Eg: As he entered the building, he noticed the bright green **foliage** of all the indoor plants.

14. scent (noun)

Meaning: the pleasant smell that something has

Eg: The **scent** of the roses filled the room.

15. air-detoxifying (adj) thanh lọc không khí

Meaning: removing harmful substances from the air

Eg: The **air-detoxifying** effect of the conditioner is widely advertised.

16. continental climate (noun): khí hậu lục địa

Meaning: a climate of very hot summers and very cold winters

Eg: A **continental climate** is cool and dry, perfect to raise cattle.